ISSN 2307-8960 (online)

World Journal of *Clinical Cases*

World J Clin Cases 2014 October 16; 2(10): 488-607

Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc

WJCC

World Journal of Clinical Cases

A peer-reviewed, online, open-access journal of Clinical Cases

Editorial Board

2012-2016

The *World Journal of Clinical Cases* Editorial Board consists of 519 members, representing a team of worldwide experts in clinical medical research. They are from 55 countries, including Albania (1), Australia (8), Bangladesh (3), Belgium (3), Botswana (1), Brazil (10), Bulgaria (1), Canada (11), China (24), Colombia (2), Croatia (4), Cuba (1), Czech (2), Egypt (5), France (5), Germany (14), Greece (15), Hungary (1), India (56), Indonesia (1), Iran (11), Iraq (1), Ireland (1), Israel (5), Italy (56), Japan (33), Lebanon (3), Malaysia (2), Mexico (1), Morocco (2), Netherlands (3), New Zealand (1), Nigeria (1), Oman (1), Pakistan (1), Peru (2), Poland (4), Portugal (3), Qatar (1), Romania (3), Saudi Arabia (4), Serbia (6), Singapore (3), Slovakia (2), Slovenia (1), South Korea (27), Spain (11), Sudan (1), Taiwan (21), Thailand (2), Trinidad and Tobago (1), Tunisia (1), Turkey (28), United Kingdom (26), and United States (82).

Yong-Song Guan, *Chengdu*
Guo-Rong Han, *Nanjing*
Bin Jiang, *Beijing*
Alice Pik Shan Kong, *Hong Kong*
Jian-Jun Li, *Beijing*
De-Zhi Mu, *Chengdu*
Simon Siu-Man Ng, *Hong Kong*
Shi-Su Sheng, *Beijing*
Huai-Yin Shi, *Beijing*
Xue-Ying Sun, *Harbin*
Xue-Rui Tan, *Shantou*
Gang Wang, *Chengdu*
Feng Wang, *Shanghai*
Nian-Song Wang, *Shanghai*
Ge Xiong, *Beijing*
Zheng-Feng Yin, *Shanghai*
Qing Zhang, *Jingzhou*
Ming-Hua Zheng, *Wenzhou*
Jun Zhong, *Shanghai*
Yan-Ming Zhou, *Xiamen*

Colombia

Iván Darío Vélez Bernal, *Medellín*
Carlos Alberto Calderón-Ospina, *Bogota*

Croatia

Iva Brcic, *Zagreb*
Srđana Čulić, *Spinčićeva*
Tomislav Kulis, *Zagreb*
Zvonimir Lovrić, *Zagreb*

Cuba

Alain Cruz Portelles, *Holguin*

Czech

David Bludovský, *Plzen*
Antonin Marik, *Prague*

Egypt

Farid Mohammed Sabry El-Askary, *Cairo*
Reda Abd Elhady Hemida, *Mansoura*
Sherifa Ahmad Hamed, *Assiut*
Ahmad Abd-Elgawad Nofal, *Zagazig*
Mohamed Ismail Seleem, *Cairo*

France

I Alain Braillon, *Amiens*
Jean-François Bosset, *Besançon*
Isabelle Andrée Chemin, *Lyon*
Emile Jean-François, *Boulogne*
Christophe Martinaud, *Clamart*

Germany

Sebastian Decker, *Hannover*
Andreas Martin Fette, *Weissach im Tal*
Michael Froehner, *Dresden*
Wolf Christoph Mueller, *Leipzig*
Andres Hao Ming Neuhaus, *Berlin*
Arndt Hartmann, *Erlangen*
Dirk M Hermann, *Essen*
Karl-Anton Kreuzer, *Berlin*
Ingo Stefan Nölte, *Mannheim*
Andreas G Schreyer, *Regensburg*
Crispin Schneider, *Bristol*
Hans-Joachim Schmoll, *Halle*
Martin Paul Schencking, *Witten*
Mathias Z Strowski, *Berlin*

Greece

Andrew P Andonopoulos, *Patras*
Dimitrios Daoussis, *Patras*
Ioanna Dimopoulou, *Athens*
Moses S Elisaf, *Ioannina*
Costas Fourtounas, *Rio-Patras*
Olga-Elpis Kolokitha, *Thessaloniki*
Sophia Lionaki, *Athens*
Marilita M Moschos, *Athens*
Michail N Varras, *Athens*
Nikolaos Papanas, *Alexandroupolis*
Athanasios Papatsoris, *Athens*
Zervoudis Stephane, *Athens*
Konstantinos Tepetes, *Larissa*
Apostolos Tsapas, *Thessaloniki*
Dimitrios Vavilis, *Thessaloniki*

Hungary

Tibor Hortobágyi, *Debrecen*

India

Subrat Kumar Achaya, *New Delhi*
Amit Arvind Agrawal, *Nasik*
Hena A Ansari, *Aligarh*
MS Ansari, *Lucknow*
Laxminarayan Bhadnari, *Calicut*
Ashu Seith Bhalla, *New Delhi*
Sachin Anil Borkar, *New Delhi*
Bhuvan Chanana, *New Delhi*
Kanishka Das, *Bangalore*
Reena Das, *Chandigarh*
Nilay Kanti Das, *Kolkata*
Deep Dutta, *Kolkata*
Mimi Gangopadhyay, *Siliguri*
Rakesh Garg, *New Delhi*
Sandeep Grover, *Chandigarh*
Mahendra Singh Hada, *Rajasthan*
P Hazarika, *Manipal*
Sachin Bhalchandra Ingle, *Latur*
Parwez Sajad Khan, *Srinagar*
Pradeep Kumar, *Bangalore*
Amol Lunkad, *Pune*
Dale A Maharaj, *Trinidad*
Nikhil Marwah, *Rajasthan*
Meena Gupta, *New Delhi*
Amit Kumar Mishra, *Indore*
Soma Mukherjee, *Mumbai*
Deb Sanjay Nag, *Jamshedpur*
Kushal Naha, *Karnataka*
Janardhanan C Narayanaswamy, *Bangalore*
Soubhagya Ranjan Nayak, *Nadia*
Narendra Pamidi, *Karnataka*
Murali Prabhakaran Vettath, *Kerala*
Samir Kumar Praharaj, *Karnataka*
Peralam Yegneswaran Prakash, *Manipal*
C S Pramesh, *Mumbai*
Kishore Puthezhath, *Kerala*
Harbans Singh Randhawa, *Delhi*
M Rangarajan, *Coimbatore*
Sayantan Ray, *Kolkata*
Bharat Rekhi, *Maharashtra*
S Sharija, *Thiruvananthapuram*
Dhananjaya Sabat, *New Delhi*
Sachin Chakradhar Sarode, *Pune*
Ashish Sharma, *Coimbatore*
Hakim Irfan Showkat, *Srinagar*
Rikki Singal, *Mullana*
Deepak Kumar Singh, *Lucknow*
Yashpal Singh, *Meerut*
Naorem Gopendro Singh, *New Delhi*
Shyam Sundar, *Varanasi*
Naveen S Tahasildar, *Hubli*
Devinder Mohan Thappa, *Pondicherry*
Pradeep Vaideeswar, *Mumbai*
Mukul Vij, *Kanpur*
Rajesh Vijayvergiya, *Chandigarh*
B Viswanatha, *Bangalore*

Indonesia

Coen Pramono, *Surabaya*

Iran

Masoud Amiri, *Shahrekord*
Mostafa Ghanei, *Tehran*
Mahdi Malekpour, *Tehran*
Setareh Mamishi, *Tehran*
Afshin Mohammadi, *Urmia*
Seyyed Amin Ayatollahi Mousavi, *Kerman*
Mohammad Taher Rajabi, *Tehran*
Amin Saburi, *Tehran*
Maryam Sahebari, *Mashhad*
Payman Vahedi, *Mashad*
Amir Reza Vosoughi, *Shiraz*

Iraq

Bassim Irheim Mohammad, *Al-Qadisiya*

Ireland

Robbie Seton Rowan Woods, *Dublin*

Israel

Nimer Najib Assy, *Safed*
Gil Bar-Sela, *Haifa*
Itzhak Braverman, *Hadera*
Eyal Itshayek, *Jerusalem*
Gary Michael Ginsberg, *Jerusalem*

Italy

Giovanni Addolorato, *Rome*
Piero Luigi Almasio, *Palermo*
Francesco Angelico, *Rome*
Marialuisa Appetecchia, *Rome*
Valeria Barresi, *Messina*
Gabrio Bassotti, *San Sisto*
Paolo Boffano, *Turin*
Maria Luisa Brandi, *Florence*
Michelangelo Buonocore, *Pavia*
Giovanni Cammarota, *Rome*
Isidoro Di Carlo, *Catania*
Andrea Ciorba, *Ferrara*
Lucio Cocco, *Bologna*
Carlo Colosimo, *Rome*
Alfredo Conti, *Messina*
Giovanni Conzo, *Naples*
Gennaro Cormio, *Bari*
Alessandro Federico, *Naples*
Gabriella Maria Ferrandina, *Rome*
Davide Firinu, *Cagliari*
Caterina Foti, *Bari*
Gennaro Galizia, *Naples*
Silvio Garattini, *Milan*
Giampietro Gasparini, *Roma*
Luigi De Gennaro, *Rome*
Giorgio Ghilardi, *Milano*
Domenico Girelli, *Verona*
Biondi Zoccai Giuseppe, *Latina*
Carlo Lajolo, *Rome*
Alessandro Landi, *Rome*
Salvatore Leonardi, *Catania*
Carmela Loguercio, *Naples*
Marianna Luongo, *Potenza*
Zippi Maddalena, *Rome*
Roberto Manfredini, *Ferrara*
Annunziato Mangiola, *Roma*
Elia De Maria, *Carpi*
Marco Mazzocchi, *Perugia*
Roberto Luca Meniconi, *Rome*
Marco Milone, *Naples*
Paolo Nozza, *Genoa*
Pier Paolo Panciani, *Brescia*
Desire' Pantalone, *Firenze*
Raffale Pezzilli, *Bologna*
Giorgina Barbara Piccoli, *Torino*
Roberto Pola, *Rome*
Marco Romano, *Napoli*
Gianantonio Saviola, *Castel Goffredo*
Stefania Scala, *Naples*
Leonardo A Sechi, *Udine*
Matteo Tebaldi, *Ferrara*
Riccardina Tesse, *Bari*
Tiziano Testori, *Milano*
Gian Vincenzo Zuccotti, *Milan*

Japan

Ukei Anazawa, *Ichikwa-shi*
Junichi Asaumi, *Okayama*
Takashi Asazuma, *Saitama-ken*
Norihiro Furusyo, *Fukuoka*
Masaru Ishida, *Yokohama*
Tatsuaki Ishiguro, *Tokyo*
Hajime Isomoto, *Nagasaki*
Yokoyama Junkichi, *Sendai*
Keita Kai, *Saga*
Terumi Kamisawa, *Tokyo*
Tatsuo Kanda, *Niigata*
Shigeyuki Kawa, *Matsumoto*
Kazushi Kishi, *Wakayama-city*
Satoru Kyo, *Ishikawa*
Nozomi Majima, *Osaka*
Kenji Miki, *Tokyo*
Atsushi Nakajima, *Tokyo*
Rui Niimi, *Tsu city*
Masaharu Nomura, *Tokyo*
Kenoki Ohuchida, *Fukuoka*
Morishita Ryuichi, *Osaka*
Yosuke Sato, *Niigata*
Mitsushige Sugimoto, *Hamamatsu*
Haruhiko Sugimura, *Hamamatsu*
Keisuke Uehara, *Nagoya*
Manabu Watanabe, *Tokyo*
Takayuki Yamamoto, *Yokkaichi*
Yoshihito Yokoyama, *Hirosaki*
Junkichi Yokoyama, *Tokyo*
Han-Seung Yoon, *Nagano*
Kiyoshi Yoshino, *Osaka*
Yuichi Kasai, *Tsu city*
Yuzuru Niibe, *Sagamihara-shi*

Lebanon

Maroun Miled Abou-Jaoude, *Beirut*
Kassem A Barada, *Beirut*
Raja Sawaya, *Beirut*

Malaysia

Iman Salahshourifar, *Kubang Kerian*
Mohamad Nasir Shafiee, *Kuala Lumpur*

Mexico

Ernesto Roldan-Valadez, *Mexico*

Morocco

Alae El Koraichi, *Rabat*
Faycal Lakhdar, *Rabat*

Netherlands

Sijens Paul Eduard, *Groningen*
Paul E Sijens, *Groningen*

New Zealand

Rita Rita Krishnamurthi, *Auckland*

Nigeria

Shamsideen Abayomi Ogun, *Lagos*

Oman

Itrat Mehdi, *Muscat*

Pakistan

Sabiha Anis, *Karachi*

Peru

Eduardo Gotuzzo, *Lima*
Eduardo Salazar-Lindo, *Lima*

Poland

Łukasz Stanisław Matuszewski, *Lublin*
Tadeusz Robak, *Ciolkowskiego*
Adam Wysokiński, *Lodz*
Witold Antoni Zatoński, *Warsaw*

Portugal

Jorge Alves, *Braga*
Gustavo Marcondes Rocha, *Porto*
Zacharoula Sidiropoulou, *Barreiro*

Qatar

Fahmi Yousef Khan, *Doha*

Romania

Simona Gurzu, *Targu-Mures*
Doina Piciu, *Cluj-Napoca*
Mugurel Constantin Rusu, *Bucharest*

Saudi Arabia

Ahmed Alkhani, *Riyadh*
Iqbal Abdulaziz Bukhari, *Alkhobar*
Mohamed Fahmy Ibrahim, *Riyadh*

Jyothi Tadakamadla, *Hyderabad*

Serbia

Ivona Milorad Djordjevic, *Nis*
Jelena Lazar Lazic, *Belgrade*
Djordje Radak, *Beograd*
Boban Stanojevic, *Belgrade*
Mihailo Ilija Stjepanovic, *Belgrade*
Momcilo Pavlovic, *Subotica*

Singapore

Wei-Sheng Chong, *Singapore*
Khek-Yu Ho, *Singapore*
Yong Kuei Lim, *Singapore*

Slovakia

Michal Mego, *Bratislava*
Ivan Varga, *Bratislava*

Slovenia

Pavel Skok, *Maribor*

South Korea

Young-Seok Cho, *Uijeongbu*
Tae Hyun Choi, *Seoul*
Yeun-Jun Chung, *Seoul*
Ki-Baik Hahm, *Seoul*
Seung-Jae Hyun, *Seongnam*
Soo Bin Im, *Bucheon*
Soung Won Jeong, *Seoul*
Choun-Ki Joo, *Seoul*
Chang Moo Kang, *Seoul*
Seung Taik Kim, *Chungbuk*
Byung-Wook Kim, *Incheon*
Myoung Soo Kim, *Seoul*
Gwi Eon Kim, *Seoul*
Gyeong-Moon Kim, *Seoul*
Hahn Young Kim, *Seoul*
Won Seog Kim, *Seoul*
Yoon Jun Kim, *Seoul*
Yun-Hee Kim, *Seoul*
Sun-Young Lee, *Seoul*
Sang Chul Lim, *Hwasun-gun*
Seung Sam Paik, *Seoul*
Jae Yong Park, *Daegu*
Jong-Ho Park, *Goyang*
Jun-Beom Park, *Seoul*
Songhae Hae Ryong, *Seoul*
Chan Sup Shim, *Seoul*
Hwaseung Yoo, *Daejeon*

Spain

Adrià Arboix, *Barcelona*
FJA Artiles, *Las Palmas de Gran Canaria*
Manuel Benito, *Madrid*
Vicente Carreño, *Madrid*
Rosa Corcoy, *Barcelona*
Exuperio Díez-Tejedor, *Madrid*
Luis Ignacio Gonzalez Granado, *Madrid*
Carlos Alberto Dussan Luberth, *Torrevieja*
Juan de Dios Molina Martín, *Madrid*
Sergio Fernández-Pello Montes, *Gijón*
Tomás Sobrino, *Santiago de Compostela*

Sudan

Samir MH Shaheen, *Khartoum*

Thailand

Sarunyou Chusri, *Songkhal*
Weekitt Kittisupamongkol, *Bangkok*

Trinidad and Tobago

Dale Andrew Maharaj, *Port of Spain*

Tunisia

Makram Koubaa, *Sfax*

Turkey

Sami Akbulut, *Diyarbakir*
Tamer Akça, *Mersin*
Cengiz Akkaya, *Bursa*
Ahmet Baydin, *Samsun*
Hasan Belli, *Istanbul*
Serbülent Gökhan Beyaz, *Sakarya*
GK Cakmak, *KozluZonguldak*
Turgay Celik, *Ankara*
Yasemin Benderli Cihan, *Kayseri*
Ömür Dereci, *Ankara*
Mehmet Doganay, *Kayseri*
F Neslihan İnal Emiroğlu, *İzmir*
Aylin Türel Ermertcan, *Manisa*
Kadir Ertem, *Malatya*
Aydın Gulses, *Canakkale*
Mustafa Koray Gumus, *Kayseri*
Ramazan Kahveci, *Kırıkkale*
Saadettin Kiliçkap, *Ankara*
Fatih Kucukdurmaz, *Istanbul*
Aslıhan Küçüker, *Ankara*
Nuray Bayar Muluk, *Ankara*
Orhan Veli Ozkan, *Sakarya*
Zeynep Özkurt-Kayahant, *Istanbul*
Mustafa Sahin, *Ankara*
İbrahim Sakçak, *Ankara*
Feyzi Birol Sarica, *Adana*
Selim Sözen, *Kayseri*
Murat Ugurlucan, *Istanbul*

United Kingdom

Henry Dushan Atkinson, *London*
Ioannis G Baraboutis, *Cambridgeshire*
I Beegun, *London*
Ricky Harminder Bhogal, *Birmingham*
Kuntal Chakravarty, *Romford*
Deyaa Elsandabesee, *Harlow*
Radwan Faraj, *Moorgate Road-Rotherham*
Babatunde Abiodun Gbolade, *Leeds*
Sanju George, *Birmingham*
David Julian Alexander Goldsmith, *London*
Nadey S Hakim, *London*
Koshy Jacob, *Boston*
Anastasios Koulaouzidis, *Edinburgh*
Andrew Richard Lisle Medford, *Bristol*
Panagiotis Peitsidis, *Southend Essex*
Rahul Tony Rao, *London*
Francis Paul Rugman, *Preston*
Khaled Maher Sarraf, *London*
Yousef Shahin, *Hull*
Alexa Shipman, *Birmingham*
Badri Man Shrestha, *Sheffield*
Herrick J Siegel, *Birmingham*
Leonello Tacconi, *London*
Jagdeep Singh Virk, *Harrow*
James Chiun Lon Wong, *Manchester*
Kimia Ziahosseini, *Liverpool*

United States

Doru Traian Alexandrescu, *San Diego*
Naim Alkhouri, *Cleveland*
Mohammad M Alsolaiman, *Orem Utah*
Bhupinder S Anand, *Houston*
Suresh J Antony, *Oregon*
Normadeane Armstrong, *Rockville Centre*
Wilbert Solomon Aronow, *Valhalla*
Hossam M Ashour, *Detroit*
Rajendra Badgaiyan, *Buffalo*
Joseph Robert Berger, *Lexington*
Dennis A Bloomfield, *New York*
Neil Box, *Denver*
Jeffrey Alan Breall, *Indianapolis*
Susana M Campos, *Boston*
Robert Carter III, *San Antonio*
Kaisorn Lee Chaichana, *Baltimore*
Antonio Joseph Chamoun, *Coatesville*
Vince Clark, *Albuquerque*
C Donald Combs, *Norfolk*
Suzanne Marie Crumley, *Houston*
Parakkal Deepak, *Evanston*
Yuchuan Ding, *Detroit*
Konstantin Hristov Dragnev, *Lebanon*
Cecilia Luminita Dragomir, *New York*
Konstantinos P Economopoulos, *Boston*
James M Ford, *Stanford*
Yun Gong, *Houston*
Zeba Hasan Hafeez, *Novato*
Ardeshir Hakam, *Tampa*
Jaclyn Frances Hechtman, *New York*
T Patrick Hill, *New Brunswick*
Hitoshi Hirose, *Philadelphia*
Elias Jabbour, *Houston*
Robert Thomas Jensen, *Bethesda*

WJCC

World Journal of Clinical Cases

Contents

Monthly Volume 2 Number 10 October 16, 2014

REVIEW

488 Diabetes mellitus and electrolyte disorders
Liamis G, Liberopoulos E, Barkas F, Elisaf M

497 Practical strategies for modulating foam cell formation and behavior
Uitz E, Bahadori B, McCarty MF, Moghadasian MH

507 Marjolin's ulcers in the post-burned lesions and scars
Saaiq M, Ashraf B

515 Gallbladder cancer: Clinical and pathological approach
Kai K, Aishima S, Miyazaki K

MINIREVIEWS

522 Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography-related perforation: Management and prevention
Prachayakul V, Aswakul P

528 Primary intestinal lymphangiectasia: Minireview
Ingle SB, Hinge (Ingle) CR

CASE CONTROL STUDY

534 Comparison of semilunar coronally repositioned flap with gingival massaging using an Ayurvedic product (irimedadi taila) in the treatment of class- I gingival recession: A clinical study
Mishra AK, Kumathalli K, Sridhar R, Maru R, Mangal B, Kedia S, Shrihatti R.

CLINICAL TRIALS STUDY

541 HLA antigens in individuals with down syndrome and alopecia areata
Estefan JL, Oliveira JC, Abad ED, Saintive SB, Porto LCMS, Ribeiro M

OBSERVATIONAL STUDY

546 He had always wanted to ask an andrologist but had never done so
Foresta C, Pizzol D

SYSTEMATIC REVIEWS

552 Reporting of dental status from full-arch radiographs: Descriptive analysis and methodological aspects
Huettig F, Axmann D

CASE REPORT

565 Chemotherapy induced Takotsubo cardiomyopathy
Goel S, Sharma A, Garg A, Chandra A, Shetty V

569 Intensive outpatient comprehensive behavioral intervention for tics: A case series
Blount TH, Lockhart AT, Garcia RV, Raj JJ, Peterson AL

578 Challenging rescue of a 4 years old boy with H1N1 infection by extracorporeal membrane oxygenator: A case report
Papadopoulos N, Martens S, Keller H, El-Sayed Ahmad A, Moritz A, Zierer A

581 Left ventricular pseudoaneurysm formation: Two cases and review of the literature
Petrou E, Vartela V, Kostopoulou A, Georgiadou P, Mastorakou I, Kogerakis N, Sfyrakis P, Athanassopoulos G, Karatasakis G

587 Importance of defining the best treatment of a genital gunshot wound: A case report
García-Perdomo HA

591 Bladder paraganglioma: A report of case series and critical review of current literature
Ranaweera M, Chung E

596 Haemostatic management for aortic valve replacement in a patient with advanced liver disease
Weinberg L, Kearsey I, Tjoakarfa C, Matalanis G, Galvin S, Carson S, Bellomo R, McNicol L, McCall P

604 Liver abscess caused by *Burkholderia pseudomallei* in a young man: A case report and review of literature
Pal P, Ray S, Moulick A, Dey S, Jana A, Banerjee K

World Journal of Clinical Cases
Volume 2 Number 10 October 16, 2014

Contents

APPENDIX	I-V	Instructions to authors
ABOUT COVER		Editorial Board Member of *World Journal of Clinical Cases*, Keita Kai, MD, PhD, Associate Professor, Department of Pathology & Microbiology, Faculty of Medicine, Saga University, Nabesima 5-1-1, Saga City, Saga 849-8501, Japan
AIM AND SCOPE		*World Journal of Clinical Cases* (*World J Clin Cases*, *WJCC*, online ISSN 2307-8960, DOI: 10.12998) is a peer-reviewed open access academic journal that aims to guide clinical practice and improve diagnostic and therapeutic skills of clinicians. The primary task of *WJCC* is to rapidly publish high-quality Autobiography, Case Report, Clinical Case Conference (Clinicopathological Conference), Clinical Management, Diagnostic Advances, Editorial, Field of Vision, Frontier, Medical Ethics, Original Articles, Clinical Practice, Meta-Analysis, Minireviews, Review, Therapeutics Advances, and Topic Highlight, in the fields of allergy, anesthesiology, cardiac medicine, clinical genetics, clinical neurology, critical care, dentistry, dermatology, emergency medicine, endocrinology, family medicine, gastroenterology and hepatology, geriatrics and gerontology, hematology, immunology, infectious diseases, internal medicine, obstetrics and gynecology, oncology, ophthalmology, orthopedics, otolaryngology, pathology, pediatrics, peripheral vascular disease, psychiatry, radiology, rehabilitation, respiratory medicine, rheumatology, surgery, toxicology, transplantation, and urology and nephrology.
INDEXING/ABSTRACTING		*World Journal of Clinical Cases* is now indexed in PubMed Central, PubMed, Digital Object Identifier.
FLYLEAF	I-V	Editorial Board

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Clinical Cases

ISSN
ISSN 2307-8960 (online)

LAUNCH DATE
April 16, 2013

FREQUENCY
Monthly

EDITORIAL OFFICE
Jin-Lei Wang, Director
Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director
World Journal of Clinical Cases
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381891
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: editorialoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLISHER
Baishideng Publishing Group Inc
8226 Regency Drive,
Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLICATION DATE
October 16, 2014

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS
Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjgnet.com/2307-8960/g_info_20100722180909.htm

ONLINE SUBMISSION
http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/

World Journal of Clinical Cases

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.12998/wjcc.v2.i10.488

World J Clin Cases 2014 October 16; 2(10): 488-496
ISSN 2307-8960 (online)

REVIEW

Diabetes mellitus and electrolyte disorders

George Liamis, Evangelos Liberopoulos, Fotios Barkas, Moses Elisaf

George Liamis, Evangelos Liberopoulos, Fotios Barkas, Moses Elisaf, Department of Internal Medicine, School of Medicine, University of Ioannina, Stavrou Niarchou Avenue, 45110 Ioannina, Greece
Author contributions: Liamis G, Liberopoulos E, Barkas F and Elisaf M contributed to this paper.
Correspondence to: George Liamis, MD, PhD, Assistant Professor of Internal Medicine, Department of Internal Medicine, School of Medicine, University of Ioannina, Stavrou Niarchou Avenue, 45110 Ioannina, Greece. gliamis@cc.uoi.gr
Telephone: +30-26-51007509 Fax: +30-26-51007016
Received: December 25, 2013 Revised: July 24, 2014
Accepted: September 23, 2014
Published online: October 16, 2014

Abstract

Diabetic patients frequently develop a constellation of electrolyte disorders. These disturbances are particularly common in decompensated diabetics, especially in the context of diabetic ketoacidosis or nonketotic hyperglycemic hyperosmolar syndrome. These patients are markedly potassium-, magnesium- and phosphate-depleted. Diabetes mellitus (DM) is linked to both hypo- and hyper-natremia reflecting the coexistence of hyperglycemia-related mechanisms, which tend to change serum sodium to opposite directions. The most important causal factor of chronic hyperkalemia in diabetic individuals is the syndrome of hyporeninemic hypoaldosteronism. Impaired renal function, potassium-sparing drugs, hypertonicity and insulin deficiency are also involved in the development of hyperkalemia. This article provides an overview of the electrolyte disturbances occurring in DM and describes the underlying mechanisms. This insight should pave the way for pathophysiology-directed therapy, thus contributing to the avoidance of the several deleterious effects associated with electrolyte disorders and their treatment.

Key words: Glucose; Osmotic diuresis; Hyponatremia; Hyperkalemia; Hypomagnesemia

Core tip: Diabetic patients frequently develop a constellation of electrolyte disorders. These patients are often potassium-, magnesium- and phosphate-depleted, especially in the context of diabetic ketoacidosis or nonketotic hyperglycemic hyperosmolar syndrome. Diabetes is linked to both hypo- and hyper-natremia, as well as to chronic hyperkalemia which may be due to hyporeninemic hypoaldosteronism. This article provides an overview of the electrolyte disturbances occurring in diabetes and describes the underlying mechanisms. This insight should pave the way for pathophysiology-directed therapy, thus contributing to the avoidance of the several deleterious effects associated with electrolyte disorders and their treatment.

Liamis G, Liberopoulos E, Barkas F, Elisaf M. Diabetes mellitus and electrolyte disorders. *World J Clin Cases* 2014; 2(10): 488-496 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2307-8960/full/v2/i10/488.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.12998/wjcc.v2.i10.488

INTRODUCTION

Electrolyte disorders are common in clinical practice. They are mainly encountered in hospital populations occurring in a broad spectrum of patients (from asymptomatic to critically ill) and being associated with increased morbidity and mortality[1-3]. The disturbances of electrolyte homeostasis are also frequently observed in community subjects. Community-acquired electrolyte disorders, even chronic and mild, are related to poor prognosis[3]. Electrolyte disorders are usually multifactorial in nature. Various pathophysiological factors, such as nutritional status, gastrointestinal absorption capacity, coexistent acid-base abnormalities, pharmacological agents, other comorbid diseases (mainly renal disease) or acute illness, alone or in combination, play a key role.

Diabetes mellitus (DM) is included among the diseases with increased frequency of electrolyte abnormali-

Table 1 Principal causes of electrolyte disorders in diabetic patients

Sodium disorders[1]
Hyponatremia
Pseudohyponatremia (marked hyperlipidemia)
Hyperglycemia (hypertonicity)-induced movement of water out of the cells (dilutional hyponatremia)
Osmotic diuresis-induced hypovolemic hyponatremia
Drug-induced hyponatremia: hypoglycemic agents (chlorpropamide, tolbutamide, insulin) or other medications (*e.g.*, diuretics, amitriptyline)
Pseudonormonatremia (marked hyperlipidemia, severe hypoproteinemia)
Hypernatremia
Pseudohypernatremia (severe hypoproteinemia)
Loss of water in excess of sodium and potassium (osmotic dieresis), if this water loss is replaced insufficiently
Potassium disorders
Hypokalemia
Shift hypokalemia: insulin administration
Gastrointestinal loss of K^+: malabsorption syndromes (diabetic-induced motility disorders, bacterial overgrowth, chronic diarrheal states)
Renal loss of K^+: osmotic diuresis, hypomagnesemia, diuretics (thiazides, thiazide-like agents, furosemide)
Hyperkalemia
Shift hyperkalemia: acidosis, insulin deficiency, hypertonicity, rhabdomyolysis, drugs (*e.g.*, beta blockers)
Reduced glomerular filtration of K^+: acute and chronic kidney disease
Reduced tubular secretion of K^+: hyporeninemic hypoaldosteronism, drugs (angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors, angiotensin Ⅱ receptor blockers, renin inhibitors, beta blockers, potassium-sparing diuretics)
Magnesium disorders
Hypomagnesemia
Pseudohypomagnesemia: hypoalbuminemia
Shift hypomagnesemia: insulin administration
Poor dietary Mg^{2+} intake
Gastrointestinal Mg^{2+} losses: diarrhea as a result of diabetic autonomic neuropathy
Increased renal Mg^{2+} losses due to osmotic diuresis, glomerular hyperfiltration, diuretic administration
Recurrent metabolic acidosis
Calcium disorders
Hypocalcemia
Pseudohypocalcemia: hypoalbuminemia[2]
Acute renal failure due to accompanying hyperphosphatemia
Advanced chronic renal insufficiency due to hyperphosphatemia and low levels of vitamin D
Nephrotic syndrome: loss of 25-hydroxyvitamin D3 and its binding protein in the urine
Hypomagnesemia
Vitamin D deficiency
Drug-mediated: loop diuretics
Hypercalcemia
Concurrent hyperparathyroidism
Thiazide therapy
Phosphorus disorders
Hypophosphatemia
Osmotic diuresis
Drugs: thiazides, loop diuretics, insulin
Malabsorption syndromes
Primary hyperthyroidism
Vitamin D deficiency

[1]Spurious sodium disorders occur when sodium is measured with indirect ion-selective electrodes; [2]The ionized serum calcium levels are normal.

ties given that the aforementioned factors (especially impaired renal function, malabsorption syndromes, acid-base disorders and multidrug regimens) are often present in diabetics[4].

This article provides an overview of the electrolyte disturbances occurring in DM and describes possible underlying mechanisms (Table 1). This insight should pave the way for pathophysiology-directed therapy, possibly contributing to the avoidance of several deleterious effects associated with electrolyte disorders and their treatment.

DYSNATREMIAS (HYPONATREMIA AND HYPERNATREMIA)

DM is a well-known cause of dysnatremias *via* several underlying mechanisms[3,5]. Glucose is an osmotically active substance. Hyperglycemia increases serum osmolality, resulting in movement of water out of the cells and subsequently in a reduction of serum sodium levels ($[Na^+]$) by dilution. Therefore, in hyperglycemic patients, the corrected $[Na^+]$ should be taken into account, which is calculated by adding to measured $[Na^+]$ 1.6 mmol/L for every 100 mg/dL (5.55 mmol/L) increment of serum glucose above normal; a correction factor by 2.4 mmol/L is used when serum glucose concentrations are higher than 400 mg/dL (22.2 mmol/L)[6,7]. It is worth mentioning that the corrected $[Na^+]$ after adjustment for the dilutional effect of hyperglycemia should be considered as a useful tool for the monitoring of treatment in hyperglycemic states[8]. Uncontrolled DM can also induce hypovolemic-hypo-

natremia due to osmotic diuresis. Moreover, in diabetic ketoacidosis ketone bodies (b-hydroxybutyrate and acetoacetate) obligate urinary electrolyte losses and aggravate the renal sodium wasting[7,9]. It should be emphasized, however, that hypotonic renal losses (loss of water in excess of sodium and potassium) due to osmotic diuresis can lead to hypernatremia if this water loss is replaced insufficiently. In a study in 113 hypernatremic patients hospitalized in an internal medicine clinic, poorly controlled DM was implicated in the development of hypernatremia in one third of cases (34.5%)[5]. Consequently, in patients with uncontrolled DM serum concentration of [Na^+] is variable, reflecting the balance between the hyperglycemia-induced water movement out of the cells that lowers [Na^+], and the glucosuria-induced osmotic diuresis, which tends to raise [Na^+].

Drug-induced hyponatremia due to hypoglycemic agents (chlorpropamide, tolbutamide, insulin) or other medications (*e.g.*, diuretics, amitriptyline for the treatment of diabetic neuropathy) should be considered in every diabetic patient with low [Na^+][10,11]. Chlorpropamide, which is now rarely used in the treatment of patients with DM, can induce hyponatremia in approximately 4% to 6% by potentiating the effect of antidiuretic hormone. Elderly patients concomitantly using diuretics have greater risk of developing hyponatremia[12,13]. Tolbutamide can lead to hyponatremia by decreasing renal free water clearance[13]. Noteworthy, despite fluid retention being a common adverse effect of thiazolidinediones (pioglitazone and rosiglitazone), hyponatremia related to these drugs was reported only once[14]. There is experimental evidence that glucagon-like peptide 1 receptor agonists influence water and electrolyte balance[15]. However, to the best of our knowledge, dysnatremias (or other electrolyte disorders) related to these drugs have not reported in humans. Moreover, the new class of oral antidiabetic agents known as sodium-glucose cotransporter type 2 (SGLT2) inhibitors does not appear to be associated with electrolyte abnormalities in early clinical studies[16,17].

It has been reported that DM *per se* (independently of drugs or hyperglycemia) is associated with hyponatremia[11]. Recently, in a study in 5179 community subjects aged 55 years or more DM was associated with hyponatremia (OR = 1.98; 95%CI: 1.47-2.68), with the serum glucose levels being too low to fully explain the degree of hyponatremia[3]. Altered vasopressin metabolism, interaction between insulin and vasopressin, both of which act in the renal collecting duct, and the reabsorption of more hypotonic fluid due to slower stomach emptying have been proposed as possible underlying mechanisms of this association[18-20]. Although rare, the inverse etiological relation between hyponatremia and DM also exists. In fact, brain edema in the setting of untreated symptomatic hyponatremia may induce cerebral herniation and infarction of pituitary and hypothalamus, leading to central DM and insipidus[21].

DM is also associated with an artificially decreased or elevated serum sodium value, that is different compared with the actual systemic level. In normal subjects, serum is composed of water (approximately 93%), with fats and proteins accounting for the remaining 7%. Sodium is located in the serum water phase only. A reduction in serum water fraction (< 80%) may occur in patients with marked hyperlipidemia as with lactescent serum in uncontrolled DM. In these settings, the serum sodium concentration, measured per liter of serum, not serum water, is artificially reduced (pseudohyponatremia). The presence of normal serum sodium levels in a patient with hyperlipidemia should also raise the suspicion that hypernatremia may be present (pseudonormonatremia). The opposite phenomenon of pseudohypernatremia and pseudonormonatremia may also occur as a result of severe hypoproteinemia, not infrequently observed in diabetics with nephrotic or malabsorption syndromes. In lipemic or hypoproteinemic samples the direct ion-selective electrodes (ISE) method for the measurement of serum sodium should be used, since the indirect ISE is prone to spurious dysnatremias[22].

It is known that rapid correction of serum sodium may be followed by development of central demyelinating lesions, particularly in the pons (a disorder called central pontinemyelinolysis orosmotic demyelination) with major disability or even fatal outcome[2]. Diabetics may have an increased risk for the osmotic demyelination syndrome (ODS) during correction of hyponatremia since risk factors for this disorder (thiazide diuretics, malnutrition, hypokalemia, and hypoxia)[23] are not infrequently present in such patients. Hypokalemia is also associated with a poor outcome in patients who develop the syndrome[24].

It should be emphasized that ODS is mainly observed during overly rapid correction of chronic hyponatremia. However, in diabetic patients hypernatremia and hypokalemia (in the absence of hyponatremia or hyperosmolality) are rarely associated with ODS. The mechanism by which these electrolyte disorders may cause ODS in the diabetic state is not yet known[25,26].

It has been suggested that in cases of nonketotic hyperglycemic hyperosmolar syndrome (HHS) altered mental status is predicted best by [Na^+]; serum glucose concentration alone is considered a poor indicator. In fact, there is evidence that hyperglycemic patients with hypertonicity are symptomatic only if hypernatremia is present[5,27]. On the contrary, neurological symptoms may be absent in the context of severe gradually developing hyperglycemia[27,28]. This could be attributed to the capacity of the brain tissue to restore intracellular water by accumulating electrolytes and the so-called idiogenic osmoles. Furthermore, the brain cells are relatively permeable to glucose even in the absence of insulin[28,29]. Therefore, hyperglycemia by itself does not create severe hypertonicity in central nervous system (CNS)[28]. On the other hand, hypernatremia induces severe cellular dehydration in CNS cells. This state is associated with a rather slow compensatory accumulation of brain osmolar content[28].

The development of hypernatremia is associated with endocrine dysfunction. There is some evidence in

animals and man that hypernatremia and hyperosmolarity are associated with impairment of both insulin-mediated glucose metabolism and glucagon-dependent glucose release[30-33]. Thus, hypernatremia and hyperosmolarity should be considered as contributing factors to the occurrence of hyperglycemia in critically ill patients[34]. Moreover, hypernatremia is implicated in the profound inhibition of gonadotrophin release in postmenopausal diabetic women with HHS. Although the underlying mechanisms remain unknown, it appears that hypernatremia induces a decrease in gonadotrophin-releasing hormone expression in GT1-7 neurons[35].

Rhabdomyolysis, though uncommon, has been described in the diabetic state[36]. It appears that high serum sodium and glucose levels represent the most important determinants for the occurrence of this complication[37].

HYPOKALEMIA

The causes of hypokalemia in diabetics include: (1) redistribution of potassium [K^+] from the extracellular to the intracellular fluid compartment (shift hypokalemia due to insulin administration); (2) gastrointestinal loss of K^+ due to malabsorption syndromes (diabetic-induced motility disorders, bacterial overgrowth, chronic diarrheal states); and (3) renal loss of K^+ (due to osmotic diuresis and/or coexistent hypomagnesemia). Hypomagnesemia can cause hypokalemia possibly because a low intracellular magnesium [Mg^{2+}] concentration activates the renal outer medullary K^+ channel to secrete more K^+[38].

Exogenous insulin can induce mild hypokalemia because it promotes the entry of K^+ into skeletal muscles and hepatic cells by increasing the activity of the Na^+-K^+-ATPase pump[39]. The increased secretion of epinephrine due to insulin-induced hypoglycemia may also play a contributory role[40]. The major setting in which insulin administration leads to hypokalemia is during the treatment of severe hyperglycemia. The majority of patients with diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA) and HHS are markedly K^+-depleted. The average K^+ deficit is 3-5 mEq/kg, but it can exceed 10 mEq/kg in some cases[41,42]. A number of factors contribute to the DKA- and HHS-associated potassium depletion, including vomiting, increased renal losses due to the osmotic diuresis and ketoacid anion excretion, and the loss of K^+ from the cells due to glycogenolysis and proteolysis[41,43]. On admission, however, the serum K^+ levels are usually normal, or, in about one-third of patients, increased despite the K^+ depletion[41,43]. It is thought that hyperosmolality and insulin deficiency are primarily responsible for the relative rise in the serum potassium concentration in this setting. As mentioned, hyperglycemia increases serum osmolality resulting in movement of water out of cells. The loss of intracellular water leads to an increased intracellular K^+ concentration, favoring a gradient for K^+ to move out of the cells. Simultaneously, the friction forces between solvent (water) and solute can result in K^+ being carried along with water through the water pores in the cell membrane[43]. In contrast, acidemia probably does not play a major role given that organic acids are much less likely to influence the internal K^+ distribution[44]. Insulin therapy lowers K^+ concentration driving K^+ into cells (both directly and indirectly by reversing hyperglycemia). Therefore, insulin therapy may cause severe hypokalemia, particularly in patients with a normal or low serum K^+ concentration at presentation. Insulin administration in patients with massive K^+ deficits who are hypokalemic prior to therapy should be delayed until the serum K^+ is above 3.3 mEq/L to avoid possible arrhythmias, cardiac arrest and respiratory muscle weakness[42,45,46]. It is obvious that the risk of hypokalemia-related complications is particularly higher in diabetic subjects who have hypertension, myocardial infarction/ischemia, or heart failure as comorbidities. In addition, since diabetics are frequently on diuretics, diuretic-associated hypokalemia (as well as hypomagnesemia and hypophosphatemia) should be taken into account in this setting.

Hypokalemia is associated with impaired insulin secretion and decreased peripheral glucose utilization resulting in carbohydrate intolerance and hyperglycemia[47]. This is particularly problematic in diabetic patients causing a vicious circle where low serum K^+ levels lead to poorly controlled DM and vice versa.

HYPERKALEMIA

The incidence of hyperkalemia is higher in diabetic patients than in the general population[48,49]. Redistribution of potassium from the intracellular to the extracellular compartment (shift hyperkalemia) can induce hyperkalemia with no net total body K^+ increase. Examples of shift hyperkalemia in DM include acidosis (for each 0.1 fall in pH, potassium increases by approximately 0.4 mmol/L), insulin deficiency, hypertonicity, cell lysis (rhabdomyolysis), and drugs (*e.g.*, beta blockers). Reduced glomerular filtration of K^+ (due to acute kidney injury and chronic kidney disease) and many drugs that interfere with K^+ excretion are associated with hyperkalemia. These include angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors, angiotensin Ⅱ receptor blockers, renin inhibitors, beta blockers and potassium-sparing diuretics. Of note, the typical healthy diabetic diet is often rich in K^+ and low in sodium contributing to the occurrence of hyperkalemia in susceptible individuals[48,49]. Nevertheless, the most common causal factor of chronic hyperkalemia in diabetics is the reduced tubular secretion of K^+ due to the syndrome of hyporeninemic hypoaldosteronism[50]. This syndrome is characterized by mild to moderate renal insufficiency and patients typically present with asymptomatic hyperkalemia. The development of overt hyperkalemia is most common in patients with other risk factors that further impair the efficiency of potassium excretion, such as renal insufficiency, volume depletion, or the use of medications that interfere with potassium handling (see above).

Of note, dapagliflozin (a SGLT2 inhibitor) may be protective from the development of hyperkalemia in

patients with moderate renal impairment due to osmotic diuresis[17]. However, the administration of SGLT2 inhibitors in hypovolemic patients may cause elevated serum creatinine levels and decreases in glomerular filtration rate due to deterioration of intravascular volume contraction. Indeed, worsening renal function and hyperkalemia may occur in patients on canagliflozin, particularly those predisposed to hyperkalemia due to impaired renal function, medications or other medical conditions[51]. Hyporeninemic hypoaldosteronism is more frequently observed in diabetic and elderly patients as well as in those with chronic renal impairment. Diabetic nephropathy accounts for 43%-63% of cases comprising the most common cause of hyporeninemic hypoaldosteronism[33,50,52]. Normal ageing, especially after the sixth decade, is associated with a decline in renin production. Moreover, elderly patients may have decreased renal function even without significant elevations in serum creatinine levels [< 1.2 mg/dL (106 μmol/L)]. Consequently, diabetics (especially the elderly) on medications known to interfere with K^+ homeostasis are at increased risk for hyperkalemia[33,53]. In such cases, close K^+ monitoring is fully warranted[54]. Clinicians must also be alert that hyperkalemia in patients with type 1 DM may be due to concurrent adrenal insufficiency in the setting of autoimmune polyglandular syndrome[55].

HYPOMAGNESEMIA

Hypomagnesemia is a frequent electrolyte disorder in diabetic patients[56]. Recently, DM was identified as an independent risk factor for hypomagnesemia in community subjects aged 55 years or more (OR = 3.32; 95%CI: 2.00-5.50)[3]. In a recent prospective study in hypomagnesemic patients (either on admission or during hospitalization in an internal medicine clinic) DM was evident in a considerable proportion (40%), mainly as a contributing factor. Osmotic diuresis accompanied by inappropriate magnesiuria was the prominent underlying mechanism of hypomagnesemia in these diabetic patients[57]. Except for glucosuria, several other possible explanations for hypomagnesemia in DM have been reported. These include poor dietary intake, glomerular hyperfiltration, altered insulin metabolism, diuretic administration and recurrent metabolic acidosis[56]. Increased gastrointestinal Mg^{2+} losses due to diarrhea as a result of diabetic autonomic neuropathy can also cause low serum Mg^{2+} levels. Of note, a case of symptomatic hypomagnesemia [serum Mg^{2+} concentration 0.66 mEq/L (0.33 mmol/L), reference range 1.42-1.84 mEq/L (0.71-0.94 mmol/L)] was attributed to metformin-induced diarrhea[58]. Furthermore, insulin promotes net shift of Mg^{2+} from extracellular to intracellular space and can contribute to hypomagnesemia[59,60]. The increased secretion of epinephrine due to insulin-induced hypoglycemia may also play a role. The risk of hypomagnesemia related to insulin therapy is increased in poorly controlled diabetic patients given that hyperglycemia induces increased renal Mg^{2+} loss *via* osmotic diuresis. Hypokalemia, hypophosphatemia as well as acidosis-related urinary Mg^{2+} losses contribute to the high incidence of hypomagnesemia in the setting of diabetic ketoacidosis[61,62]. It should be noted that hypoalbuminemia is associated with spurious hypomagnesemia. In hypoalbuminemic states (serum albumin < 4 g/dL) the corrected serum Mg^{2+} should be calculated using the formula: corrected Mg^{2+} (mEq/L) = measured Mg^{2+}(mEq/L) + 0.01 × (40 - albumin in g/L)[63].

Mg^{2+} is essential for life being involved in numerous enzymatic reactions, including ATP use, cell membrane, ion channels and mitochondrial function, as well as protein synthesis. The most clinically significant consequences of hypomagnesemia are ascribed to alterations in the function of excitable membranes in nerve, muscle, and the cardiac conducting system. Moreover, low serum Mg^{2+} levels can secondarily induce hypokalemia, hypocalcemia, and hypophosphatemia, potentially causing further derangements in neuromuscular and cardiovascular physiology. Hypomagnesemia has been implicated in various long-term complications of DM, such as hypertension, increased carotid wall thickness, coronary artery disease, dyslipidemia, diabetic retinopathy, neuropathy, ischemic stroke, and foot ulcerations[56]. Hypomagnesemia has also been linked to diabetic nephropathy (from microalbuminuria to advanced renal disease)[64-66]. It has been proposed that hypomagnesemia is a predictor of end-stage renal disease in patients with diabetic nephropathy[66]. In addition, magnesium deficit is associated with carbohydrate intolerance and insulin resistance, thus inducing or worsening existing DM[67,68]. On the contrary, increased dietary Mg^{2+} intake has been associated with a reduced risk of type 2 DM[69].

HYPOCALCEMIA

Patients with DM have an increased risk for development of acute renal failure due to volume depletion, sepsis, rhabdomyolysis and drugs (*e.g.*, radiographic contrast media). In this setting severe hyperphosphatemia may occur when phosphorus cannot be excreted by the malfunctioning kidney either with or without increased cell catabolism, thus resulting in hypocalcemia. Advanced chronic renal insufficiency may be associated with hypocalcemia due to accompanying hyperphosphatemia and low levels of vitamin D. Patients with nephrotic syndrome may exhibit hypocalcemia, even if the glomerular filtration rate is well preserved. This is attributed to the loss of 25-hydroxyvitamin D_3 and its binding protein in the urine. Hypomagnesemia is another potential cause of hypocalcemia in diabetics. Mg^{2+} depletion leads to hypocalcemia mainly because of impaired release of parathyroid hormone (PTH) or skeletal and renal tubule resistance to the action of PTH[1]. Vitamin D deficiency and furosemide administration may also play a role in the occurrence of hypocalcemia[70]. There is evidence that diabetic patients are relatively hypoparathyroid[71]. In fact, a mild shift downwards in the set-point for PTH secretion in patients

with insulin-dependent DM as well as a diminished parathyroid gland responsiveness to hypocalcemia in uremic diabetic patients have been reported[72,73].

Hypoalbuminemia is associated with pseudohypocalcemia defined as a reduction of total serum calcium concentration in the presence of normal ionized serum calcium levels. In hypoalbuminemic states, one of the commonly used formulas to correct total calcium levels is by adding 0.8 mg/dL (0.2 mmol/L) to measured calcium values for every 1 g/dL decrease in serum albumin from normal value (assumed to be 4 g/dL). Given that the accuracy of this method is poor (particularly among critically ill and geriatric patients), the biologically active ionized calcium concentration should be measured when possible[1,74].

HYPERCALCEMIA

The incidence of DM in primary hyperparathyroidism and that of primary hyperparathyroidism in DM is approximately 8% and 1%, respectively. Both values are about three-fold higher than that anticipated in the general population[75]. Hyperparathyroidism is related to long-term insulin resistance and relative insulin insufficiency, leading to overt DM or deterioration of glycemic control of established DM[75,76]. It is thought that an elevated intracellular free calcium concentration (by decreasing normal insulin-stimulated glucose transport) increases the requirement for insulin, resulting in hyperparathyroidism-mediated insulin resistance[75]. Diabetic patients should be evaluated for hypercalcemia given that untreated hyperparathyroidism is linked to hypertension[75,77]. The detection of high serum calcium levels in a patient with type 1 DM should raise the suspicion that autoimmune hyperparathyroidism associated with anti-calcium-sensing receptor autoantibodies may be present[78]. Recently, a case of severe hypercalcemia [15 mg/dL (3.75 mmol/L)] in DKA was reported[79]. Dehydration might represent the most important causative factor for the occurrence of hypercalcemia in this case. A decreased bone formation due to metabolic acidosis and an increased bone mineral dissolution and resorption due to severe insulin deficiency and metabolic acidosis may also play a role[80]. Hyperglycemia-mediated inhibition of bone mineralization, insulin growth factor-1 deficiency, hypophosphatemia and immobilization are also included among the potential contributory factors of hypercalcemia in DKA[79,81,82]. Also, diabetic patients on thiazide diuretics are more prone to exhibit hypercalcemia.

HYPOPHOSPHATEMIA

Diabetic patients have underlying conditions that predispose to the development of hypophosphatemia. These include primary hyperthyroidism, vitamin D deficiency, malabsorption, and the use of diuretics (thiazides and furosemide)[83]. It is known that increased insulin levels promote the transport of both glucose and phosphate into the skeletal muscle and liver cells. However, in normal subjects the administration of insulin leads only to a slight decrement of serum phosphate levels. The risk of severe hypophosphatemia is increased in cases of underlying phosphate depletion[62,84]. Decompensated DM with ketoacidosisis associated with excessive phosphate loss due to osmotic diuresis. Despite phosphate depletion, the serum phosphate concentration at presentation is usually normal or even high because both insulin deficiency and metabolic acidosis cause a shift of phosphate out of cells[85]. Administration of insulin and fluids, and correction of ketoacidosis may reveal phosphate deficiency and cause a sharp decrease in plasma phosphate concentration due to intracellular shift[83].

In a study of 69 patient with DKA, the incidence of hyperphosphatemia was 94.7% at presentation. The mean serum phosphate concentration fell from 9.2 mg/dL (3 mmol/L) to 2.8 mg/dL (0.9 mmol/L) 12 h after initiating treatment, while some patients exhibited values as low as 1.0 mg/dL (0.32 mmol/L)[85].

The routine administration of phosphate during treatment of DKA and HHS is not recommended since randomized trials failed to show any clinical benefit from phosphate administration[42,83,86,87]. What is more, correction of hypophosphatemia may have adverse effects, such as hypocalcemia and hypomagnesemia[42,83,88]. Careful phosphate replacement is required in patients with severe hypophosphatemia of less than 1.0 mg/dL (0.32 mmol/L) and in patients who develop cardiac dysfunction, hemolytic anemia, or respiratory depression[42,89,90].

CONCLUSION

Electrolyte abnormalities are common in diabetic patients and may be associated with increased morbidity and mortality. These disturbances are particularly common in decompensated DM, in the elderly as well as in the presence of renal impairment. Patients with DM may receive complex drug regimens some of which may be associated with electrolyte disorders. Discontinuation of these medications, when possible, as well as strict control of glycemia are of paramount importance to prevent electrolyte abnormalities in diabetic patients. The successful management of these disorders can best be accomplished by elucidating the underlying pathophysiologic mechanisms.

REFERENCES

1 **Liamis G**, Milionis HJ, Elisaf M. A review of drug-induced hypocalcemia. *J Bone Miner Metab* 2009; **27**: 635-642 [PMID: 19730969 DOI: 10.1007/s00774-009-0119-x]

2 **Liamis G**, Kalogirou M, Saugos V, Elisaf M. Therapeutic approach in patients with dysnatraemias. *Nephrol Dial Transplant* 2006; **21**: 1564-1569 [PMID: 16449285 DOI: 10.1093/ndt/gfk090]

3 **Liamis G**, Rodenburg EM, Hofman A, Zietse R, Stricker BH, Hoorn EJ. Electrolyte disorders in community subjects: prevalence and risk factors. *Am J Med* 2013; **126**: 256-263 [PMID: 23332973 DOI: 10.1016/j.amjmed.2012.06.037]

4 **Elisaf MS**, Tsatsoulis AA, Katopodis KP, Siamopoulos KC. Acid-base and electrolyte disturbances in patients with diabetic ketoacidosis. *Diabetes Res Clin Pract* 1996; **34**: 23-27

[PMID: 8968687]
5 **Liamis G**, Tsimihodimos V, Doumas M, Spyrou A, Bairaktari E, Elisaf M. Clinical and laboratory characteristics of hypernatraemia in an internal medicine clinic. *Nephrol Dial Transplant* 2008; **23**: 136-143 [PMID: 17932111 DOI: 10.1093/ndt/gfm376]
6 **Hillier TA**, Abbott RD, Barrett EJ. Hyponatremia: evaluating the correction factor for hyperglycemia. *Am J Med* 1999; **106**: 399-403 [PMID: 10225241]
7 **Liamis G**, Milionis HJ, Elisaf M. Hyponatremia in patients with infectious diseases. *J Infect* 2011; **63**: 327-335 [PMID: 21835196 DOI: 10.1016/j.jinf.2011.07.013]
8 **Liamis G**, Gianoutsos C, Elisaf MS. Hyperosmolar nonketotic syndrome with hypernatremia: how can we monitor treatment? *Diabetes Metab* 2000; **26**: 403-405 [PMID: 11119020]
9 **Chiasson JL**, Aris-Jilwan N, Bélanger R, Bertrand S, Beauregard H, Ekoé JM, Fournier H, Havrankova J. Diagnosis and treatment of diabetic ketoacidosis and the hyperglycemic hyperosmolar state. *CMAJ* 2003; **168**: 859-866 [PMID: 12668546]
10 **Liamis G**, Milionis H, Elisaf M. A review of drug-induced hyponatremia. *Am J Kidney Dis* 2008; **52**: 144-153 [PMID: 18468754 DOI: 10.1053/j.ajkd.2008.03.004]
11 **Beukhof CM**, Hoorn EJ, Lindemans J, Zietse R. Novel risk factors for hospital-acquired hyponatraemia: a matched case-control study. *Clin Endocrinol* (Oxf) 2007; **66**: 367-372 [PMID: 17302870 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2265.2007.02741.x]
12 **Kadowaki T**, Hagura R, Kajinuma H, Kuzuya N, Yoshida S. Chlorpropamide-induced hyponatremia: incidence and risk factors. *Diabetes Care* 1983; **6**: 468-471 [PMID: 6443808]
13 **Moses AM**, Howanitz J, Miller M. Diuretic action of three sulfonylurea drugs. *Ann Intern Med* 1973; **78**: 541-544 [PMID: 4632790]
14 **Berker D**, Aydin Y, Arduç A, Ustün I, Ergün B, Guler S. Severe hyponatremia due to rosiglitazone use in an elderly woman with diabetes mellitus: a rare cause of syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone secretion. *Endocr Pract* 2008; **14**: 1017-1019 [PMID: 19095602 DOI: 10.4158/EP.14.8.1017]
15 **Filippatos TD**, Elisaf MS. Effects of glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonists on renal function. *World J Diabetes* 2013; **4**: 190-201 [PMID: 24147203 DOI: 10.4239/wjd.v4.i5.190]
16 **Shah NK**, Deeb WE, Choksi R, Epstein BJ. Dapagliflozin: a novel sodium-glucose cotransporter type 2 inhibitor for the treatment of type 2 diabetes mellitus. *Pharmacotherapy* 2012; **32**: 80-94 [PMID: 22392830 DOI: 10.1002/PHAR.1010]
17 **Kohan DE**, Fioretto P, Tang W, List JF. Long-term study of patients with type 2 diabetes and moderate renal impairment shows that dapagliflozin reduces weight and blood pressure but does not improve glycemic control. *Kidney Int* 2014; **85**: 962-971 [PMID: 24067431 DOI: 10.1038/ki.2013.356]
18 **Bankir L**, Bardoux P, Ahloulay M. Vasopressin and diabetes mellitus. *Nephron* 2001; **87**: 8-18 [PMID: 11174021]
19 **Bustamante M**, Hasler U, Kotova O, Chibalin AV, Mordasini D, Rousselot M, Vandewalle A, Martin PY, Féraille E. Insulin potentiates AVP-induced AQP2 expression in cultured renal collecting duct principal cells. *Am J Physiol Renal Physiol* 2005; **288**: F334-F344 [PMID: 15494547 DOI: 10.1152/ajprenal.00180.2004]
20 **Davis FB**, Davis PJ. Water metabolism in diabetes mellitus. *Am J Med* 1981; **70**: 210-214 [PMID: 7457488]
21 **Fraser CL**, Arieff AI. Fatal central diabetes mellitus and insipidus resulting from untreated hyponatremia: a new syndrome. *Ann Intern Med* 1990; **112**: 113-119 [PMID: 2294815]
22 **Liamis G**, Liberopoulos E, Barkas F, Elisaf M. Spurious electrolyte disorders: a diagnostic challenge for clinicians. *Am J Nephrol* 2013; **38**: 50-57 [PMID: 23817179 DOI: 10.1159/000351804]
23 **Lauriat SM**, Berl T. The hyponatremic patient: practical focus on therapy. *J Am Soc Nephrol* 1997; **8**: 1599-1607 [PMID: 9335390]
24 **Kallakatta RN**, Radhakrishnan A, Fayaz RK, Unnikrishnan JP, Kesavadas C, Sarma SP. Clinical and functional outcome and factors predicting prognosis in osmotic demyelination syndrome (central pontine and/or extrapontine myelinolysis) in 25 patients. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry* 2011; **82**: 326-331 [PMID: 20826870 DOI: 10.1136/jnnp.2009.201764]
25 **Hegazi MO**, Mashankar A. Central pontine myelinolysis in the hyperosmolar hyperglycaemic state. *Med Princ Pract* 2013; **22**: 96-99 [PMID: 22922267 DOI: 10.1159/000341718]
26 **Shintani M**, Yamashita M, Nakano A, Aotani D, Maeda K, Yamamoto T, Nishimura H. Central pontine and extrapontine myelinolysis associated with type 2 diabetic patient with hypokalemia. *Diabetes Res Clin Pract* 2005; **68**: 75-80 [PMID: 15811568 DOI: 10.1016/j.diabres.2004.08.005]
27 **Popli S**, Leehey DJ, Daugirdas JT, Bansal VK, Ho DS, Hano JE, Ing TS. Asymptomatic, nonketotic, severe hyperglycemia with hyponatremia. *Arch Intern Med* 1990; **150**: 1962-1964 [PMID: 2393329]
28 **Milionis HJ**, Liamis G, Elisaf MS. Appropriate treatment of hypernatraemia in diabetic hyperglycaemic hyperosmolar syndrome. *J Intern Med* 2001; **249**: 273-276 [PMID: 11285047]
29 **Lund-Andersen H**. Transport of glucose from blood to brain. *Physiol Rev* 1979; **59**: 305-352 [PMID: 375257]
30 **Komjati M**, Kastner G, Waldhäusl W, Bratusch-Marrain P. Detrimental effect of hyperosmolality on insulin-stimulated glucose metabolism in adipose and muscle tissue in vitro. *Biochem Med Metab Biol* 1988; **39**: 312-318 [PMID: 3293636]
31 **Komjati M**, Kastner G, Waldhäusl W, Bratusch-Marrain P. Effect of hyperosmolality on basal and hormone-stimulated hepatic glucose metabolism in vitro. *Eur J Clin Invest* 1989; **19**: 128-134 [PMID: 2499470]
32 **Bratusch-Marrain PR**, DeFronzo RA. Impairment of insulin-mediated glucose metabolism by hyperosmolality in man. *Diabetes* 1983; **32**: 1028-1034 [PMID: 6416909]
33 **Liamis G**, Milionis H, Elisaf M. Blood pressure drug therapy and electrolyte disturbances. *Int J Clin Pract* 2008; **62**: 1572-1580 [PMID: 18822027 DOI: 10.1111/j.1742-1241.2008.01860.x]
34 **Lindner G**, Funk GC. Hypernatremia in critically ill patients. *J Crit Care* 2013; **28**: 216.e11-216.e20 [PMID: 22762930 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcrc.2012.05.001]
35 **Lado-Abeal J**, Lorenzo-Solar M, Lago-Lestón R, Palos-Paz F, Domingez-Gerpe L. Hyperglycaemic hyperosmolar nonketotic state as a cause of low gonadotrophin levels in postmenopausal diabetic women: a role for severe hypernatraemia. *J Neuroendocrinol* 2007; **19**: 983-987 [PMID: 18001328 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2826.2007.01614.x]
36 **Lord GM**, Scott J, Pusey CD, Rees AJ, Walport MJ, Davies KA, Bulpitt C, Bloom SR, Muntoni FM. Diabetes and rhabdomyolysis. A rare complication of a common disease. *BMJ* 1993; **307**: 1126-1128 [PMID: 8251814]
37 **Singhal PC**, Abramovici M, Ayer S, Desroches L. Determinants of rhabdomyolysis in the diabetic state. *Am J Nephrol* 1991; **11**: 447-450 [PMID: 1819210]
38 **Yang L**, Frindt G, Palmer LG. Magnesium modulates ROMK channel-mediated potassium secretion. *J Am Soc Nephrol* 2010; **21**: 2109-2116 [PMID: 21030597 DOI: 10.1681/ASN.2010060617]
39 **Minaker KL**, Rowe JW. Potassium homeostasis during hyperinsulinemia: effect of insulin level, beta-blockade, and age. *Am J Physiol* 1982; **242**: E373-E377 [PMID: 6124125]
40 **Petersen KG**, Schlüter KJ, Kerp L. Regulation of serum potassium during insulin-induced hypoglycemia. *Diabetes* 1982; **31**: 615-617 [PMID: 6761199]
41 **Kreisberg RA**. Diabetic ketoacidosis: new concepts and trends in pathogenesis and treatment. *Ann Intern Med* 1978; **88**: 681-695 [PMID: 417652]
42 **Kitabchi AE**, Umpierrez GE, Murphy MB, Kreisberg RA. Hyperglycemic crises in adult patients with diabetes: a consensus statement from the American Diabetes Association. *Diabetes Care* 2006; **29**: 2739-2748 [PMID: 17130218 DOI: 10.2337/dc06-9916]
43 **Adrogué HJ**, Lederer ED, Suki WN, Eknoyan G. Determinants of plasma potassium levels in diabetic ketoacidosis.

Medicine (Baltimore) 1986; **65**: 163-172 [PMID: 3084904]
44 **Adrogué HJ**, Madias NE. Changes in plasma potassium concentration during acute acid-base disturbances. *Am J Med* 1981; **71**: 456-467 [PMID: 7025622]
45 **Kitabchi AE**, Umpierrez GE, Miles JM, Fisher JN. Hyperglycemic crises in adult patients with diabetes. *Diabetes Care* 2009; **32**: 1335-1343 [PMID: 19564476 DOI: 10.2337/dc09-9032]
46 **Beigelman PM**. Potassium in severe diabetic ketoacidosis. *Am J Med* 1973; **54**: 419-420 [PMID: 4633105]
47 **Wilcox CS**. Metabolic and adverse effects of diuretics. *Semin Nephrol* 1999; **19**: 557-568 [PMID: 10598543]
48 **Palmer BF**. Managing hyperkalemia caused by inhibitors of the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system. *N Engl J Med* 2004; **351**: 585-592 [PMID: 15295051 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMra035279]
49 **Uribarri J**, Oh MS, Carroll HJ. Hyperkalemia in diabetes mellitus. *J Diabet Complications* 1990; **4**: 3-7 [PMID: 2141843]
50 **DeFronzo RA**. Hyperkalemia and hyporeninemic hypoaldosteronism. *Kidney Int* 1980; **17**: 118-134 [PMID: 6990088]
51 **Cada DJ**, Ingram KT, Levien TL, Baker DE. Canagliflozin. *Hosp Pharm* 2013; **48**: 855-867 [PMID: 24421439 DOI: 10.1310/hpj4810-855]
52 **Arruda JA**, Batlle DC, Sehy JT, Roseman MK, Baronowski RL, Kurtzman NA. Hyperkalemia and renal insufficiency: role of selective aldosterone deficiency and tubular unresponsiveness to aldosterone. *Am J Nephrol* 1981; **1**: 160-167 [PMID: 6758577]
53 **Oxlund CS**, Henriksen JE, Tarnow L, Schousboe K, Gram J, Jacobsen IA. Low dose spironolactone reduces blood pressure in patients with resistant hypertension and type 2 diabetes mellitus: a double blind randomized clinical trial. *J Hypertens* 2013; **31**: 2094-2102 [PMID: 24107738 DOI: 10.1097/HJH.0b013e3283638b1a]
54 **Raebel MA**, Ross C, Xu S, Roblin DW, Cheetham C, Blanchette CM, Saylor G, Smith DH. Diabetes and drug-associated hyperkalemia: effect of potassium monitoring. *J Gen Intern Med* 2010; **25**: 326-333 [PMID: 20087674 DOI: 10.1007/s11606-009-1228-x]
55 **Van den Driessche A**, Eenkhoorn V, Van Gaal L, De Block C. Type 1 diabetes and autoimmune polyglandular syndrome: a clinical review. *Neth J Med* 2009; **67**: 376-387 [PMID: 20009114]
56 **Pham PC**, Pham PM, Pham SV, Miller JM, Pham PT. Hypomagnesemia in patients with type 2 diabetes. *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol* 2007; **2**: 366-373 [PMID: 17699436 DOI: 10.2215/CJN.02960906]
57 **Liamis G**, Liberopoulos E, Alexandridis G, Elisaf M. Hypomagnesemia in a department of internal medicine. *Magnes Res* 2012; **25**: 149-158 [PMID: 23261516 DOI: 10.1684/mrh.2012.0325]
58 **Svare A**. A patient presenting with symptomatic hypomagnesemia caused by metformin-induced diarrhoea: a case report. *Cases J* 2009; **2**: 156 [PMID: 19946527 DOI: 10.1186/1757-1626-2-156]
59 **Paolisso G**, Sgambato S, Passariello N, Giugliano D, Scheen A, D'Onofrio F, Lefèbvre PJ. Insulin induces opposite changes in plasma and erythrocyte magnesium concentrations in normal man. *Diabetologia* 1986; **29**: 644-647 [PMID: 3539681]
60 **Matsumura M**, Nakashima A, Tofuku Y. Electrolyte disorders following massive insulin overdose in a patient with type 2 diabetes. *Intern Med* 2000; **39**: 55-57 [PMID: 10674850]
61 **Bauza J**, Ortiz J, Dahan M, Justiniano M, Saenz R, Vélez M. Reliability of serum magnesium values during diabetic ketoacidosis in children. *Bol Asoc Med P R* 1998; **90**: 108-112 [PMID: 10224681]
62 **Liamis G**, Milionis HJ, Elisaf M. Medication-induced hypophosphatemia: a review. *QJM* 2010; **103**: 449-459 [PMID: 20356849 DOI: 10.1093/qjmed/hcq039]
63 **Kroll MH**, Elin RJ. Relationships between magnesium and protein concentrations in serum. *Clin Chem* 1985; **31**: 244-246 [PMID: 3967355]
64 **Corsonello A**, Ientile R, Buemi M, Cucinotta D, Mauro VN, Macaione S, Corica F. Serum ionized magnesium levels in type 2 diabetic patients with microalbuminuria or clinical proteinuria. *Am J Nephrol* 2000; **20**: 187-192 [PMID: 10878399 DOI: 10.1159/000013582]
65 **Pham PC**, Pham PM, Pham PA, Pham SV, Pham HV, Miller JM, Yanagawa N, Pham PT. Lower serum magnesium levels are associated with more rapid decline of renal function in patients with diabetes mellitus type 2. *Clin Nephrol* 2005; **63**: 429-436 [PMID: 15960144]
66 **Sakaguchi Y**, Shoji T, Hayashi T, Suzuki A, Shimizu M, Mitsumoto K, Kawabata H, Niihata K, Okada N, Isaka Y, Rakugi H, Tsubakihara Y. Hypomagnesemia in type 2 diabetic nephropathy: a novel predictor of end-stage renal disease. *Diabetes Care* 2012; **35**: 1591-1597 [PMID: 22498805 DOI: 10.2337/dc12-0226]
67 **Weisinger JR**, Bellorín-Font E. Magnesium and phosphorus. *Lancet* 1998; **352**: 391-396 [PMID: 9717944 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(97)10535-9]
68 **Barbagallo M**, Dominguez LJ. Magnesium metabolism in type 2 diabetes mellitus, metabolic syndrome and insulin resistance. *Arch Biochem Biophys* 2007; **458**: 40-47 [PMID: 16808892 DOI: 10.1016/j.abb.2006.05.007]
69 **Dong JY**, Xun P, He K, Qin LQ. Magnesium intake and risk of type 2 diabetes: meta-analysis of prospective cohort studies. *Diabetes Care* 2011; **34**: 2116-2122 [PMID: 21868780 DOI: 10.2337/dc11-0518]
70 **Takiishi T**, Gysemans C, Bouillon R, Mathieu C. Vitamin D and diabetes. *Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am* 2010; **39**: 419-446, table of contents [PMID: 20511061 DOI: 10.1016/j.ecl.2010.02.013]
71 **McNair P**, Christensen MS, Madsbad S, Christiansen C, Transbøl I. Hypoparathyroidism in diabetes mellitus. *Acta Endocrinol* (Copenh) 1981; **96**: 81-86 [PMID: 7456985]
72 **Schwarz P**, Sørensen HA, Momsen G, Friis T, Transbøl I, McNair P. Hypocalcemia and parathyroid hormone responsiveness in diabetes mellitus: a tri-sodium-citrate clamp study. *Acta Endocrinol* (Copenh) 1992; **126**: 260-263 [PMID: 1574956]
73 **Heidbreder E**, Götz R, Schafferhans K, Heidland A. Diminished parathyroid gland responsiveness to hypocalcemia in diabetic patients with uremia. *Nephron* 1986; **42**: 285-289 [PMID: 3960240]
74 **Byrnes MC**, Huynh K, Helmer SD, Stevens C, Dort JM, Smith RS. A comparison of corrected serum calcium levels to ionized calcium levels among critically ill surgical patients. *Am J Surg* 2005; **189**: 310-314 [PMID: 15792757 DOI: 10.1016/j.amjsurg.2004.11.017]
75 **Taylor WH**, Khaleeli AA. Coincident diabetes mellitus and primary hyperparathyroidism. *Diabetes Metab Res Rev* 2005; **17**: 175-180 [PMID: 11424230]
76 **Procopio M**, Borretta G. Derangement of glucose metabolism in hyperparathyroidism. *J Endocrinol Invest* 2003; **26**: 1136-1142 [PMID: 15008255]
77 **Gulcelik NE**, Bozkurt F, Tezel GG, Kaynaroglu V, Erbas T. Normal parathyroid hormone levels in a diabetic patient with parathyroid adenoma. *Endocrine* 2009; **35**: 147-150 [PMID: 19116787 DOI: 10.1007/s12020-008-9135-1]
78 **Pelletier-Morel L**, Fabien N, Mouhoub Y, Boitard C, Larger E. Hyperparathyroidism in a patient with autoimmune polyglandular syndrome. *Intern Med* 2008; **47**: 1911-1915 [PMID: 18981636]
79 **Makaya T**, Chatterjee S, Arundel P, Bevan C, Wright NP. Severe hypercalcemia in diabetic ketoacidosis: a case report. *Diabetes Care* 2013; **36**: e44 [PMID: 23520372 DOI: 10.2337/dc12-1845]
80 **Topaloglu AK**, Yildizdas D, Yilmaz HL, Mungan NO, Yuksel B, Ozer G. Bone calcium changes during diabetic ketoacidosis: a comparison with lactic acidosis due to volume depletion. *Bone* 2005; **37**: 122-127 [PMID: 15869925 DOI: 10.1016/j.bone.2005.03.012]
81 **Balint E**, Szabo P, Marshall CF, Sprague SM. Glucose-

induced inhibition of in vitro bone mineralization. *Bone* 2001; **28**: 21-28 [PMID: 11165939]
82 **Bereket A**, Wilson TA, Kolasa AJ, Fan J, Lang CH. Regulation of the insulin-like growth factor system by acute acidosis. *Endocrinology* 1996; **137**: 2238-2245 [PMID: 8641171]
83 **Fisher JN**, Kitabchi AE. A randomized study of phosphate therapy in the treatment of diabetic ketoacidosis. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 1983; **57**: 177-180 [PMID: 6406531]
84 **Moe SM**. Disorders involving calcium, phosphorus, and magnesium. *Prim Care* 2008; **35**: 215-237, v-vi [PMID: 18486714 DOI: 10.1016/j.pop.2008.01.007]
85 **Kebler R**, McDonald FD, Cadnapaphornchai P. Dynamic changes in serum phosphorus levels in diabetic ketoacidosis. *Am J Med* 1985; **79**: 571-576 [PMID: 3933341]
86 **Keller U**, Berger W. Prevention of hypophosphatemia by phosphate infusion during treatment of diabetic ketoacidosis and hyperosmolar coma. *Diabetes* 1980; **29**: 87-95 [PMID: 6766411]
87 **Wilson HK**, Keuer SP, Lea AS, Boyd AE, Eknoyan G. Phosphate therapy in diabetic ketoacidosis. *Arch Intern Med* 1982; **142**: 517-520 [PMID: 6802095]
88 **Winter RJ**, Harris CJ, Phillips LS, Green OC. Diabetic ketoacidosis. Induction of hypocalcemia and hypomagnesemia by phosphate therapy. *Am J Med* 1979; **67**: 897-900 [PMID: 116547]
89 **Kreisberg RA**. Phosphorus deficiency and hypophosphatemia. *Hosp Pract* 1977; **12**: 121-128 [PMID: 402311]
90 **Evans KJ**, Thompson J, Spratt SE, Lien LF, Vorderstrasse A. The implementation and evaluation of an evidence-based protocol to treat diabetic ketoacidosis: a quality improvement study. *Adv Emerg Nurs J* 2014; **36**: 189-198 [PMID: 24785671]

P- Reviewer: Gillessen A, Haidara M, Swierczynski JT, Tziomalos K
S- Editor: Ji FF **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Clinical Cases

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.12998/wjcc.v2.i10.497

World J Clin Cases 2014 October 16; 2(10): 497-506
ISSN 2307-8960 (online)

REVIEW

Practical strategies for modulating foam cell formation and behavior

Elisabeth Uitz, Babak Bahadori, Mark F McCarty, Mohammed H Moghadasian

Elisabeth Uitz, Babak Bahadori, Department of Internal Medicine 2, University Hospital of St. Poelten, Karl Landsteiner Private University of Health and Life Sciences, Probst-Fuehrer-Str. 4, Austria
Mark F McCarty, Catalytic Longevity, Carlsbad, CA 92009, United States
Mohammed H Moghadasian, Department of Human Nutritional Sciences, University of Manitoba, Winnipeg, R2H 2A6 Manitoba, Canada
Author contributions: Uitz E designed and wrote the manuscript and performed the majority of data analysing; Bahadori B and McCarty MF provided analytical tools and were also involved in data analysing and editing the manuscript; Moghadasian MH coordinated and provided the data collection of all the human material in addition to providing mental support for this work.
Correspondence to: Elisabeth Uitz, MD, Department of Internal Medicine 2, University Hospital of St. Poelten, Karl Landsteiner Private University of Health and Life Sciences, 3100 St. Poelten, Probst-Fuehrer-Str. 4, Austria. elisabeth.uitz@aon.at
Telephone: +43-2742-900472221 Fax: +43-2742-900419006
Received: February 10, 2014 Revised: August 5, 2014
Accepted: August 27, 2014
Published online: October 16, 2014

Abstract

Although high density lipoprotein (HDL)-mediated reverse cholesterol transport is crucial to the prevention and reversal of atheroma, a recent meta-analysis makes evident that current pharmaceutical strategies for modulating HDL cholesterol levels lower cardiovascular risk only to the extent that they concurrently decrease low density lipoprotein (LDL) cholesterol. This corresponds well with findings of a recent Mendelian randomization analysis, in which genetic polymorphisms associated with HDL cholesterol but no other known cardiovascular risk factors failed to predict risk for myocardial infarction. Although it is still seems appropriate to search for therapies that could improve the efficiency with which HDL particles induce reverse cholesterol transport, targeting HDL cholesterol levels *per se* with current measures appears to be futile. It may therefore be more promising to promote reverse cholesterol transport with agents that directly target foam cells. Macrophage expression of the cholesterol transport proteins adenosine triphosphate binding cassette transporter A1, adenosine triphosphate binding cassette transporter G1, and scavenger receptor class B member 1 is transcriptionally up-regulated by activated liver X receptors (LXR), whereas nuclear factor (NF)-kappaB antagonizes their expression. Taurine, which inhibits atherogenesis in rodent studies, has just been discovered to act as a weak agonist for LXRalpha. Conversely, it may be possible to oppose NF-kappaB activation in macrophages with a range of measures. Induction of heme oxygenase-1, which can be attained with phase 2 inducer phytochemicals such as lipoic acid and green tea catechins, promotes reverse cholesterol transport in macrophages and inhibits atherogenesis in rodents, likely due to, in large part, NF-kappaB antagonism. Inhibition of macrophage nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate (NADPH) oxidase activity with the spirulina-derived bilirubin-mimetic phycocyanobilin may also oppose NF-kappaB activation, and salicylic acid similarly should be useful for this purpose. The 5' adenosine monophosphate-activated protein kinase activator berberine promotes macrophage reverse cholesterol transport in cell culture; metformin probably shares this property. Many of these measures could also be expected to promote plaque stability by suppressing foam cell production of inflammatory cytokines and matrix metalloproteinases, and to reduce intimal monocyte infiltration by anti-inflammatory effects on vascular endothelium. Direct targeting of foam cells with agents such as phase 2 inducers, spirulina, salicylate, taurine, and berberine or metformin, may hence have considerable potential for preventing and reversing atheroma, and for preventing the plaque rupture that triggers vascular thrombosis.

Key words: Atherosclerosis; Cholesterol; Inflammation;

Phytochemical; Nutraceutical; Atherogenesis; Plaque; Cytokine; Antioxidant

Core tip: Reverse cholesterol transport from foam cells is of key importance to prevention and control of atherosclerosis. This essay reviews the molecular biology of foam cell regulation, and proposes that certain agents may be capable of acting directly on foam cells to amplify reverse cholesterol transport while also promoting plaque stability by limiting foam cell production of inflammatory cytokines and matrix metalloproteinases. Phase 2 inducers such as lipoic acid and green tea catechins, spirulina, salicylate, taurine, and 5' adenosine monophosphate-activated protein kinase activators such as metformin or berberine, appear to have potential in this regard-while acting in additional ways to benefit vascular health.

Uitz E, Bahadori B, McCarty MF, Moghadasian MH. Practical strategies for modulating foam cell formation and behavior. *World J Clin Cases* 2014; 2(10): 497-506 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2307-8960/full/v2/i10/497.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.12998/wjcc.v2.i10.497

PHARMACEUTICAL HIGH DENSITY LIPOPROTEIN MODULATION HAS PROVED DISAPPOINTING

Although reverse cholesterol transport from foam cells mediated by high density lipoprotein (HDL) particles clearly plays a key role in the prevention and control of atherosclerosis (Figure 1) and its complications[1-3], a recent meta-analysis strongly suggests that current pharmaceutical measures for increasing HDL cholesterol (*e.g.*, niacin, fibrates, cholesterylester transfer protein inhibitors) do not enhance health outcomes in at-risk subjects-or rather, only do so to the extent that, like niacin, they favorably influence other determinants of atherogenesis such as low density lipoprotein (LDL) and apoB-bearing lipoproteins[4]. The failure of niacin in the AIM-HIGH trial-despite evidence of benefit in other studies[5,6]-might then be explained by the fact that patients in the control group received a higher dose of statin such that reductions of LDL cholesterol were equivalent in each group[7]. Analogously, a Mendelian randomization analysis has determined that genotypes associated with elevated HDL cholesterol (but no other known determinants of cardiovascular risk), are not associated with a decline in risk for myocardial infarction[8]. A similar analysis focusing on genetic determinants of LDL cholesterol provides striking confirmation of LDL's pathogenicity[9]. The well-established epidemiological association of low HDL cholesterol with increased cardiovascular risk might therefore reflect the fact that low HDL cholesterol levels can serve as a marker for metabolic states-such as the metabolic syndrome-that are truly pathogenic; a similar analysis applies to moderately elevated homocysteine. There still may be scope for developing new drugs or procedures that improve the capacity of HDL particles to achieve reverse transport[10-13]-but available pharmaceutical agents capable of elevating HDL cholesterol do not seem to have that property. As the authors of the recent meta-analysis note: "Raising high density lipoprotein cholesterol without considering effects on high density lipoprotein function seem to have little promise for the prevention of cardiovascular events"[4].

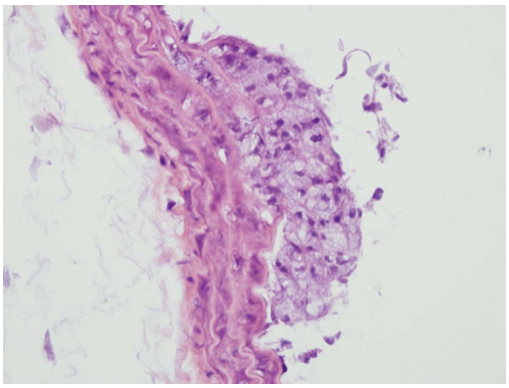


Figure 1 An atherosclerotic plaque at its early stage of development in the thoracic aorta of an apolipoprotein E-KO mouse is illustrated. The plaque is primarily composed of apparent foam cells. HE staining × 400.

It bears mentioning that the low HDL cholesterol levels seen in subjects carrying the Milano variant of apoA-1 are not associated with aggravated cardiovascular risk[14]; perhaps this reflects the efficiency with which Milano HDL delivers cholesterol to the liver for catabolism. Conversely, the elevation of HDL cholesterol associated with niacin therapy may reflect the fact that clinical concentrations of niacin impede the liver's ability to catabolize holo-HDL particles[15]; while this increases the circulating apoA-1 pool, the amount of cholesterol per HDL particle also rises. Whether the increase in HDL associated with moderate alcohol consumption-likely attributable to enhanced hepatic synthesis of apoA-1[16]-is partially responsible for the decrease in cardiovascular risk observed in by prudent drinkers, is not yet clear; activation of 5' adenosine monophosphate-activated protein kinase (AMPK) by ethanol-derived acetate may contribute to alcohol's vascular benefits[17].

TARGETING FOAM CELLS DIRECTLY TO MODULATE FOAM CELL FORMATION AND BEHAVIOUR

Despite the seeming inutility of current efforts to modulate HDL, it may still be feasible to promote reverse cholesterol transport with agents that act directly on foam cells to enhance their capacity to export cholesterol. Moreover, some of these agents could be expected to decrease foam cell uptake of modified LDL particles, and to work in other ways to promote plaque stabilization.

Egress of cholesterol from macrophages and foam

cells is mediated by several membrane transport proteins, namely adenosine triphosphate binding cassette transporter A1 (ABCA1), adenosine triphosphate binding cassette transporter G1 (ABCG1), and scavenger receptor class B member 1 (SRB-1); ABCA1 preferentially interacts with lipid-poor apoA-1, ABCG1 can transfer cholesterol to all HDL particles, and SRB-1 interacts with a wide range of lipoproteins[18]. The transcription of ABCA1 and ABCG1 is promoted by the liver X receptors (LXR) receptor, a transcription factor whose physiological activation is mediated by certain hydroxylated metabolites of cholesterol produced within macrophages which can function as ligands for LXR[19,20]. Increased intracellular cholesterol in macrophages also promotes increased expression of SRB-1, although this effect does not seem to be mediated *via* LXR[21]. In this way, increased cholesterol uptake by macrophages provokes a compensatory increase in cholesterol export induced by cholesterol metabolites. This LXR-mediated promotion of reverse cholesterol transport *via* HDL can be antagonized by a number of pro-inflammatory cytokines and agonists which have the common effect of activating nuclear factor (NF)-kappaB; concurrent suppression of NF-kappaB activity largely eliminates this inhibition of reverse cholesterol transport[22-27]. NF-kappaB activity somehow opposes the transcription of ABCA1, ABCG1, and SRB-1; how this occurs is still unclear. The balance between LXR and NF-kappaB activities is hence a key determinant of foam cell formation. NF-kappaB activation also is a mediator of inflammatory cytokine production by foam cells, and can promote plaque destabilization by inducing production of matrix metalloproteinases (MMP)[25,28]-whereas LXR suppresses production of MMP-9[29].

Heme oxygenase-1, phase 2 inducers, bilirubin, and spirulina

A number of studies reveal that induction of heme oxygenase-1 (HO-1) in foam cells promotes reverse cholesterol transport, induces increased expression of ABCA1, ABCG1, and SRB-1, and acts in other ways to suppress foam cell production of pro-inflammatory cytokines and plaque-destabilizing metalloproteinases[30-37]. Hence, HO-1 induction can aid prevention of plaque formation, promote plaque regression, and render plaque more stable. Suppression of NF-kappaB activation appears likely to underlie many of these protective effects, since HO-1 activity has been shown to impede NF-kappaB activation in a number of circumstances[38-47]. There appears to be no evidence that HO-1 could influence LXR function. Macrophage HO-1 induction can also oppose AP-1 activation, an effect which could be expected to reduce uptake of modified LDL by diminishing expression of the SR-A receptor[32,33]. The respective roles of HO-1 products carbon monoxide and biliverdin/bilirubin in favorable modulation of foam cell function have not yet been clarified. As HO-1 can be induced by phase 2-inductive phytochemicals *via* the Nrf2 transcription factor[48], such agents evidently have potential for promoting reverse cholesterol transport and aiding prevention, regression, and stabilization of plaque. Lipoic acid, a broad range of flavanoids (including notably green tea catechins), isothiocyanates from crucifera, and organosulfur compounds from garlic and onions, can serve as phase 2 inducers[49-57]-albeit what intakes of these might have a functionally significant impact on HO-1 in foam cells is unknown. Lipoic acid is of particular interest in this regard, inasmuch as well-defined dose schedules (600-1800 mg daily) exert protective effects in diabetic neuropathy, which seem likely to reflect phase 2 induction[58]. Not surprisingly, lipoic acid exerts anti-atherosclerotic activity in rodents[59-62].

The antioxidant effects of HO-1 are mediated largely by bilirubin, which functions physiologically to inhibit certain isoforms of nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate (NADPH) oxidase[63-66]. The inverse correlation of serum bilirubin levels with cardiovascular risk observed in many epidemiological studies[67-69] may well reflect the antioxidant impact of free bilirubin on the vascular wall-endothelium, foam cells, and smooth muscle cells. A number of agonists which stimulate NF-kappaB activity in macrophages concurrently activate NADPH oxidase, which boosts NF-kappaB activation *via* oxidant mechanisms[70-79]. It is therefore reasonable to suspect that HO-1 induction promotes reverse cholesterol transport, in part, by suppressing the up-regulatory impact of NADPH oxidase on NF-kappaB activity. Consistent with this possibility, the ability of advanced glycation end-products to suppress expression of ABCA1 and ABCG1 expression in macrophages is blocked by inhibitors of NADPH oxidase[80,81]. Macrophage NADPH oxidase activity could also be expected to promote foam cell formation by promoting oxidative modification of LDL.

Recent studies indicate that bilirubin's antioxidant effect can be mimicked by phycocyanobilin (PhyCB), a prominent light-absorbing chromophore in cyanobacteria such as spirulina; PhyCB is a metabolite and close structural analog of biliverdin, the precursor of bilirubin[82,83]. Not surprisingly, the only study to date which has evaluated oral administration of spirulina or its PhyCB-bearing protein phycocyanin in a rodent model of atherogenesis (cholesterol-fed hamsters) observed a profound anti-atherosclerotic effect[84]. An anti-inflammatory impact on vascular endothelial cells, coupled with a suppressive impact on intimal foam cell formation, seems likely to account for this observation. The ability of bilirubin and of PhyCB to maintain reverse cholesterol transport in macrophages stimulated with various pro-inflammatory agonists that otherwise would inhibit it, should be assessed.

Salicylate suppresses NF-kappaB activity

Activation of NF-kappaB can often be suppressed more directly with salicylate, a direct inhibitor of inhibit the inhibitor of nuclear factor kappa-B kinase beta (IKK-beta), in clinical doses that do not entail important inhibition of cyclooxygenase, and hence are relatively safe[85-88]. In foam

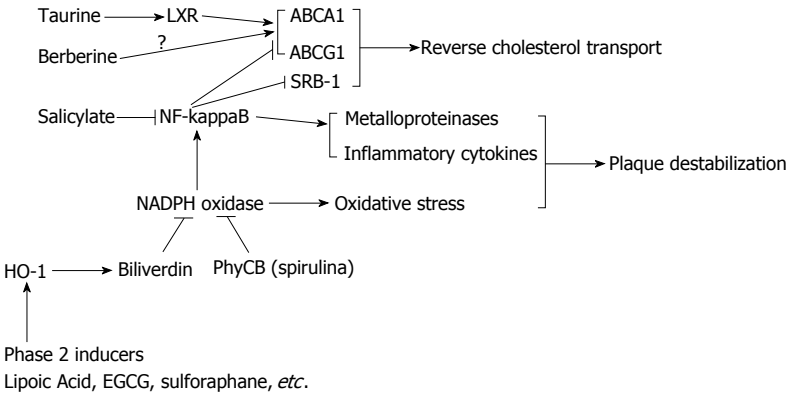


Figure 2 Nutraceutical/drug regulation of foam cell cholesterol transport and plaque stability. LXR: Liver X receptors; HO-1: Heme oxygenase-1; NF-kappaB: Nuclear factor-kappaB; ABCA1: Adenosine triphosphate binding cassette transporter A1; ABCG1: Adenosine triphosphate binding cassette transporter G1; SRB-1: Scavenger receptor class B member 1; NADPH oxidase:: Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate oxidase:; EGCG: Epigallocatechin gallate; HO-1: Heme oxygenase-1; PhyCB: Phycocyanobilin.

cells *in vitro*, aspirin (which shares salicylate's capacity to inhibit IKK-beta) was found to suppress the transcriptional activity of NF-kappaB and-likely as a result - boost expression of ABCA1 and SRB-1 while suppressing that of matrix metalloproteinase-9 (a mediator of plaque instability)[25]. In doses of 3-4.5 g daily, salicylate (preferably as salsalate) has been shown to modestly aid glycemic control in diabetics, likely *via* its inhibition of IKK-beta[89-91]; it might be feasible to employ salicylate in comparable doses to promote reverse cholesterol transport and stabilize plaque in patients with atheroma.

Taurine as an LXR agonist

Pharmaceutical LXR agonists can promote reverse cholesterol transport in macrophages, and some of these are being evaluated as potential new drugs for control of atherosclerosis[92-94]. Unfortunately, most such agents also boost hepatic lipogenesis *via* LXR activity, an effect viewed as undesirable[94]. A particularly intriguing recent discovery is that the essential cofactor taurine can act as a weak agonist for LXRalpha; moreover, taurine can enhance the expression of ABCA1and ABCG1, and promote reverse cholesterol transport, in cultured macrophages[95]. Curiously, owing to a countervailing effect, taurine fails to promote hepatic lipogenesis, and is very well tolerated[95]. A number of studies have demonstrated that dietary taurine can impede atherogenesis in rodent models of this disorder[96-103]; this effect is stronger than could be predicted from the modest hypolipidemic effects of taurine in rodents, and it would be of interest to know whether a favorable impact on the function of intimal macrophages plays a role in taurine's anti-atherosclerotic activity. If so, taurine-which appears to have minimal impact on serum lipids in humans-might have clinical utility for preventing and controlling atherosclerosis[104,105]. Of related interest is the possibility that taurine's antioxidant activity may be helpful for preventing LDL modification mediated by hypochlorous acid, a myeloperoxidase product[106]. Moreover, rodent and limited clinical studies suggest that taurine supplementation has the potential to favorably influence platelet stability, blood pressure, and the failing heart[107]. The continuing neglect of this inexpensive and well tolerated nutrient by clinical researchers is mystifying.

AMPK activators

The anti-diabetic nutraceutical berberine, whose clinical efficacy resembles that of metformin in being contingent on activation of AMPK, has exerted anti-atherogenic effects in some but not all rodent models of this disorder[108-110]. The AMPK activator AICAR has been shown to promote reverse cholesterol transport in cultured macrophages by boosting expression of ABCG1[111]. Studies examining the impact of berberine on cultured macrophages report that it can exert a range of effects likely to antagonize foam cell formation and stabilize plaque-inhibiting activation of NADPH oxidase and NF-kappaB, inhibiting MMP-9 expression, and antagonizing cholesterol accumulation by inducing expression of ABCA1 or SRB-1, or suppressing expression of the LOX-1 LDL receptor for oxidized LDL[112-114]. On the other hand, one study found that berberine exposure increased macrophage uptake of modified LDL by increasing expression of the SRA-1 receptor[115]. The impact of metformin on foam cell function appears to have received little or no study. *In vivo*, berberine could also be expected to reduce foam cell formation by decreasing circulating LDL; it boosts hepatocyte expression of the LDL receptor by a mechanism that is complementary to that of statins[116].

CONCLUSION

It should not go unnoted that many of the agents discussed here-notably phase 2 inducers[117-122], PhyCB[123-125], salsalate[126-128], and berberine or metformin[129-134]-have the potential to impede foam cell formation by exerting anti-inflammatory effects on endothelial cells that would be expected to impede monocyte migration across the endothelial barrier into arterial intima. Each of these agents can work in various ways to inhibit endothelial NF-kap-

paB activity, which promotes the adhesion of monocytes to the endothelial surface and their subsequent transmigration (Figure 2)[135-137].

In summation-whereas current pharmaceutical strategies for increasing HDL cholesterol appear to have little clinical utility (aside from those which concurrently lower LDL levels), other clinically feasible measures which directly influence intimal macrophages have the potential to promote reverse cholesterol transport, and hence achieve the primary purpose intended for HDL elevation. These measures include administration of phase 2-inducing nutraceuticals (such as lipoic acid, green tea catechins, and cruciferous isothiocyanates), spirulina or PhyCB, salsalate, taurine, and berberine. These effects are mediated primarily by inhibition of NF-kappaB activation or by LXRalpha agonism. Moreover, most of these agents might be expected to impact foam cell function in other complementary ways that would be clinically useful-suppressing macrophage uptake of modified LDL, and inhibiting macrophage production of inflammatory cytokines and matrix metalloproteinases that could destabilize plaque. And most of them, *via* direct anti-inflammatory effects on vascular endothelium, should also impede foam cell formation by suppressing transendothelial migration of monocytes. These agents evidently merit further evaluation, both in animal models and ultimately clinical trials, as measures for preventing, reversing, and stabilizing arterial plaque. And the fact that most of these agents are nutraceuticals suggests that they might be especially feasible for use in primary prevention.

REFERENCES

1 **Poglitsch CL**, Thompson NL. Interaction of antibodies with Fc receptors in substrate-supported planar membranes measured by total internal reflection fluorescence microscopy. *Biochemistry* 1990; **29**: 248-254 [PMID: 2138914 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2010-0163]

2 **Oram JF**. Tangier disease and ABCA1. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2000; **1529**: 321-330 [PMID: 11111099]

3 **Kolovou GD**, Mikhailidis DP, Anagnostopoulou KK, Daskalopoulou SS, Cokkinos DV. Tangier disease four decades of research: a reflection of the importance of HDL. *Curr Med Chem* 2006; **13**: 771-782 [PMID: 16611066]

4 **Briel M**, Ferreira-Gonzalez I, You JJ, Karanicolas PJ, Akl EA, Wu P, Blechacz B, Bassler D, Wei X, Sharman A, Whitt I, Alves da Silva S, Khalid Z, Nordmann AJ, Zhou Q, Walter SD, Vale N, Bhatnagar N, O'Regan C, Mills EJ, Bucher HC, Montori VM, Guyatt GH. Association between change in high density lipoprotein cholesterol and cardiovascular disease morbidity and mortality: systematic review and meta-regression analysis. *BMJ* 2009; **338**: b92 [PMID: 19221140 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.b92]

5 **Bruckert E**, Labreuche J, Amarenco P. Meta-analysis of the effect of nicotinic acid alone or in combination on cardiovascular events and atherosclerosis. *Atherosclerosis* 2010; **210**: 353-361 [PMID: 20079494 DOI: 10.1016/j.atherosclerosis.2009.12.023]

6 **Phan BA**, Muñoz L, Shadzi P, Isquith D, Triller M, Brown BG, Zhao XQ. Effects of niacin on glucose levels, coronary stenosis progression, and clinical events in subjects with normal baseline glucose levels (& lt; 100 mg/dl): a combined analysis of the Familial Atherosclerosis Treatment Study (FATS), HDL-Atherosclerosis Treatment Study (HATS), Armed Forces Regression Study (AFREGS), and Carotid Plaque Composition by MRI during lipid-lowering (CPC) study. *Am J Cardiol* 2013; **111**: 352-355 [PMID: 23168285 DOI: 10.1016/j.amjcard.2012.09.034]

7 **Boden WE**, Probstfield JL, Anderson T, Chaitman BR, Desvignes-Nickens P, Koprowicz K, McBride R, Teo K, Weintraub W. Niacin in patients with low HDL cholesterol levels receiving intensive statin therapy. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **365**: 2255-2267 [PMID: 22085343 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1107579]

8 **Voight BF**, Peloso GM, Orho-Melander M, Frikke-Schmidt R, Barbalic M, Jensen MK, Hindy G, Hólm H, Ding EL, Johnson T, Schunkert H, Samani NJ, Clarke R, Hopewell JC, Thompson JF, Li M, Thorleifsson G, Newton-Cheh C, Musunuru K, Pirruccello JP, Saleheen D, Chen L, Stewart A, Schillert A, Thorsteinsdottir U, Thorgeirsson G, Anand S, Engert JC, Morgan T, Spertus J, Stoll M, Berger K, Martinelli N, Girelli D, McKeown PP, Patterson CC, Epstein SE, Devaney J, Burnett MS, Mooser V, Ripatti S, Surakka I, Nieminen MS, Sinisalo J, Lokki ML, Perola M, Havulinna A, de Faire U, Gigante B, Ingelsson E, Zeller T, Wild P, de Bakker PI, Klungel OH, Maitland-van der Zee AH, Peters BJ, de Boer A, Grobbee DE, Kamphuisen PW, Deneer VH, Elbers CC, Onland-Moret NC, Hofker MH, Wijmenga C, Verschuren WM, Boer JM, van der Schouw YT, Rasheed A, Frossard P, Demissie S, Willer C, Do R, Ordovas JM, Abecasis GR, Boehnke M, Mohlke KL, Daly MJ, Guiducci C, Burtt NP, Surti A, Gonzalez E, Purcell S, Gabriel S, Marrugat J, Peden J, Erdmann J, Diemert P, Willenborg C, König IR, Fischer M, Hengstenberg C, Ziegler A, Buysschaert I, Lambrechts D, Van de Werf F, Fox KA, El Mokhtari NE, Rubin D, Schrezenmeir J, Schreiber S, Schäfer A, Danesh J, Blankenberg S, Roberts R, McPherson R, Watkins H, Hall AS, Overvad K, Rimm E, Boerwinkle E, Tybjaerg-Hansen A, Cupples LA, Reilly MP, Melander O, Mannucci PM, Ardissino D, Siscovick D, Elosua R, Stefansson K, O'Donnell CJ, Salomaa V, Rader DJ, Peltonen L, Schwartz SM, Altshuler D, Kathiresan S. Plasma HDL cholesterol and risk of myocardial infarction: a mendelian randomisation study. *Lancet* 2012; **380**: 572-580 [PMID: 22607825 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(12)60312-2]

9 **Ference BA**, Yoo W, Alesh I, Mahajan N, Mirowska KK, Mewada A, Kahn J, Afonso L, Williams KA, Flack JM. Effect of long-term exposure to lower low-density lipoprotein cholesterol beginning early in life on the risk of coronary heart disease: a Mendelian randomization analysis. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2012; **60**: 2631-2639 [PMID: 23083789 DOI: 10.1016/j.jacc.2012.09.017]

10 **Khera AV**, Cuchel M, de la Llera-Moya M, Rodrigues A, Burke MF, Jafri K, French BC, Phillips JA, Mucksavage ML, Wilensky RL, Mohler ER, Rothblat GH, Rader DJ. Cholesterol efflux capacity, high-density lipoprotein function, and atherosclerosis. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **364**: 127-135 [PMID: 21226578 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1001689]

11 **Nissen SE**, Tsunoda T, Tuzcu EM, Schoenhagen P, Cooper CJ, Yasin M, Eaton GM, Lauer MA, Sheldon WS, Grines CL, Halpern S, Crowe T, Blankenship JC, Kerensky R. Effect of recombinant ApoA-I Milano on coronary atherosclerosis in patients with acute coronary syndromes: a randomized controlled trial. *JAMA* 2003; **290**: 2292-2300 [PMID: 14600188 DOI: 10.1001/jama.290.17.2292]

12 **Waksman R**, Torguson R, Kent KM, Pichard AD, Suddath WO, Satler LF, Martin BD, Perlman TJ, Maltais JA, Weissman NJ, Fitzgerald PJ, Brewer HB. A first-in-man, randomized, placebo-controlled study to evaluate the safety and feasibility of autologous delipidated high-density lipoprotein plasma infusions in patients with acute coronary syndrome. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2010; **55**: 2727-2735 [PMID: 20538165 DOI: 10.1016/j.jacc.2009.12.067]

13 **Roberts CK**, Ng C, Hama S, Eliseo AJ, Barnard RJ. Effect of a short-term diet and exercise intervention on inflammatory/anti-inflammatory properties of HDL in overweight/obese

men with cardiovascular risk factors. *J Appl Physiol* (1985) 2006; **101**: 1727-1732 [PMID: 16902063]
14 **Sirtori CR**, Calabresi L, Franceschini G, Baldassarre D, Amato M, Johansson J, Salvetti M, Monteduro C, Zulli R, Muiesan ML, Agabiti-Rosei E. Cardiovascular status of carriers of the apolipoprotein A-I(Milano) mutant: the Limone sul Garda study. *Circulation* 2001; **103**: 1949-1954 [PMID: 11306522]
15 **Zhang LH**, Kamanna VS, Zhang MC, Kashyap ML. Niacin inhibits surface expression of ATP synthase beta chain in HepG2 cells: implications for raising HDL. *J Lipid Res* 2008; **49**: 1195-1201 [PMID: 18316796 DOI: 10.1194/jlr.M700426-JLR200]
16 **Amarasuriya RN**, Gupta AK, Civen M, Horng YC, Maeda T, Kashyap ML. Ethanol stimulates apolipoprotein A-I secretion by human hepatocytes: implications for a mechanism for atherosclerosis protection. *Metabolism* 1992; **41**: 827-832 [PMID: 1640859]
17 **Sakakibara S**, Murakami R, Takahashi M, Fushimi T, Murohara T, Kishi M, Kajimoto Y, Kitakaze M, Kaga T. Vinegar intake enhances flow-mediated vasodilatation via upregulation of endothelial nitric oxide synthase activity. *Biosci Biotechnol Biochem* 2010; **74**: 1055-1061 [PMID: 20460711]
18 **Berrougui H**, Khalil A. Age-associated decrease of high-density lipoprotein-mediated reverse cholesterol transport activity. *Rejuvenation Res* 2009; **12**: 117-126 [PMID: 19405812 DOI: 10.1089/rej.2008.0840]
19 **Tontonoz P**, Mangelsdorf DJ. Liver X receptor signaling pathways in cardiovascular disease. *Mol Endocrinol* 2003; **17**: 985-993 [PMID: 12690094]
20 **Beyea MM**, Heslop CL, Sawyez CG, Edwards JY, Markle JG, Hegele RA, Huff MW. Selective up-regulation of LXR-regulated genes ABCA1, ABCG1, and APOE in macrophages through increased endogenous synthesis of 24(S),25-epoxycholesterol. *J Biol Chem* 2007; **282**: 5207-5216 [PMID: 17186944]
21 **Yu L**, Cao G, Repa J, Stangl H. Sterol regulation of scavenger receptor class B type I in macrophages. *J Lipid Res* 2004; **45**: 889-899 [PMID: 14967816]
22 **Baranova I**, Vishnyakova T, Bocharov A, Chen Z, Remaley AT, Stonik J, Eggerman TL, Patterson AP. Lipopolysaccharide down regulates both scavenger receptor B1 and ATP binding cassette transporter A1 in RAW cells. *Infect Immun* 2002; **70**: 2995-3003 [PMID: 12010990]
23 **Ferreira V**, van Dijk KW, Groen AK, Vos RM, van der Kaa J, Gijbels MJ, Havekes LM, Pannekoek H. Macrophage-specific inhibition of NF-kappaB activation reduces foam-cell formation. *Atherosclerosis* 2007; **192**: 283-290 [PMID: 16938301]
24 **Chen M**, Li W, Wang N, Zhu Y, Wang X. ROS and NF-kappaB but not LXR mediate IL-1beta signaling for the down-regulation of ATP-binding cassette transporter A1. *Am J Physiol Cell Physiol* 2007; **292**: C1493-C1501 [PMID: 17135302]
25 **Lu L**, Liu H, Peng J, Gan L, Shen L, Zhang Q, Li L, Zhang L, Su C, Jiang Y. Regulations of the key mediators in inflammation and atherosclerosis by aspirin in human macrophages. *Lipids Health Dis* 2010; **9**: 16 [PMID: 20137092 DOI: 10.1186/1476-511X-9-16]
26 **Jiang J**, Mo ZC, Yin K, Zhao GJ, Lv YC, Ouyang XP, Jiang ZS, Fu Y, Tang CK. Epigallocatechin-3-gallate prevents TNF-α-induced NF-κB activation thereby upregulating ABCA1 via the Nrf2/Keap1 pathway in macrophage foam cells. *Int J Mol Med* 2012; **29**: 946-956 [PMID: 22367622 DOI: 10.3892/ijmm.2012.924]
27 **Yu XH**, Jiang HL, Chen WJ, Yin K, Zhao GJ, Mo ZC, Ouyang XP, Lv YC, Jiang ZS, Zhang DW, Tang CK. Interleukin-18 and interleukin-12 together downregulate ATP-binding cassette transporter A1 expression through the interleukin-18R/nuclear factor-κB signaling pathway in THP-1 macrophage-derived foam cells. *Circ J* 2012; **76**: 1780-1791 [PMID: 22498566]
28 **Chase AJ**, Bond M, Crook MF, Newby AC. Role of nuclear factor-kappa B activation in metalloproteinase-1, -3, and -9 secretion by human macrophages in vitro and rabbit foam cells produced in vivo. *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol* 2002; **22**: 765-771 [PMID: 12006388]
29 **Castrillo A**, Joseph SB, Marathe C, Mangelsdorf DJ, Tontonoz P. Liver X receptor-dependent repression of matrix metalloproteinase-9 expression in macrophages. *J Biol Chem* 2003; **278**: 10443-10449 [PMID: 12531895]
30 **Ishikawa K**, Sugawara D, Wang Xp K, Itabe H, Maruyama Y, Lusis AJ. Heme oxygenase-1 inhibits atherosclerotic lesion formation in ldl-receptor knockout mice. *Circ Res* 2001; **88**: 506-512 [PMID: 11249874]
31 **Ishikawa K**, Sugawara D, Goto J, Watanabe Y, Kawamura K, Shiomi M, Itabe H, Maruyama Y. Heme oxygenase-1 inhibits atherogenesis in Watanabe heritable hyperlipidemic rabbits. *Circulation* 2001; **104**: 1831-1836 [PMID: 11591622]
32 **Ma JL**, Yang PY, Rui YC, Lu L, Kang H, Zhang J. Hemin modulates cytokine expressions in macrophage-derived foam cells via heme oxygenase-1 induction. *J Pharmacol Sci* 2007; **103**: 261-266 [PMID: 17341845]
33 **Orozco LD**, Kapturczak MH, Barajas B, Wang X, Weinstein MM, Wong J, Deshane J, Bolisetty S, Shaposhnik Z, Shih DM, Agarwal A, Lusis AJ, Araujo JA. Heme oxygenase-1 expression in macrophages plays a beneficial role in atherosclerosis. *Circ Res* 2007; **100**: 1703-1711 [PMID: 17495224]
34 **Tsai JY**, Su KH, Shyue SK, Kou YR, Yu YB, Hsiao SH, Chiang AN, Wu YL, Ching LC, Lee TS. EGb761 ameliorates the formation of foam cells by regulating the expression of SR-A and ABCA1: role of haem oxygenase-1. *Cardiovasc Res* 2010; **88**: 415-423 [PMID: 20615914 DOI: 10.1093/cvr/cvq226]
35 **Kuhn AM**, Tzieply N, Schmidt MV, von Knethen A, Namgaladze D, Yamamoto M, Brüne B. Antioxidant signaling via Nrf2 counteracts lipopolysaccharide-mediated inflammatory responses in foam cell macrophages. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2011; **50**: 1382-1391 [PMID: 21382476 DOI: 10.1016/j.freeradbiomed.2011.02.036]
36 **Araujo JA**, Zhang M, Yin F. Heme oxygenase-1, oxidation, inflammation, and atherosclerosis. *Front Pharmacol* 2012; **3**: 119 [PMID: 22833723 DOI: 10.3389/fphar.2012.00119.]
37 **Li XY**, Kong LX, Li J, He HX, Zhou YD. Kaempferol suppresses lipid accumulation in macrophages through the downregulation of cluster of differentiation 36 and the upregulation of scavenger receptor class B type I and ATP-binding cassette transporters A1 and G1. *Int J Mol Med* 2013; **31**: 331-338 [PMID: 23232972 DOI: 10.3892/ijmm.2012.1204]
38 **Sasaki T**, Takahashi T, Maeshima K, Shimizu H, Toda Y, Morimatsu H, Takeuchi M, Yokoyama M, Akagi R, Morita K. Heme arginate pretreatment attenuates pulmonary NF-kappaB and AP-1 activation induced by hemorrhagic shock via heme oxygenase-1 induction. *Med Chem* 2006; **2**: 271-274 [PMID: 16948473]
39 **Zabalgoitia M**, Colston JT, Reddy SV, Holt JW, Regan RF, Stec DE, Rimoldi JM, Valente AJ, Chandrasekar B. Carbon monoxide donors or heme oxygenase-1 (HO-1) overexpression blocks interleukin-18-mediated NF-kappaB-PTEN-dependent human cardiac endothelial cell death. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2008; **44**: 284-298 [PMID: 18215737 DOI: 10.1016/j.freeradbiomed.2007.08.012]
40 **Chaea HJ**, Kim HR, Kang YJ, Hyun KC, Kim HJ, Seo HG, Lee JH, Yun-Choi HS, Chang KC. Heme oxygenase-1 induction by (S)-enantiomer of YS-51 (YS-51S), a synthetic isoquinoline alkaloid, inhibits nitric oxide production and nuclear factor-kappaB translocation in ROS 17/2.8 cells activated with inflammatory stimulants. *Int Immunopharmacol* 2007; **7**: 1559-1568 [PMID: 17920533]
41 **Jadhav A**, Torlakovic E, Ndisang JF. Interaction among heme oxygenase, nuclear factor-kappaB, and transcription activating factors in cardiac hypertrophy in hypertension. *Hypertension* 2008; **52**: 910-917 [PMID: 18824663 DOI: 10.1161/HYPERTENSIONAHA.108.114801]

42 **Kim KM**, Pae HO, Zhung M, Ha HY, Ha YA, Chai KY, Cheong YK, Kim JM, Chung HT. Involvement of anti-inflammatory heme oxygenase-1 in the inhibitory effect of curcumin on the expression of pro-inflammatory inducible nitric oxide synthase in RAW264.7 macrophages. *Biomed Pharmacother* 2008; **62**: 630-636 [PMID: 18325727 DOI: 10.1016/j.biopha.2008.01.008]

43 **Yeh CH**, Chen TP, Wang YC, Lin YM, Lin PJ. HO-1 activation can attenuate cardiomyocytic apoptosis via inhibition of NF-kappaB and AP-1 translocation following cardiac global ischemia and reperfusion. *J Surg Res* 2009; **155**: 147-156 [PMID: 19181338 DOI: 10.1016/j.jss.2008.07.044]

44 **Park SY**, Lee SW, Baek SH, Lee SJ, Lee WS, Rhim BY, Hong KW, Kim CD. Induction of heme oxygenase-1 expression by cilostazol contributes to its anti-inflammatory effects in J774 murine macrophages. *Immunol Lett* 2011; **136**: 138-145 [PMID: 21256160 DOI: 10.1016/j.imlet.2011.01.003]

45 **Leung PO**, Wang SH, Lu SH, Chou WH, Shiau CY, Chou TC. Simvastatin inhibits pro-inflammatory mediators through induction of heme oxygenase-1 expression in lipopolysaccharide-stimulated RAW264.7 macrophages. *Toxicol Lett* 2011; **207**: 159-166 [PMID: 21925249 DOI: 10.1016/j.toxlet.2011.09.004]

46 **Park SY**, Park da J, Kim YH, Kim Y, Choi YW, Lee SJ. Schisandra chinensis α-iso-cubebenol induces heme oxygenase-1 expression through PI3K/Akt and Nrf2 signaling and has anti-inflammatory activity in Porphyromonas gingivalis lipopolysaccharide-stimulated macrophages. *Int Immunopharmacol* 2011; **11**: 1907-1915 [PMID: 21840424 DOI: 10.1016/j.intimp.2011.07.023]

47 **Kim CK**, Cho DH, Lee KS, Lee DK, Park CW, Kim WG, Lee SJ, Ha KS, Goo Taeg O, Kwon YG, Kim YM. Ginseng Berry Extract Prevents Atherogenesis via Anti-Inflammatory Action by Upregulating Phase II Gene Expression. *Evid Based Complement Alternat Med* 2012; **2012**: 490301 [PMID: 23243449 DOI: 10.1155/2012/490301]

48 **Alam J**, Cook JL. Transcriptional regulation of the heme oxygenase-1 gene via the stress response element pathway. *Curr Pharm Des* 2003; **9**: 2499-2511 [PMID: 14529549]

49 **Flier J**, Van Muiswinkel FL, Jongenelen CA, Drukarch B. The neuroprotective antioxidant alpha-lipoic acid induces detoxication enzymes in cultured astroglial cells. *Free Radic Res* 2002; **36**: 695-699 [PMID: 12180195]

50 **Cao Z**, Tsang M, Zhao H, Li Y. Induction of endogenous antioxidants and phase 2 enzymes by alpha-lipoic acid in rat cardiac H9C2 cells: protection against oxidative injury. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2003; **310**: 979-985 [PMID: 14550301]

51 **Jia Z**, Hallur S, Zhu H, Li Y, Misra HP. Potent upregulation of glutathione and NAD(P)H: quinone oxidoreductase 1 by alpha-lipoic acid in human neuroblastoma SH-SY5Y cells: protection against neurotoxicant-elicited cytotoxicity. *Neurochem Res* 2008; **33**: 790-800 [PMID: 17940886]

52 **Na HK**, Surh YJ. Modulation of Nrf2-mediated antioxidant and detoxifying enzyme induction by the green tea polyphenol EGCG. *Food Chem Toxicol* 2008; **46**: 1271-1278 [PMID: 18082923]

53 **Romeo L**, Intrieri M, D'Agata V, Mangano NG, Oriani G, Ontario ML, Scapagnini G. The major green tea polyphenol, (-)-epigallocatechin-3-gallate, induces heme oxygenase in rat neurons and acts as an effective neuroprotective agent against oxidative stress. *J Am Coll Nutr* 2009; **28** Suppl: 492S-499S [PMID: 20234037]

54 **Fahey JW**, Zhang Y, Talalay P. Broccoli sprouts: an exceptionally rich source of inducers of enzymes that protect against chemical carcinogens. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1997; **94**: 10367-10372 [PMID: 9294217]

55 **Riedl MA**, Saxon A, Diaz-Sanchez D. Oral sulforaphane increases Phase II antioxidant enzymes in the human upper airway. *Clin Immunol* 2009; **130**: 244-251 [PMID: 19028145 DOI: 10.1016/j.clim.2008.10.0079]

56 **Kensler TW**, Curphey TJ, Maxiutenko Y, Roebuck BD. Chemoprotection by organosulfur inducers of phase 2 enzymes: dithiolethiones and dithiins. *Drug Metabol Drug Interact* 2000; **17**: 3-22 [PMID: 11201301]

57 **Chen C**, Pung D, Leong V, Hebbar V, Shen G, Nair S, Li W, Kong AN. Induction of detoxifying enzymes by garlic organosulfur compounds through transcription factor Nrf2: effect of chemical structure and stress signals. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2004; **37**: 1578-1590 [PMID: 15477009]

58 **Ziegler D**, Ametov A, Barinov A, Dyck PJ, Gurieva I, Low PA, Munzel U, Yakhno N, Raz I, Novosadova M, Maus J, Samigullin R. Oral treatment with alpha-lipoic acid improves symptomatic diabetic polyneuropathy: the SYDNEY 2 trial. *Diabetes Care* 2006; **29**: 2365-2370 [PMID: 17065669]

59 **Yi X**, Maeda N. alpha-Lipoic acid prevents the increase in atherosclerosis induced by diabetes in apolipoprotein E-deficient mice fed high-fat/low-cholesterol diet. *Diabetes* 2006; **55**: 2238-2244 [PMID: 16873686]

60 **Zulkhairi A**, Zaiton Z, Jamaluddin M, Sharida F, Mohd TH, Hasnah B, Nazmi HM, Khairul O, Zanariyah A. Alpha lipoic acid possess dual antioxidant and lipid lowering properties in atherosclerotic-induced New Zealand White rabbit. *Biomed Pharmacother* 2008; **62**: 716-722 [PMID: 18538528 DOI: 10.1016/j.biopha.2006.12.003]

61 **Ying Z**, Kherada N, Farrar B, Kampfrath T, Chung Y, Simonetti O, Deiuliis J, Desikan R, Khan B, Villamena F, Sun Q, Parthasarathy S, Rajagopalan S. Lipoic acid effects on established atherosclerosis. *Life Sci* 2010; **86**: 95-102 [PMID: 19944706]

62 **Lee WR**, Kim A, Kim KS, Park YY, Park JH, Kim KH, Kim SJ, Park KK. Alpha-lipoic acid attenuates atherosclerotic lesions and inhibits proliferation of vascular smooth muscle cells through targeting of the Ras/MEK/ERK signaling pathway. *Mol Biol Rep* 2012; **39**: 6857-6866 [PMID: 22302393 DOI: 10.1007/s11033-012-1511-5]

63 **Lanone S**, Bloc S, Foresti R, Almolki A, Taillé C, Callebert J, Conti M, Goven D, Aubier M, Dureuil B, El-Benna J, Motterlini R, Boczkowski J. Bilirubin decreases nos2 expression via inhibition of NAD(P)H oxidase: implications for protection against endotoxic shock in rats. *FASEB J* 2005; **19**: 1890-1892 [PMID: 16129699]

64 **Matsumoto H**, Ishikawa K, Itabe H, Maruyama Y. Carbon monoxide and bilirubin from heme oxygenase-1 suppresses reactive oxygen species generation and plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 induction. *Mol Cell Biochem* 2006; **291**: 21-28 [PMID: 16625420]

65 **Jiang F**, Roberts SJ, Datla Sr, Dusting GJ. NO modulates NADPH oxidase function via heme oxygenase-1 in human endothelial cells. *Hypertension* 2006; **48**: 950-957 [PMID: 16982957]

66 **Datla SR**, Dusting GJ, Mori TA, Taylor CJ, Croft KD, Jiang F. Induction of heme oxygenase-1 in vivo suppresses NADPH oxidase derived oxidative stress. *Hypertension* 2007; **50**: 636-642 [PMID: 17679649]

67 **Schwertner HA**, Vítek L. Gilbert syndrome, UGT1A1*28 allele, and cardiovascular disease risk: possible protective effects and therapeutic applications of bilirubin. *Atherosclerosis* 2008; **198**: 1-11 [PMID: 18343383 DOI: 10.1016/j.atherosclerosis.2008.01.001]

68 **Lin JP**, Vitek L, Schwertner HA. Serum bilirubin and genes controlling bilirubin concentrations as biomarkers for cardiovascular disease. *Clin Chem* 2010; **56**: 1535-1543 [PMID: 20693308]

69 **Horsfall LJ**, Nazareth I, Petersen I. Cardiovascular events as a function of serum bilirubin levels in a large, statin-treated cohort. *Circulation* 2012; **126**: 2556-2564 [PMID: 23110860 DOI: 10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.112.114066]

70 **Bonizzi G**, Piette J, Schoonbroodt S, Greimers R, Havard L, Merville MP, Bours V. Reactive oxygen intermediate-de-

pendent NF-kappaB activation by interleukin-1beta requires 5-lipoxygenase or NADPH oxidase activity. *Mol Cell Biol* 1999; **19**: 1950-1960 [PMID: 10022882]
71 **Kono H**, Rusyn I, Yin M, Gäbele E, Yamashina S, Dikalova A, Kadiiska MB, Connor HD, Mason RP, Segal BH, Bradford BU, Holland SM, Thurman RG. NADPH oxidase-derived free radicals are key oxidants in alcohol-induced liver disease. *J Clin Invest* 2000; **106**: 867-872 [PMID: 11018074]
72 **Yoshida M**, Korfhagen TR, Whitsett JA. Surfactant protein D regulates NF-kappa B and matrix metalloproteinase production in alveolar macrophages via oxidant-sensitive pathways. *J Immunol* 2001; **166**: 7514-7519 [PMI: 11390505]
73 **Sadikot RT**, Zeng H, Yull FE, Li B, Cheng DS, Kernodle DS, Jansen ED, Contag CH, Segal BH, Holland SM, Blackwell TS, Christman JW. p47phox deficiency impairs NF-kappa B activation and host defense in Pseudomonas pneumonia. *J Immunol* 2004; **172**: 1801-1808 [PMID: 14734763]
74 **Park HS**, Jung HY, Park EY, Kim J, Lee WJ, Bae YS. Cutting edge: direct interaction of TLR4 with NAD(P)H oxidase 4 isozyme is essential for lipopolysaccharide-induced production of reactive oxygen species and activation of NF-kappa B. *J Immunol* 2004; **173**: 3589-3593 [PMID: 15356101]
75 **Yamashina S**, Takei Y, Ikejima K, Enomoto N, Kitamura T, Sato N. Ethanol-induced sensitization to endotoxin in Kupffer cells is dependent upon oxidative stress. *Alcohol Clin Exp Res* 2005; **29**: 246S-250S [PMID: 16385231]
76 **Au-Yeung KK**, Yip JC, Siow YL, O K. Folic acid inhibits homocysteine-induced superoxide anion production and nuclear factor kappa B activation in macrophages. *Can J Physiol Pharmacol* 2006; **84**: 141-147 [PMID: 16845898]
77 **Higai K**, Sano R, Satake M, Azuma Y, Matsumoto K. Glycated human serum albumin induces interleukin 8 mRNA expression through reactive oxygen species and NADPH oxidase-dependent pathway in monocyte-derived U937 cells. *Biol Pharm Bull* 2007; **30**: 1833-1837 [PMID: 17917246]
78 **San José G**, Bidegain J, Robador PA, Díez J, Fortuño A, Zalba G. Insulin-induced NADPH oxidase activation promotes proliferation and matrix metalloproteinase activation in monocytes/macrophages. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2009; **46**: 1058-1067 [PMID: 19439231 DOI: 10.1016/j.freeradbiomed.2009.01.009]
79 **Kim SY**, Moon KA, Jo HY, Jeong S, Seon SH, Jung E, Cho YS, Chun E, Lee KY. Anti-inflammatory effects of apocynin, an inhibitor of NADPH oxidase, in airway inflammation. *Immunol Cell Biol* 2012; **90**: 441-448 [PMID: 21709687 DOI: 10.1038/icb.2011.60]
80 **Mo ZC**, Xiao J, Liu XH, Hu YW, Li XX, Yi GH, Wang Z, Tang YL, Liao DF, Tang CK. AOPPs inhibits cholesterol efflux by down-regulating ABCA1 expression in a JAK/STAT signaling pathway-dependent manner. *J Atheroscler Thromb* 2011; **18**: 796-807 [PMID: 21670559]
81 **Ishibashi Y**, Matsui T, Takeuchi M, Yamagishi S. Rosuvastatin blocks advanced glycation end products-elicited reduction of macrophage cholesterol efflux by suppressing NADPH oxidase activity via inhibition of geranylgeranylation of Rac-1. *Horm Metab Res* 2011; **43**: 619-624 [PMID: 21823057 DOI: 10.1055/s-0031-128314]
82 **McCarty MF**. Clinical potential of Spirulina as a source of phycocyanobilin. *J Med Food* 2007; **10**: 566-570 [PMID: 18158824]
83 **Zheng J**, Inoguchi T, Sasaki S, Maeda Y, McCarty MF, Fujii M, Ikeda N, Kobayashi K, Sonoda N, Takayanagi R. Phycocyanin and phycocyanobilin from Spirulina platensis protect against diabetic nephropathy by inhibiting oxidative stress. *Am J Physiol Regul Integr Comp Physiol* 2013; **304**: R110-R120 [PMID: 23115122]
84 **Riss J**, Décordé K, Sutra T, Delage M, Baccou JC, Jouy N, Brune JP, Oréal H, Cristol JP, Rouanet JM. Phycobiliprotein C-phycocyanin from Spirulina platensis is powerfully responsible for reducing oxidative stress and NADPH oxidase expression induced by an atherogenic diet in hamsters. *J Agric Food Chem* 2007; **55**: 7962-7967 [PMID: 17696484]
85 **Yin MJ**, Yamamoto Y, Gaynor RB. The anti-inflammatory agents aspirin and salicylate inhibit the activity of I(kappa)B kinase-beta. *Nature* 1998; **396**: 77-80 [PMID: 9817203]
86 **Pierce GL**, Lesniewski LA, Lawson BR, Beske SD, Seals DR. Nuclear factor-{kappa}B activation contributes to vascular endothelial dysfunction via oxidative stress in overweight/obese middle-aged and older humans. *Circulation* 2009; **119**: 1284-1292 [PMID: 19237660 DOI: 10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.108.804294]
87 **Morris HG**, Sherman NA, McQuain C, Goldlust MB, Chang SF, Harrison LI. Effects of salsalate (nonacetylated salicylate) and aspirin on serum prostaglandins in humans. *Ther Drug Monit* 1985; **7**: 435-438 [PMID: 3866409]
88 **McCarty MF**. Salsalate may have broad utility in the prevention and treatment of vascular disorders and the metabolic syndrome. *Med Hypotheses* 2010; **75**: 276-281 [PMID: 20080359 DOI: 10.1016/j.mehy.2009.12.027]
89 **Goldfine AB**, Silver R, Aldhahi W, Cai D, Tatro E, Lee J, Shoelson SE. Use of salsalate to target inflammation in the treatment of insulin resistance and type 2 diabetes. *Clin Transl Sci* 2008; **1**: 36-43 [PMID: 19337387 DOI: 10.1111/j.1752-8062.2008.00026.x]
90 **Goldfine AB**, Fonseca V, Jablonski KA, Pyle L, Staten MA, Shoelson SE. The effects of salsalate on glycemic control in patients with type 2 diabetes: a randomized trial. *Ann Intern Med* 2010; **152**: 346-357 [PMID: 20231565 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-152-6-201003160-00004]
91 **Desouza CV**. An overview of salsalate as a potential antidiabetic therapy. *Drugs Today* (Barc) 2010; **46**: 847-853 [PMID: 21225023 DOI: 10.1358/dot.2010.46.11.1534820]
92 **Calkin AC**, Tontonoz P. Liver x receptor signaling pathways and atherosclerosis. *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol* 2010; **30**: 1513-1518 [PMID: 20631351]
93 **Li X**, Yeh V, Molteni V. Liver X receptor modulators: a review of recently patented compounds (2007 - 2009). *Expert Opin Ther Pat* 2010; **20**: 535-562 [PMID: 20302451 DOI: 10.1517/13543771003621269]
94 **Zhu Y**, Li Y. Liver X receptors as potential therapeutic targets in atherosclerosis. *Clin Invest Med* 2009; **32**: E383-E394 [PMID: 19796580]
95 **Hoang MH**, Jia Y, Jun HJ, Lee JH, Hwang KY, Choi DW, Um SJ, Lee BY, You SG, Lee SJ. Taurine is a liver X receptor-α ligand and activates transcription of key genes in the reverse cholesterol transport without inducing hepatic lipogenesis. *Mol Nutr Food Res* 2012; **56**: 900-911 [PMID: 22707265 DOI: 10.1002/mnfr.201100611]
96 **Petty MA**, Kintz J, DiFrancesco GF. The effects of taurine on atherosclerosis development in cholesterol-fed rabbits. *Eur J Pharmacol* 1990; **180**: 119-127 [PMID: 2364997]
97 **Kondo Y**, Toda Y, Kitajima H, Oda H, Nagate T, Kameo K, Murakami S. Taurine inhibits development of atherosclerotic lesions in apolipoprotein E-deficient mice. *Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol* 2001; **28**: 809-815 [PMID: 11553020]
98 **Murakami S**, Kondo Y, Nagate T. Effects of long-term treatment with taurine in mice fed a high-fat diet: improvement in cholesterol metabolism and vascular lipid accumulation by taurine. *Adv Exp Med Biol* 2000; **483**: 177-186 [PMID: 11787596]
99 **Murakami S**, Kondo Y, Sakurai T, Kitajima H, Nagate T. Taurine suppresses development of atherosclerosis in Watanabe heritable hyperlipidemic (WHHL) rabbits. *Atherosclerosis* 2002; **163**: 79-87 [PMID: 12048124]
100 **Balkan J**, Kanbağli O, Hatipoğlu A, Kücük M, Cevikbaş U, Aykaç-Toker G, Uysal M. Improving effect of dietary taurine supplementation on the oxidative stress and lipid levels in the plasma, liver and aorta of rabbits fed on a high-cholesterol diet. *Biosci Biotechnol Biochem* 2002; **66**: 1755-1758 [PMID: 12353642]

101 **Matsushima Y**, Sekine T, Kondo Y, Sakurai T, Kameo K, Tachibana M, Murakami S. Effects of taurine on serum cholesterol levels and development of atherosclerosis in spontaneously hyperlipidaemic mice. *Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol* 2003; **30**: 295-299 [PMID: 12680850]

102 **Zulli A**, Lau E, Wijaya BP, Jin X, Sutarga K, Schwartz GD, Learmont J, Wookey PJ, Zinellu A, Carru C, Hare DL. High dietary taurine reduces apoptosis and atherosclerosis in the left main coronary artery: association with reduced CCAAT/enhancer binding protein homologous protein and total plasma homocysteine but not lipidemia. *Hypertension* 2009; **53**: 1017-1022 [PMID: 19398656]

103 **Murakami S**. Taurine and atherosclerosis. *Amino Acids* 2014; **46**: 73-80 [PMID: 23224908 DOI: 10.1007/s00726-012-1432-6]

104 **Wójcik OP**, Koenig KL, Zeleniuch-Jacquotte A, Costa M, Chen Y. The potential protective effects of taurine on coronary heart disease. *Atherosclerosis* 2010; **208**: 19-25 [PMID: 19592001 DOI: 10.1016/j.atherosclerosis.2009.06.002]

105 **Yamori Y**, Taguchi T, Hamada A, Kunimasa K, Mori H, Mori M. Taurine in health and diseases: consistent evidence from experimental and epidemiological studies. *J Biomed Sci* 2010; **17** Suppl 1: S6 [PMID: 20804626 DOI: 10.1186/1423-0127-17-S1-S6]

106 **Jerlich A**, Fritz G, Kharrazi H, Hammel M, Tschabuschnig S, Glatter O, Schaur RJ. Comparison of HOCl traps with myeloperoxidase inhibitors in prevention of low density lipoprotein oxidation. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2000; **1481**: 109-118 [PMID: 11004581]

107 **McCarty MF**. Rationale for a novel nutraceutical complex 'K-water': potassium taurine bicarbonate (PTB). *Med Hypotheses* 2006; **67**: 65-70 [PMID: 16516402]

108 **Lee S**, Lim HJ, Park HY, Lee KS, Park JH, Jang Y. Berberine inhibits rat vascular smooth muscle cell proliferation and migration in vitro and improves neointima formation after balloon injury in vivo. Berberine improves neointima formation in a rat model. *Atherosclerosis* 2006; **186**: 29-37 [PMID: 16098530]

109 **Wang Q**, Zhang M, Liang B, Shirwany N, Zhu Y, Zou MH. Activation of AMP-activated protein kinase is required for berberine-induced reduction of atherosclerosis in mice: the role of uncoupling protein 2. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e25436 [PMID: 21980456 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0025436]

110 **Li K**, Yao W, Zheng X, Liao K. Berberine promotes the development of atherosclerosis and foam cell formation by inducing scavenger receptor A expression in macrophage. *Cell Res* 2009; **19**: 1006-1017 [PMID: 19546885 DOI: 10.1038/cr.2009.76]

111 **Li D**, Wang D, Wang Y, Ling W, Feng X, Xia M. Adenosine monophosphate-activated protein kinase induces cholesterol efflux from macrophage-derived foam cells and alleviates atherosclerosis in apolipoprotein E-deficient mice. *J Biol Chem* 2010; **285**: 33499-33509 [PMID: 20713354 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M110.159772]

112 **Lee TS**, Pan CC, Peng CC, Kou YR, Chen CY, Ching LC, Tsai TH, Chen SF, Lyu PC, Shyue SK. Anti-atherogenic effect of berberine on LXRalpha-ABCA1-dependent cholesterol efflux in macrophages. *J Cell Biochem* 2010; **111**: 104-110 [PMID: 20506155 DOI: 10.1002/jcb.22667]

113 **Guan S**, Wang B, Li W, Guan J, Fang X. Effects of berberine on expression of LOX-1 and SRB-1 in human macrophage-derived foam cells induced by ox-LDL. *Am J Chin Med* 2010; **38**: 1161-1169 [PMID: 21061468]

114 **Huang Z**, Dong F, Li S, Chu M, Zhou H, Lu Z, Huang W. Berberine-induced inhibition of adipocyte enhancer-binding protein 1 attenuates oxidized low-density lipoprotein accumulation and foam cell formation in phorbol 12-myristate 13-acetate-induced macrophages. *Eur J Pharmacol* 2012; **690**: 164-169 [PMID: 22796454]

115 **Liu M**, Wu H, Liu T, Li Y, Wang F, Wan H, Li X, Tang H. Regulation of the cell cycle gene, BTG2, by miR-21 in human laryngeal carcinoma. *Cell Res* 2009; **19**: 828-837 [PMID: 19546886]

116 **Kong W**, Wei J, Abidi P, Lin M, Inaba S, Li C, Wang Y, Wang Z, Si S, Pan H, Wang S, Wu J, Wang Y, Li Z, Liu J, Jiang JD. Berberine is a novel cholesterol-lowering drug working through a unique mechanism distinct from statins. *Nat Med* 2004; **10**: 1344-1351 [PMID: 15531889]

117 **Wu L**, Noyan Ashraf MH, Facci M, Wang R, Paterson PG, Ferrie A, Juurlink BH. Dietary approach to attenuate oxidative stress, hypertension, and inflammation in the cardiovascular system. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2004; **101**: 7094-7099 [PMID: 15103025 DOI: 10.1016/j.freeradbiomed.2012.04.019]

118 **Kim JH**, Choi YK, Lee KS, Cho DH, Baek YY, Lee DK, Ha KS, Choe J, Won MH, Jeoung D, Lee H, Kwon YG, Kim YM. Functional dissection of Nrf2-dependent phase II genes in vascular inflammation and endotoxic injury using Keap1 siRNA. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2012; **53**: 629-640 [PMID: 22609006]

119 **Chen XL**, Dodd G, Kunsch C. Sulforaphane inhibits TNF-alpha-induced activation of p38 MAP kinase and VCAM-1 and MCP-1 expression in endothelial cells. *Inflamm Res* 2009; **58**: 513-521 [PMID: 19277846 DOI: 10.1007/s00011-009-0017-7]

120 **Liao BC**, Hsieh CW, Liu YC, Tzeng TT, Sun YW, Wung BS. Cinnamaldehyde inhibits the tumor necrosis factor-alpha-induced expression of cell adhesion molecules in endothelial cells by suppressing NF-kappaB activation: effects upon IkappaB and Nrf2. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 2008; **229**: 161-171 [PMID: 18304597 DOI: 10.1016/j.taap.2008.01.021]

121 **Chen XL**, Dodd G, Thomas S, Zhang X, Wasserman MA, Rovin BH, Kunsch C. Activation of Nrf2/ARE pathway protects endothelial cells from oxidant injury and inhibits inflammatory gene expression. *Am J Physiol Heart Circ Physiol* 2006; **290**: H1862-H1870 [PMID: 16339837]

122 **Zhang WJ**, Frei B. Alpha-lipoic acid inhibits TNF-alpha-induced NF-kappaB activation and adhesion molecule expression in human aortic endothelial cells. *FASEB J* 2001; **15**: 2423-2432 [PMID: 11689467]

123 **Soares MP**, Seldon MP, Gregoire IP, Vassilevskaia T, Berberat PO, Yu J, Tsui TY, Bach FH. Heme oxygenase-1 modulates the expression of adhesion molecules associated with endothelial cell activation. *J Immunol* 2004; **172**: 3553-3563 [PMID: 15004156]

124 **Bellner L**, Martinelli L, Halilovic A, Patil K, Puri N, Dunn MW, Regan RF, Schwartzman ML. Heme oxygenase-2 deletion causes endothelial cell activation marked by oxidative stress, inflammation, and angiogenesis. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther* 2009; **331**: 925-932 [PMID: 19773531 DOI: 10.1124/jpet.109.15835]

125 **Mazzone GL**, Rigato I, Ostrow JD, Tiribelli C. Bilirubin effect on endothelial adhesion molecules expression is mediated by the NF-kappaB signaling pathway. *Biosci Trends* 2009; **3**: 151-157 [PMID: 20103840]

126 **Pierce JW**, Read MA, Ding H, Luscinskas FW, Collins T. Salicylates inhibit I kappa B-alpha phosphorylation, endothelial-leukocyte adhesion molecule expression, and neutrophil transmigration. *J Immunol* 1996; **156**: 3961-3969 [PMID: 8621937]

127 **Zünd G**, Dzus AL, Prêtre R, Niederhäuser U, Vogt P, Turina M. Endothelial cell injury in cardiac surgery: salicylate may be protective by reducing expression of endothelial adhesion molecules. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg* 1998; **13**: 293-297 [PMID: 9628380]

128 **Lesniewski LA**, Durrant JR, Connell ML, Folian BJ, Donato AJ, Seals DR. Salicylate treatment improves age-associated vascular endothelial dysfunction: potential role of nuclear factor kappaB and forkhead Box O phosphorylation. *J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci* 2011; **66**: 409-418 [PMID: 21303813 DOI: 10.1093/gerona/glq233]

129 **Isoda K**, Young JL, Zirlik A, MacFarlane LA, Tsuboi N, Gerdes N, Schönbeck U, Libby P. Metformin inhibits proin-

flammatory responses and nuclear factor-kappaB in human vascular wall cells. *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol* 2006; **26**: 611-617 [PMID: 16385087]

130 **Cacicedo JM**, Yagihashi N, Keaney JF, Ruderman NB, Ido Y. AMPK inhibits fatty acid-induced increases in NF-kappaB transactivation in cultured human umbilical vein endothelial cells. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2004; **324**: 1204-1209 [PMID: 15504342]

131 **Hattori Y**, Suzuki K, Hattori S, Kasai K. Metformin inhibits cytokine-induced nuclear factor kappaB activation via AMP-activated protein kinase activation in vascular endothelial cells. *Hypertension* 2006; **47**: 1183-1188 [PMID: 16636195]

132 **Huang NL**, Chiang SH, Hsueh CH, Liang YJ, Chen YJ, Lai LP. Metformin inhibits TNF-alpha-induced IkappaB kinase phosphorylation, IkappaB-alpha degradation and IL-6 production in endothelial cells through PI3K-dependent AMPK phosphorylation. *Int J Cardiol* 2009; **134**: 169-175 [PMID: 18597869 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijcard.2008.04.010]

133 **Wang Y**, Huang Y, Lam KS, Li Y, Wong WT, Ye H, Lau CW, Vanhoutte PM, Xu A. Berberine prevents hyperglycemia-induced endothelial injury and enhances vasodilatation via adenosine monophosphate-activated protein kinase and endothelial nitric oxide synthase. *Cardiovasc Res* 2009; **82**: 484-492 [PMID: 19251722 DOI: 10.1093/cvr/cvp078]

134 **Wu YH**, Chuang SY, Hong WC, Lai YJ, Chang GJ, Pang JH. Berberine reduces leukocyte adhesion to LPS-stimulated endothelial cells and VCAM-1 expression both in vivo and in vitro. *Int J Immunopathol Pharmacol* 2012; **25**: 741-750 [PMID: 23058024]

135 **Weber KS**, Draude G, Erl W, de Martin R, Weber C. Monocyte arrest and transmigration on inflamed endothelium in shear flow is inhibited by adenovirus-mediated gene transfer of IkappaB-alpha. *Blood* 1999; **93**: 3685-3693 [PMID: 10339475]

136 **Devaraj S**, Davis B, Simon SI, Jialal I. CRP promotes monocyte-endothelial cell adhesion via Fcgamma receptors in human aortic endothelial cells under static and shear flow conditions. *Am J Physiol Heart Circ Physiol* 2006; **291**: H1170-H1176 [PMID: 16603696]

137 **Piga R**, Naito Y, Kokura S, Handa O, Yoshikawa T. Short-term high glucose exposure induces monocyte-endothelial cells adhesion and transmigration by increasing VCAM-1 and MCP-1 expression in human aortic endothelial cells. *Atherosclerosis* 2007; **193**: 328-334 [PMID: 17097661]

P- Reviewer: Mihaila RG, Nasu K, Yang H **S- Editor**: Wen LL
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Clinical Cases

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.12998/wjcc.v2.i10.507

World J Clin Cases 2014 October 16; 2(10): 507-514
ISSN 2307-8960 (online)

REVIEW

Marjolin's ulcers in the post-burned lesions and scars

Muhammad Saaiq, Bushra Ashraf

Muhammad Saaiq, Bushra Ashraf, Pakistan Institute of Medical Sciences, Shaheed Zulfiqar Ali Bhutto Medical University, Islamabad 44000, Pakistan
Author contributions: Saaiq M conceived and designed the format of the review; Saaiq M and Ashraf B performed the literature search and participated in the analysis, interpretation and contextualization of the literature in writing the manuscript; the two authors critically reviewed, refined and approved the manuscript.
Correspondence to: Muhammad Saaiq, MBBS, FCPS, Assistant Professor, Pakistan Institute of Medical Sciences, Shaheed Zulfiqar Ali Bhutto Medical University, Room No. 20, MOs Hostel, Islamabad 44000, Pakistan. muhammadsaaiq5@gmail.com
Telephone: +92-341-5105173
Received: April 23, 2014 Revised: May 21, 2014
Accepted: August 27, 2014
Published online: October 16, 2014

Abstract

Marjolin's ulcer (MU) represents malignant degeneration that typically ensues over a period of time in the post-burned lesions and scars or any other chronic wound. This review highlights various facets of the presentation and management of MUs that originate from post-burned lesions. The incidence of MUs in such lesions is reported to be 0.77%-2%. This malignancy characteristically develops in the areas of full thickness skin burns that had been allowed for weeks to months to heal spontaneously by secondary intention, or burn wounds which never healed completely over years and the unstable post-burned scars. In the majority of cases, the MU is a squamous cell carcinoma (SCC). The MUs contribute to an overall 2% of all SCCs and 0.03% of all basal cell carcinomas of the skin. Clinically MUs present in two major morphologic forms. The commoner form is the flat, indurated, ulcerative variety while the less common form is the exophytic papillary variety. Lower limbs represent the most frequently affected body parts. Surgical resection of the primary tumor with 2-4 cm horizontal clearance margin, nodal clearance and radiotherapy constitute the cornerstones of effective oncologic management. Despite best efforts, the overall mortality is reported to be 21%.

Key words: Marjolin's ulcer; Malignant degeneration; Post-burned scars and wounds; Sentinel lymph node dissection; Squamous cell carcinoma; Full thickness skin burns; Healing by secondary intention

Core tip: This review on Marjolin's ulcer (MU) provides a comprehensive account of the key conceptual issues, historic background as well as recent updates on the management of MU developing in the post-burned lesions and scars. New concepts in the management in general and the evolving concepts in the prophylactic nodal treatment such as the sentinel lymph node mapping are highlighted. The epidemiologic and pathophysiologic factors that surround the development of MU in the post-burned lesions are described in vertical depth with subsequent emphasis on the preventive aspects, which certainly hold the key to eradication of this dreadful menace.

Saaiq M, Ashraf B. Marjolin's ulcers in the post-burned lesions and scars. *World J Clin Cases* 2014; 2(10): 507-514 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2307-8960/full/v2/i10/507.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.12998/wjcc.v2.i10.507

INTRODUCTION

Malignant degeneration of post-burned lesions and scars is an inevitable eventuality, afflicting at least 0.77%-2% of the deep burns that had been allowed to heal by secondary intention, those which never healed completely and the unstable post-burned scars that frequently ulcerate on trivial traumatic insults of daily life activities[1-3]. Celsus AC deserves acknowledgment for his earliest recognition of this phenomenon in the first century AD[4]. Later on in 1828, the French physician Marjolin JN etiologically classified ulcers as those due to "local" causes

and those secondary to "internal" causes, however he couldn't specifically recognize the malignant potential of these lesions[5,6]. Dupuytren[7] in 1839 provided full description of a case of amputation for a cancer in a patient who had suffered a sulfuric acid burn injury. Da Costa[8] in 1903 was the first to coin the term Marjolin's ulcer (MU) to describe malignant degeneration of skin scars particularly the post-burned scars.

Not surprisingly, MUs can emanate from any chronic wound or unhealed scar, however the neglected burn wounds constitute their commonest seats of origin[9-11]. The following review focuses on the epidemiological and clinical details of MU emanating in the aftermath of burn injuries with a view to provide a comprehensive summary of the key conceptual issues as well as recent updates on management for those who happen to be the frontline care providers for the patients with MU.

EPIDEMIOLOGIC CONSIDERATIONS

Whereas 0.77%-2% of the post-burned wounds and scars are reported to undergo malignant degeneration[3], overall the post-burned wounds and scars contribute to 2% of all squamous cell carcinomas (SCCs) and 0.03% of all basal cell carcinomas (BCCs) of the skin[4].

MU is relatively commoner among males than females[12-15]. The exact explanation for this is not yet known, however more frequent initial burn trauma among males as well as their more prolonged exposure to sunlight are some of the possible contributors to this higher frequency of MU among males. No age is immune to MU with individuals from almost all age groups including children being afflicted worldwide[1-5]. MU has been reported among individuals of all races[16-20].

There is usually a prolonged latency period between sustaining initial burn insult and developing MU in the post-burned wounds and scars. There is considerable variation in this lag period reported in the published literature[1,2,13,14], ranging from as short as 6 wk[15] to as prolonged as 70 years[18]. The average latency period to malignant transformation is 35 years[1,21,22]. Based on the latency period, the MUs are subdivided into acute and chronic subtypes. The former type refers to the scar carcinoma that evolves within a year of sustaining burn injury, while the later type refers to those that develop from then on[22]. The acute MU usually develops in association with more superficial burn scars and is often a basal cell carcinoma on histology[23]. The latency period of MU inversely relates to the patient's age at the time of sustaining initial burn insult[24]. The younger the patient is at the time of initial burn insult, the longer the time it takes to undergo the malignant transformation. Contrary to this, the older the patient at the time of burn injury the shorter the lag period and more is the chance of acute MU. Understandably, a newly acquired burn injury in an adult of advancing age is more likely to evolve an acute MU, hence a biopsy of all such lesions (of a duration of > 6 wk) is imperative.

Although all underlying mechanisms of burn injury pose an equal risk for subsequent malignant transformation, MU has been reported more frequently among those who had sustained flame burns as compared to the other burn injury mechanisms such as scalds, electric burn injuries, chemical burns, and contact burns. Except for the BCC where contact is the most frequent underlying burn injury mechanism, the other histological types of MU occur with equal frequency amongst flame, scalds and contact burn injuries[2].

Given the global statistics, the burden of burn injuries is disproportionately shared across the globe with most of its brunt being taken by the developing nations such as India, Bangladesh and Pakistan[25]. These countries together with other south Asian countries like Sri Lanka, Bhutan, Nepal, Maldives, and Afghanistan collectively constitute 20% of the world's population, however they contributed only 1.1% of the total PubMed publications during the 25 years period from 1985-2009[26]. One can easily imagine the magnitude of MU that certainly exists in these burn injury endemic countries but is underreported. These developing nations have recognized limitations of their health care systems where the ideal treatment for acute burn injuries is often not instituted[27]. Also many of the patients in these developing countries present late, when the MU is not amenable to curative resection.

PATHOLOGIC CONSIDERATIONS

Etiopathogenesis of MU

MUs originating from post-burned scars possess certain peculiarities that make them distinct from other cutaneous malignancies. The exact mechanism of how the malignant transformation supervenes the post-burned scars continues to be explored. Many theories have been proposed to provide possible explanations of the mechanisms involved, however no single theory alone can provide a satisfactory answer to all questions that surround this complex process of malignant degeneration.

As per Ewing J's postulates[2,28], MU of post-burned scars would meet the criteria such as evidence of a burn scar, tumour within the boundaries of the scar, no previous tumour in that location, tumour histology being compatible with the cell types found in the skin/scar and presence of a lag period between the burn injury and the tumour development. The post-burned scars is certainly a mutogenic focus with continuous mitotic activity of regeneration and repair being in progress. The same represents the key mechanism that eventually triggers the malignant transformation[10,29,30]. A myriad of factors have been postulated as possible contributors toward the process of malignant transformation. Among these include chronic irritation, repeated trauma, impaired immunologic reactivity of the scar tissue to tumour cells, release of toxins from the unhealthy scar, relative avascularity of the scar tissue, lymphatic obstruction within the scar tissue making it an inaccessible site for the body's natural

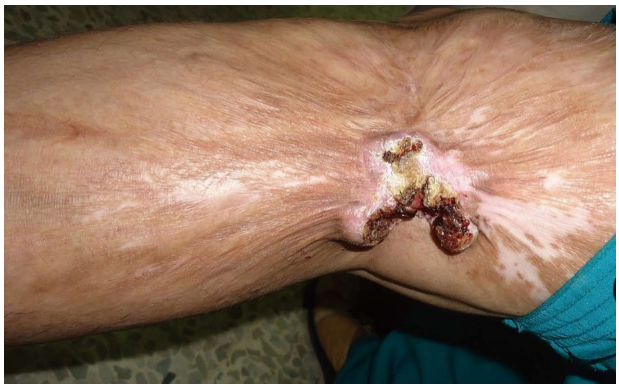


Figure 1 Marjolin's ulcer in the left popliteal fossa region in a 45 years old lady who had sustained flame burn injury at the age of 13. There is characteristic ulcer with everted edges and poorly granulating floor. The surrounding skin shows post-burned sequel. Histopathology confirmed it to be well differentiated squamous cell carcinom.

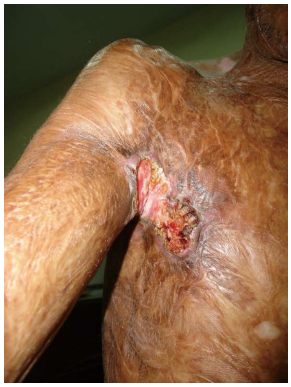


Figure 2 A 46 years male with 3 years history of ulceration and bleeding in right axilla. He had sustained scald burns at the age of 3. Biopsy confirmed it to be squamous cell carcinoma while computed tomography scan revealed metastasis in the axilla as well as chest.

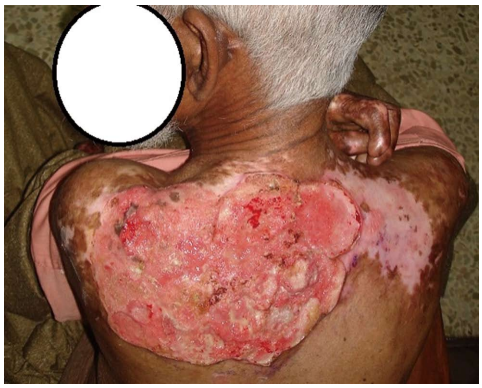


Figure 3 A 63 years old male presented with two years history of slowly progressive ulceration in the post burned white skin on his upper back. He had childhood scald burns at the age of 3 years, and had received burn injury treatment with months of dressings without skin grafting. Multiple biopsies revealed squamous cell carcinoma, while computed tomography scan revealed axillary nodal invasion without chest metastasis. Culture sensitivity revealed Methicillin resistant staphylococcus and pseudomonas aeruginsa.

immunosurveillance[2,10,31,32]. When the full thickness skin loss areas are allowed to heal by secondary intention, there is formation of unstable depigmented substitution tissue which lacks the qualities of normal skin. These unstable depigmented scars have reduced ability to withstand carcinogens[4,32]. Whether genetics or heredity have any contribution to the malignant degeneration of the post-burned scars is not exactly known, however abnormalities in the *p53* gene among these patients have been reported[33,34].

The major risk factors for the development of post-burn MU include healing of full thickness skin burns by secondary intention, non-healing burn wounds, and fragile scars that ulcerate and are easily traumatized[1,2]. The post-burned scars is typically less resistant to injuries, heals poorly especially in body areas such as the joints.

Histopathology of MU

In most cases, the MU is an SCC (71%), followed by BCC (12%), melanoma (6%), sarcoma (5%), squamobasal cell carcinoma (1%), SCC-melanoma (1%) and other rare neoplasms (4%)[2]. A variety of rare tumours may emerge in the post-burned wounds and scars and include fibrosarcoma, liposarcoma, dermatofibrosarcoma protuberans, and mesenchymal tumors[2,3,35,36]. The grade of the MU can be defined as follows: grade Ⅰ: more than 75% of the cells are differentiated; grade Ⅱ: 25%-75% of the cells are differentiated; grade Ⅲ: less than 25% of the cells are differentiated[10]. Grade of the tumour has bearing on the prognosis of MU. In general, the incidence of metastasis increases with increasing grade and so is the worsening of prognosis.

CLINICAL COSIDERATIONS

Clinical presentation

Clinically MU presents in two major morphologic forms[18,37]. The commoner form is the flat, indurated, infiltrative, ulcerative variant while the other less frequent form is the exophytic papillary variety which is generally less severe. The well-differentiated exophytic lesions have a better prognosis than the poorly differentiated, ulcerated and infiltrating forms. Typically the edge of the ulcerated lesion is everted and the floor has poor granulation tissue (Figures 1-9 are representative photographs of some patients with MUs secondary to burn injuries).

A history of a non healing post-burned wound of full thickness skin loss should alert the clinician of the possibility of an MU. It is usually painless. The easy bleeding fragile areas may at times present with unprovoked bleeding, offensive discharge or increasing pain. Superadded infection of the wound may at times be the first clinical presentation[18,38,39].

Anatomic sites affected by MUs

Lower limbs constitute the most frequent site of MUs. The other sites affected in order of reducing frequency include head and neck region (face, scalp, neck), upper limbs and other body parts[2,3,35]. MU has been reported in post burned scars at rare locations such as the nose[40].

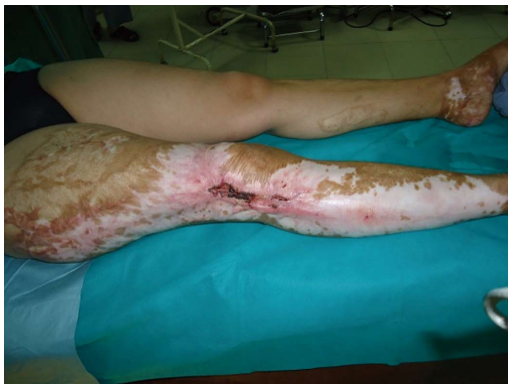


Figure 4 A lady aged 41, had sustained burn injury secondary to lightning 3 years ago. She had her burn injuries managed with months of dressing without skin grafting. Subsequently she had recurrent ulceration with bleeding from the unhealed wounds around the knee. Multiple biopsies of the lesions revealed well differentiated squamous cell carcinoma. The groin nodal basin was negative clinically as well as radiologically.

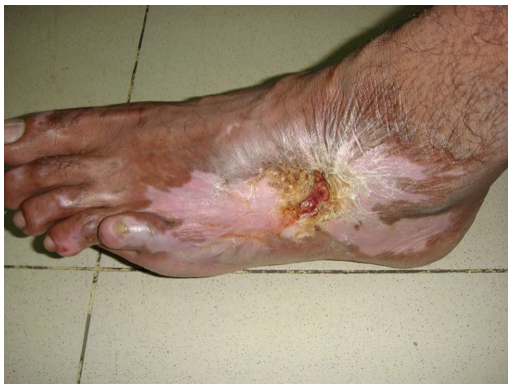


Figure 5 A 41 years male who had sustained flame burn injury to his left foot in childhood at the age of 4. The burn injury was managed with months of dressings and the wound never healed completely. There was history of recurrent bleeding and ulceration on the affected site. Multiple biopsies revealed moderately differentiated squamous cell carcinoma. The groin was clinically node positive.

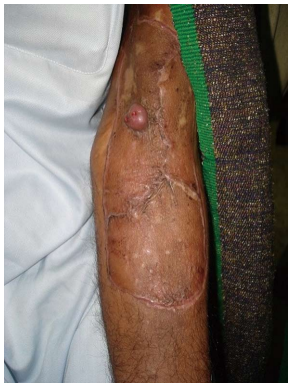


Figure 6 A 36 years male had sustained chemical burn injury to his left cubital fossa 7 years ago. The initial burn injury was managed with dressings and had never healed completely. The patient had undergone wide local excision and split thickness skin grafting for Marjolin's ulcer three months ago. Later he presented with a recurrent nodule which was confirmed as squamous cell carcinom on histopathology while the axilla was node negative clinically.

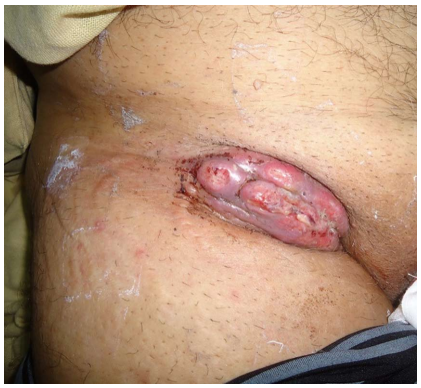


Figure 7 Right groin metastasis secondary to Marjolin's ulcer on the right side of ankle in 57 years male. Metastatic work up revealed ascites and lung metastasis. The patient had sustained flame burn injury to the right ankle at the age of 2 years and was managed with wound dressings without skin grafting.

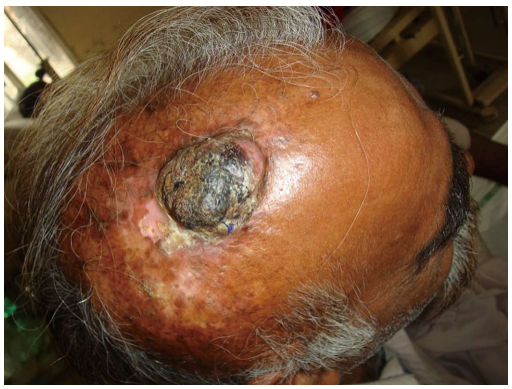


Figure 8 A 47 years male had sustained flame burn injury to his scalp at the age of 3. The initial burn injury was managed with months of dressings without skin grafting. Histopathology confirmed it as well differentiated squamous cell carcinoma. Computed tomography scan head and neck did not show deep structures invasion.

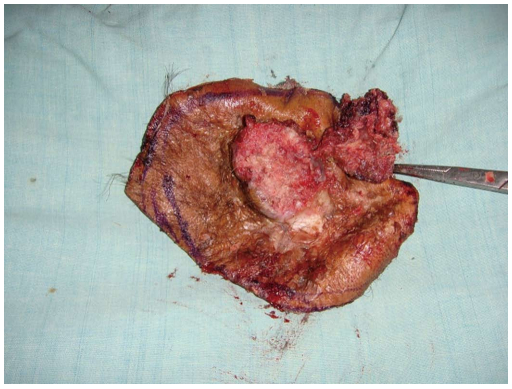


Figure 9 Same patient (as in Figure 8), the resected Marjolin's ulcer with wide local margins.

Lower limbs are the commonest sites of MU primarily owing to their more frequent involvement in burn injury insults involving full thickness skin loss. Additionally these patients often present with lesions around the knee

joints as the joints are frequently moved and recurrent ulcerations commonly ensue and persist without healing.

Diagnosis of MU

The diagnosis of MU is based on the suggestive findings in the patient's history, detailed examination of the ulcer and its draining nodal basin, and the histology of the lesion.

The classic triad of nodule formation, induration, and ulceration at the post-burned scars should prompt a biopsy to confirm the diagnosis[41]. Other clinical signs suggestive of MU include everted or rolled margins, exophytic granulation tissue formation, increasing size, bleeding and regional lymphadenopathy[1-10].

Once the biopsy confirms the diagnosis of MU, determination of the local extent of the lesion and staging comes to the fore. An magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) or computed tomography (CT scan) is performed to determine the local extent of the lesion and invasion of any underlying structures. MRI is certainly the ideal imaging tool for evaluation of the status of the soft-tissues, infiltration of any underlying bone and the involvement of adjacent neurovascular structures[42-44].

The draining lymphatic basin is staged clinically as well as radiologically with either high resolution ultrasonography, MRI or CT scan. Given the aggressive nature of MU, distant metastasis are ruled out with metastatic work up that includes chest CT scan, abdominal ultrasonography and CT scan brain (for lesions on the scalp and face)[1-10].

Metaststic spread of the MU and the stage of the MU disease

By and large, as long as the MU is confined to the scar it shows typically slow growth and is amenable to curative resection. However when the MU breaks free of the scar it metastasises rapidly *via* lymphatic spread[31]. Once broken free of the confines of the primary lesion, an SCC of the MU variety is known to possess greater metastatic potential than the SCC occurring de novo[18]. At presentation, regional lymph nodes are involved in 20%-36% of the patients[2,18,37,45]. Aydoğdu *et al*[18] have reported even higher percentage of patients (66.66%) with involved regional lymph nodes, dura or bone at initial presentation. Distant metastases are reported among 14% of the patients[2]. Although metastatic spread is primarily to the regional lymph nodes, metastasis to organs such as the liver, lung, brain, kidney may also occur[18].

Stage of the MU has implications for the management as well as the prognosis. As is the case with other malignancies, staging is performed by considering the size of the primary lesion (T), lymph node involvement (N), and distant metastasis (M). As yet there is no MU specific TNM classification of the Union for International cancer control, however the TNM classification for SCC is commonly applied to the MU.

TREATMENT OF MU

Role of surgery

Surgery constitutes the mainstay of treatment of the MU. The oncologic clearance entails excision of the primary lesion with a 2-4 cm horizontal clearance margins, and vertical clearance of the un-involved next barrier structure. All the wide local excisions are preferably performed initially with cautery dissection to prevent seeding of the tumor cells and their iatrogenic spread into the blood and lymphatic streams. Additionally a small margin of skin is then excised with a surgical scalpel to ensure good healing[14,20,35]. It is prudent to have the histopathologist onboard when performing such crucial resections to ensure resection of tumour free margins with the help of frozen section studies performed simultaneously with surgery. The defects resulting from MU extirpation are either skin grafted or flap covered. Anecdotally we are now preferring flap coverage of the resultant defects where ever possible and subsequently offer the patients radiotherapy for the tumor bed with the help of radiation oncologist.

As is the established norm of surgical oncology, the clinically or radiologically confirmed involved nodal basins are managed with therapeutic lymph node dissection.

Although there is lack of general consensus regarding management of the clinically negative nodal basins in MU, yet given the aggressive biologic behavior of MU, prophylactic nodal treatment with either elective lymph node dissection or regional nodal irradiation sounds rational[31,37,46-48]. Long term studies are certainly needed to confirm if this aggressive approach offers real benefits in terms of disease free survival or not, as the formal nodal clearance has its own morbidity (particularly lymphedema) attended to the procedure.

The sentinel lymph node dissection (SLND) has been primarily employed for staging the regional nodal basins in malignant melanoma of the limbs, however there is a recent growing recognition of its utility among patients with non-melanoma skin cancers also[49-54]. SLND technique holds the potential to be used more frequently in MU patients as it on one hand will save MU patients from the unnecessary morbidity of formal nodal clearance for negative nodes and on the other hand identify the MU patients who are clinically node negative but have subclinical nodal metastasis.

Role of radiotherapy

Given the aggressive biological behaviour of the MU and the frequent squamous cell histology, radiotherapy finds an important adjunctive role in managing these malignancies. The indications for radiotherapy include: (1) inoperable regional lymph node metastasis; (2) grade 3 lesions with positive lymph nodes after nodal dissection; (3) tumors with a diameter greater than 10 cm and with positive lymph nodes after regional lymph node dissection; (4) grade 3 lesions with a tumor diameter greater than 10 cm and negative lymph nodes after regional lymph dissection; and (5) lesions of the head and neck with positive lymph nodes after regional lymph node dissection[46].

Role of chemotherapy

The exact role of chemotherapy or indications thereof in managing MU are not yet established, however che-

motherapy constitutes part of the aggressive multimodal therapy which is often instituted among patients when surgical extirpation of the MU is not possible because of the unfit patient, presence of distant metastasis, recurrent disease, and patients not consenting for surgery.

The chemotherapy is usually based on 5-Fluorouracil with a combination of cisplatin, methotrexate and bleomycin. It may be in the form of adjuvant or neo adjuvant therapy[18].

PROGNOSIS

Generally speaking, the MU tends to be more aggressive and rapidly spreading as compared to other skin carcinomas of similar histotypes[1,55]. The overall mortality rate of MU is reported to be at least 21%[2]. The survival rates of MU are 52%, 34% and 23% at 5, 10 and 20 years[56].

Poor prognostic clinical features in MU include regional nodal spread, local extension of lesion, lower limb lesions (as these have a greater propensity for nodal involvement), infiltrative variety, primary lesions of $\geqslant$ 2 cm, latency period of $\geqslant$ 5 years, recurrent MU, and the presence of distant metastasis. The poor prognostic indicators on histology include poor differentiation, scarce or absent peritumour T cell infiltration, invasion of reticular dermis or deeper structures, and $\geqslant$ 4 mm vertical thickness of the neoplastic lesion[4,37,46,55-60].

PREVENTION

Although MU constitutes a formidable foe for reconstructive and burns surgeons around the globe, it is still surmountable to primary as well as secondary prevention. Early excision and grafting of deep burns adequately averts all the wound problems that otherwise predispose the post-burned scars to malignant transformation[61]. Moreover even if an initially neglected or mismanaged burn wound presents later with ulceration or frequent wounding, before any malignancy has set in, the choice of excision and grafting of these unstable scars should still be availed. So primary prevention is ensured by provision of adequate surgical care in the acute phase of burn injury management, while secondary prevention can be instituted where a patient had an initial mismanagement but seeks medical advice before MU has established.

CONCLUSION

MU is a largely preventable dreadful menace of considerable morbidity and mortality. Although over the years, significant progress has been made in managing MU, the key to successful eradication lies in prevention by ensuring adequate surgical care (with early excision and grafting) of the deep burns in their acute phase.

There is need for randomized controlled trials and high quality evidence on the not yet fully established aspects of the MU management such as the oncologically safe horizontal clearance margins of resection, prophylactic management of the negative nodal basins and MU specific TNM staging system. All these issues need be adequately addressed by future clinical studies.

REFERENCES

1 **Copcu E**. Marjolin's ulcer: a preventable complication of burns? *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2009; **124**: 156e-164e [PMID: 19568055 DOI: 10.1097/PRS.0b013e3181a8082e]
2 **Kowal-Vern A**, Criswell BK. Burn scar neoplasms: a literature review and statistical analysis. *Burns* 2005; **31**: 403-413 [PMID: 15896501 DOI: 10.1016/j.burns.2005.02.015]
3 **Fleming MD**, Hunt JL, Purdue GF, Sandstad J. Marjolin's ulcer: a review and reevaluation of a difficult problem. *J Burn Care Rehabil* 1990; **11**: 460-469 [PMID: 2246317]
4 **Treves N**, Pack GT. The development of cancer in burn scars: An analysis and report of thirty-four cases. *Surg Gynecol Obstet* 1930; **51**: 749-751
5 **Marjolin JN**. Ulcere Dictionnaire de medecine. Paris: Bechet, 1828: 21
6 **Steffen C**. Marjolin's ulcer. Report of two cases and evidence that Marjolin did not describe cancer arising in scars of burns. *Am J Dermatopathol* 1984; **6**: 187-193 [PMID: 6375422]
7 **Dupuytren G**. Lecons orales de clinique chirurgicale. 2nd ed. Paris, 1839
8 **Da Costa JC**. III. Carcinomatous Changes in an Area of Chronic Ulceration, or Marjolin's Ulcer. *Ann Surg* 1903; **37**: 496-502 [PMID: 17861272]
9 **Yu N**, Long X, Lujan-Hernandez JR, Hassan KZ, Bai M, Wang Y, Wang X, Zhao R. Marjolin's ulcer: a preventable malignancy arising from scars. *World J Surg Oncol* 2013; **11**: 313 [PMID: 24341890]
10 **Pekarek B**, Buck S, Osher L. A Comprehensive Review on Marjolin's Ulcers: Diagnosis and Treatment. *J Am Col Certif Wound Spec* 2011; **3**: 60-64 [PMID: 24525526 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcws.2012.04.001]
11 **Kerr-Valentic MA**, Samimi K, Rohlen BH, Agarwal JP, Rockwell WB. Marjolin's ulcer: modern analysis of an ancient problem. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2009; **123**: 184-191 [PMID: 19116552 DOI: 10.1097/PRS.0b013e3181904d86]
12 **Lawrence EA**. Carcinoma arising in the scars of thermal burns, with special reference to the influence of the age at burn on the length of the induction period. *Surg Gynecol Obstet* 1952; **95**: 579-588 [PMID: 12995250]
13 **Saraiya HA**. A very large Marjolin's ulcer on back without lymph node metastasis. *Indian J Plast Surg* 2013; **46**: 156-158 [PMID: 23960332 DOI: 10.4103/0970-0358.113744]
14 **Daya M**, Balakrishan T. Advanced Marjolin's ulcer of the scalp in a 13-year-old boy treated by excision and free tissue transfer: Case report and review of literature. *Indian J Plast Surg* 2009; **42**: 106-111 [PMID: 19881030 DOI: 10.4103/0970-0358.53020]
15 **Mohammadi AA**, Seyed Jafari SM, Hosseinzadeh M. Early Marjolin's Ulcer after Minimal Superficial Burn. *Iran J Med Sci* 2013; **38**: 69-70 [PMID: 23645962]
16 **Al-Zacko SM**. Malignancy in chronic burn scar: a 20 year experience in Mosul-Iraq. *Burns* 2013; **39**: 1488-1491 [PMID: 23768719]
17 **Nthumba PM**. Marjolin's ulcers in sub-Saharan Africa. *World J Surg* 2010; **34**: 2272-2277 [PMID: 20645092]
18 **Aydoğdu E**, Yildirim S, Aköz T. Is surgery an effective and adequate treatment in advanced Marjolin's ulcer? *Burns* 2005; **31**: 421-431 [PMID: 15896503]
19 **Pieptu D**, Luchian S, Copăceanu M, Popa M, Hriscu M, Stătescu C. [Marjolin's ulcer on burn scar, a curable but neglected disease]. *Rev Med Chir Soc Med Nat Iasi* 2000; **104**: 95-99 [PMID: 12089970]
20 **Ghalambor A**. Marjolin ulcer: How much of safety margin needs resection along Marjolin ulcer sqamous cell carcinoma in recurrence cases? *Pak J Med Sci* 2007; **23**: 394-397
21 **Kasse AA**, Betel E, Dem A, Diop M, Fall MC, Diop PS, Dem-

bele B, Drabo B, Timbely G, Neloum J, Toure P. [Cancers in the scars of thermal burns (apropos of 67 cases)]. *Dakar Med* 1999; **44**: 206-210 [PMID: 11957286]
22 **Guenther N**, Menenakos C, Braumann C, Buettemeyer R. Squamous cell carcinoma arising on a skin graft 64 years after primary injury. *Dermatol Online J* 2007; **13**: 27 [PMID: 17498446]
23 **Love RL**, Breidahl AF. Acute squamous cell carcinoma arising within a recent burn scar in a 14-year-old boy. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2000; **106**: 1069-1071 [PMID: 11039378 DOI: 10.1097/00006534-200010000-00017]
24 **Copcu E**, Aktas A, Sişman N, Oztan Y. Thirty-one cases of Marjolin's ulcer. *Clin Exp Dermatol* 2003; **28**: 138-141 [PMID: 12653697 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2230.2003.01210.x.PubMed]
25 **Saaiq M**, Ashraf B. Epidemiology and Outcome of Self-Inflicted Burns at Pakistan Institute of Medical Sciences, Islamabad. *World J Plast Surg* 2014; **3**: 107-114 Available from: URL: http://www.wjps.ir/browse.php?a_code=A-10-53-2&slc_lang=en&sid=1
26 **Azim Majumder MA**, Shaban SF, Rahman S, Rahman N, Ahmed M, Bin Abdulrahman KA, Islam Z. PubMed-based quantitative analysis of biomedical publications in the SAARC countries: 1985-2009. *J Coll Physicians Surg Pak* 2012; **22**: 560-564 [PMID: 22980608]
27 **Saaiq M**, Zaib S, Ahmad S. The menace of post-burn contractures: a developing country's perspective. *Ann Burns Fire Disasters* 2012; **25**: 152-158 [PMID: 23466805]
28 **Ewing J**. Neoplastic disease. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 1928: 862
29 **Asuquo M**, Ugare G, Ebughe G, Jibril P. Marjolin's ulcer: the importance of surgical management of chronic cutaneous ulcers. *Int J Dermatol* 2007; **46** Suppl 2: 29-32 [PMID: 17958627]
30 **Türegün M**, Nişanci M, Güler M. Burn scar carcinoma with longer lag period arising in previously grafted area. *Burns* 1997; **23**: 496-497 [PMID: 9429029]
31 **Bostwick J**, Pendergrast WJ, Vasconez LO. Marjolin's ulcer: an immunologically privileged tumor? *Plast Reconstr Surg* 1976; **57**: 66-69 [PMID: 1244613]
32 **Sirsat MV**, Shrikhande SS. Histochemical studies on squamous cell carcinoma of the skin arising in burn scars with special reference to histogenesis. *Indian J Cancer* 1966; **3**: 157-169 [PMID: 5917023]
33 **Harland DL**, Robinson WA, Franklin WA. Deletion of the p53 gene in a patient with aggressive burn scar carcinoma. *J Trauma* 1997; **42**: 104-107 [PMID: 9003266]
34 **Hayashi M**, Tamura G, Kato N, Ansai S, Kondo S, Motoyama T. Genetic analysis of cutaneous squamous cell carcinomas arising from different areas. *Pathol Int* 2003; **53**: 602-607 [PMID: 14507317]
35 **Ochenduszkiewicz U**, Matkowski R, Szynglarewicz B, Kornafel J. Marjolin's ulcer: malignant neoplasm arising in scars. *Rep Pract Oncol Radiother* 2006; **11**: 135-138
36 **Gamatsi IE**, McCulloch TA, Bailie FB, Srinivasan JR. Malignant melanoma in a skin graft: burn scar neoplasm or a transferred melanoma? *Br J Plast Surg* 2000; **53**: 342-344 [PMID: 10876262]
37 **Novick M**, Gard DA, Hardy SB, Spira M. Burn scar carcinoma: a review and analysis of 46 cases. *J Trauma* 1977; **17**: 809-817 [PMID: 909123]
38 **Nancarrow JD**. Cicatrial cancer in the South-West of England: a regional plastic surgery unit's experience over a 20-year period. *Br J Surg* 1983; **70**: 205-208 [PMID: 6831171]
39 **Hahn SB**, Kim DJ, Jeon CH. Clinical study of Marjolin's ulcer. *Yonsei Med J* 1990; **31**: 234-241 [PMID: 2281683]
40 **Copcu E**, Culhaci N. Marjolin's ulcer on the nose. *Burns* 2002; **28**: 701-704 [PMID: 12417171]
41 **Beachkofsky TM**, Wisco OJ, Owens NM, Hodson DS. Verrucous nodules on the ankle: the scaly nodules appeared over the staple sites of a previous surgery. But did one have anything to do with the other? *J Fam Pract* 2009; **58**: 427-430
42 **Sawhney S**, Jain R, Kakaria A, Chopra P. Marjolin's Ulcer: Radiographic and magnetic resonance appearances in two cases. *Sultan Qaboos Univ Med J* 2009; **9**: 162-166 [PMID: 21509294]
43 **Chiang KH**, Chou AS, Hsu YH, Lee SK, Lee CC, Yen PS, Ling CM, Lee WH, Lin CC, Chang PY. Marjolin's ulcer: MR appearance. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2006; **186**: 819-820 [PMID: 16498113]
44 **Smith J**, Mello LF, Nogueira Neto NC, Meohas W, Pinto LW, Campos VA, Barcellos MG, Fiod NJ, Rezende JF, Cabral CE. Malignancy in chronic ulcers and scars of the leg (Marjolin's ulcer): a study of 21 patients. *Skeletal Radiol* 2001; **30**: 331-337 [PMID: 11465774]
45 **Dupree MT**, Boyer JD, Cobb MW. Marjolin's ulcer arising in a burn scar. *Cutis* 1998; **62**: 49-51 [PMID: 9675536]
46 **Ozek C**, Cankayali R, Bilkay U, Guner U, Gundogan H, Songur E, Akin Y, Cagdas A. Marjolin's ulcers arising in burn scars. *J Burn Care Rehabil* 2001; **22**: 384-389 [PMID: 11761388]
47 **Ozek C**, Celik N, Bilkay U, Akalin T, Erdem O, Cagdas A. Marjolin's ulcer of the scalp: report of 5 cases and review of the literature. *J Burn Care Rehabil* 2001; **22**: 65-69 [PMID: 11227688]
48 **Wagner JD**, Evdokimow DZ, Weisberger E, Moore D, Chuang TY, Wenck S, Coleman JJ. Sentinel node biopsy for high-risk nonmelanoma cutaneous malignancy. *Arch Dermatol* 2004; **140**: 75-79 [PMID: 14732663]
49 **Cobey FC**, Engrav LH, Klein MB, Isom CN, Byrd DR. Brief report: sentinel lymph node dissection and burn scar carcinoma sentinel node and burn scar carcinoma. *Burns* 2008; **34**: 271-274 [PMID: 17374455]
50 **Eastman AL**, Erdman WA, Lindberg GM, Hunt JL, Purdue GF, Fleming JB. Sentinel lymph node biopsy identifies occult nodal metastases in patients with Marjolin's ulcer. *J Burn Care Rehabil* 2004; **25**: 241-245 [PMID: 15273464]
51 **Michl C**, Starz H, Bachter D, Balda BR. Sentinel lymphonodectomy in nonmelanoma skin malignancies. *Br J Dermatol* 2003; **149**: 763-769 [PMID: 14616367]
52 **Reschly MJ**, Messina JL, Zaulyanov LL, Cruse W, Fenske NA. Utility of sentinel lymphadenectomy in the management of patients with high-risk cutaneous squamous cell carcinoma. *Dermatol Surg* 2003; **29**: 135-140 [PMID: 12562341]
53 **Shoaib T**, Soutar DS, MacDonald DG, Camilleri IG, Dunaway DJ, Gray HW, McCurrach GM, Bessent RG, MacLeod TI, Robertson AG. The accuracy of head and neck carcinoma sentinel lymph node biopsy in the clinically N0 neck. *Cancer* 2001; **91**: 2077-2083 [PMID: 11391588]
54 **de Hullu JA**, Hollema H, Piers DA, Verheijen RH, van Diest PJ, Mourits MJ, Aalders JG, van Der Zee AG. Sentinel lymph node procedure is highly accurate in squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva. *J Clin Oncol* 2000; **18**: 2811-2816 [PMID: 10920128]
55 **Møller R**, Reymann F, Hou-Jensen K. Metastases in dermatological patients with squamous cell carcinoma. *Arch Dermatol* 1979; **115**: 703-705 [PMID: 453871]
56 **Edwards MJ**, Hirsch RM, Broadwater JR, Netscher DT, Ames FC. Squamous cell carcinoma arising in previously burned or irradiated skin. *Arch Surg* 1989; **124**: 115-117 [PMID: 2910238]
57 **Fishman JR**, Parker MG. Malignancy and chronic wounds: Marjolin's ulcer. *J Burn Care Rehabil* 1991; **12**: 218-223 [PMID: 1885637]
58 **Friedman HI**, Cooper PH, Wanebo HJ. Prognostic and therapeutic use of microstaging of cutaneous squamous cell carcinoma of the trunk and extremities. *Cancer* 1985; **56**: 1099-1105 [PMID: 4016700]
59 **Phillips TJ**, Salman SM, Bhawan J, Rogers GS. Burn scar carcinoma. Diagnosis and management. *Dermatol Surg* 1998; **24**: 561-565 [PMID: 9598012]
60 **Nthumba PM**. Marjolin's ulcers: theories, prognostic factors

and their peculiarities in spina bifida patients. *World J Surg Oncol* 2010; **8**: 108 [PMID: 21129225]

61 **Saaiq M**, Zaib S, Ahmad S. Early excision and grafting versus delayed excision and grafting of deep thermal burns up to 40% total body surface area: a comparison of outcome. *Ann Burns Fire Disasters* 2012; **25**: 143-147 [PMID: 23467391]

P- Reviewer: Stanojevic GZ **S- Editor**: Wen LL
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Clinical Cases

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.12998/wjcc.v2.i10.515

World J Clin Cases 2014 October 16; 2(10): 515-521
ISSN 2307-8960 (online)

REVIEW

Gallbladder cancer: Clinical and pathological approach

Keita Kai, Shinichi Aishima, Kohji Miyazaki

Keita Kai, Shinichi Aishima, Department of Pathology and Microbiology, Faculty of Medicine, Saga University, Saga City, Saga 849-8501, Japan
Keita Kai, Department of Pathology, Saga University Hospital, Saga City, Saga 849-8501, Japan
Kohji Miyazaki, Department of Surgery, Faculty of Medicine, Saga University, Saga City, Saga 849-8501, Japan
Author contributions: Kai K, Aishima S and Miyazaki K contributed to this paper.
Correspondence to: Dr. Keita Kai, Department of Pathology, Saga University Hospital, 5-1-1 Nabesima, Saga City, Saga 849-8501, Japan. kaikeit@cc.saga-u.ac.jp
Telephone: +81-952-342234 Fax: +81-952-342055
Received: March 22, 2014 Revised: May 15, 2014
Accepted: July 18, 2014
Published online: October 16, 2014

Abstract

Gallbladder cancer (GBC) shows a marked geographical variation in its incidence. Middle-aged and elderly women are more commonly affected. Risk factors for its development include the presence of gallstones, chronic infection and pancreaticobiliary maljunction. Controversy remains in regard to the theory of carcinogenesis from adenomyomatosis, porcelain gallbladder and adenoma of the gallbladder. The surgical strategy and prognosis after surgery for GBC differ strikingly according to T-stage. Discrimination of favorable cases, particularly T2 or T3 lesions, is useful for the selection of surgical strategies for individual patients. Although many candidate factors predicting disease progression, such as depth of subserosal invasion, horizontal tumor spread, tumor budding, dedifferentiation, Ki-67 labeling index, p53 nuclear expression, CD8+ tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes, mitotic counts, Laminin-5-gamma-2 chain, hypoxia-inducible factor-1a, cyclooxygenase-2 and the Hedgehog signaling pathway have been investigated, useful prognostic makers or factors have not been established. As GBC is often discovered incidentally after routine cholecystectomy and accurate preoperative diagnosis is difficult, close mutual cooperation between surgeons and pathologists is essential for developing a rational surgical strategy for GBC.

Key words: Gallbladder cancer; Surgical strategy; Pathology; Prognostic factors

Core tip: This review has documented the basic knowledge and surgical strategies for gallbladder cancer (GBC) based on the clinical and pathological data from previous studies. Discrimination of favorable cases, particularly T2 or T3 lesions, is useful for the selection of surgical strategies for individual patients. As GBC is often discovered incidentally after routine cholecystectomy and accurate preoperative diagnosis is difficult, close mutual cooperation between surgeons and pathologists is essential for developing a rational surgical strategy for GBC.

Kai K, Aishima S, Miyazaki K. Gallbladder cancer: Clinical and pathological approach. *World J Clin Cases* 2014; 2(10): 515-521 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2307-8960/full/v2/i10/515.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.12998/wjcc.v2.i10.515

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Gallbladder cancer (GBC) has a distinctly higher incidence in certain demographic groups and areas. Women are affected three times more often than men, and the vast majority of patients with GBC are older than 40 years of age. A high incidence has been reported in women in countries such as Chile, Poland, India, Israel, Pakistan, Ecuador, South Korea and Japan, whereas GBC is considered a rare neoplasm in most Western countries and the United States[1-4].

RISK FACTORS

Gallstones are a well-known risk factor for GBC[5,6]. It has been reported that a large stone size of more than 3

cm, a family history of GBC, and prolonged cholelithiasis are potential risk factors for GBC[7-9]. These factors could be used in the decision making when performing a cholecystectomy for asymptomatic gallstones. However, no definite evidence of a direct causal relationship between gallstones and gallbladder cancer has been presented and biases of other risk factors remain unsolved problems[10]. The composition and mutagenicity of gallstones have previously been studied with inconclusive results[11]. A prospective study of 123 consecutive patients with asymptomatic gallstones who were followed-up for 10 years or longer revealed no cases of GBC[12].

Historically, an association between calcified gallbladder (porcelain gallbladder) and GBC has been reported[13,14], although there has also been a report suggesting that porcelain gallbladder is not associated with GBC[15]. Therefore, the causal association of porcelain gallbladder and GBC remains controversial.

Pancreaticobiliary maljunction (PBM) is considered an established risk factor for biliary tract cancers involving GBC[16,17], especially in relatively young female patients without gallbladder stones[18,19]. It is generally accepted that pancreatic juice reflux into the biliary tract due to PBM plays a pathogenic role in biliary tract cancers. K-ras mutations are more common in biliary tract carcinomas associated with PBM[20].

Adenomyomatosis of the gallbladder has not been considered to have malignant potential; however, several reports have suggested that gallbladder cancer may originate from adenomyomatosis[21-24] or have insisted that segmental-type adenomyomatosis shows an increased risk of progression to gallbladder cancer[25]. Recently, a study showed that gross features of adenomyomatosis were found in approximately a quarter of gallbladders resected under the diagnosis of GBC[26]. Although the magnitude of risk for GBC in patients with adenomyomatosis remains unclear, studies suggesting a correlation between adenomyomatosis and GBC have been gradually accumulating.

In regard to the development of GBC, several theories have been proposed, including the adenoma-carcinoma sequence and dysplasia-carcinoma sequence theories[27-30]. However, recently reported articles have suggested that the vast majority of adenomas and/or polypoid lesions do not become GBC[31,32]. Therefore, the validity of the adenoma-carcinoma sequence theory remains controversial. Other risk factors recently receiving attention include bacterial infections. Although the supporting evidence for an association is weak, Salmonella[33,34] and Helicobacter species[35] would be prime candidates for a bacterial predisposition to GBC.

SURVIVAL AND GENERAL SURGICAL STRATEGIES ACCORDING TO T-STAGE

The surgical strategy for GBC depends on the extent of the disease, particularly the T-stage from the TNM classification[36]. The prognosis after surgery for GBC differs strikingly according to T-stage. Five-year survival rates after surgery for T1, T2, T3, and T4 stage tumors in 73 cases at our institution were 100%, 78.3%, 16.7%, and 25.0%, respectively[37]. The survival rates of our series were consistent with the results of other previous reports[38-41].

The survival of patients with T1a lesions (invasion restricted to the lamina propria) is particularly good, and lymph node metastasis is extremely rare in such cases. Simple cholecystectomy with or without lymphadenectomy is thus widely accepted as sufficient for T1a lesions[38,42,43]. Intraoperative perforation of the gallbladder and positive surgical margins around the cystic duct are important prognostic factors in surgery for T1a lesions[44].

Survival rates and strategies for T1b (invasion to the muscle layer) remain somewhat controversial. Several studies have reported LN metastasis in up to 20% of cases, with recurrence rates of 30%-60% following simple cholecystectomy[45-51]. In addition, distinguishing T1b lesions from T2 lesions pre- or intraoperatively is usually difficult. Therefore, it seems reasonable to perform cholecystectomy combined with lymphadenectomy with or without liver resection in patients with pre- or intraoperative presumption of T1b GBC. However, T1b GBC is often discovered after laparoscopic cholecystectomy for presumed benign disease. In our T1b series (n = 8), lymph vessel invasion was found only one case and no LN metastases or recurrences were observed, and thus additional operation of lymphadenectomy was not always needed in patients with T1b lesions diagnosed after routine cholecystectomy. However, caution is required in that the pathological work for resected specimens must be performed intensively with sections from the whole specimen, in order to minimize the possibility that a more invasive site or findings of residual lesion remain present in the resected specimen.

The prognosis for T2 (invasion to the subserosal layer) lesions varies widely, with the 5-year survival rates being approximately 20%-70% after simple cholecystectomy, compared to 60%-100% after radical surgery[37,43,52-55]. The surgical strategy for T2 lesions thus remains unclear. The conventional opinion is that patients with T2 lesions should be treated using radical cholecystectomy, including en bloc resection of the adjacent liver as well as regional lymphadenectomy with or without extrahepatic bile duct resection (BDR)[38,56]. Pathologists should pay close attention in order not to misdiagnose a T1a tumor with spreading into the Rokitansky-Aschoff sinuses (RAS) as a T2 tumor with invasion of the subserosal layer.

The prognosis is poor for most patients with T3 tumor, which shows perforation of the serosa and/or direct invasion of the liver and/or one other adjacent organ or structure. Surgery for T3 lesions is only appropriate if there is potential to achieve a curative resection. T3 lesions require hepatic resection with regional lymphadenectomy at a minimum. This can include major hepatectomy if there is extensive spreading into the liver or major vascular structures. In addition, if direct invasion

into an adjacent organ (duodenum, pancreas, stomach or colon) is suspected, *en bloc* resection would be required for curative resection[56]. Because of the high degree of surgical stress involved, the utility of aggressive surgery with extended resection for T3 lesions is often debated in clinical practice, and case-by-case selection is required with due consideration for the patient's performance status, complications, and age.

Chemotherapy or palliation is typically appropriate for T4 disease (tumor invading into the main portal vein or two or more extrahepatic organs or structures), except in rare cases where *en bloc* resection of multiple organs is possible. This is because of the unfortunate prognosis and difficulty of achieving curative resection. Unresectability discovered at the time of laparotomy may be treated with bypass surgery to relieve symptoms related to biliary obstruction. Cases identified preoperatively as unresectable may be considered for percutaneous biliary drainage or endoscopic stenting to address biliary obstruction[38].

CLINICAL CHALLENGES FOR T2 AND T3 TUMORS

As mentioned above, T2 and T3 tumors are indications for radical surgery. However, which type of radical surgery is most appropriate remains unclear. Although regional lymphadenectomy is widely accepted as necessary at a minimum, the efficacy of extended resection, such as hepatectomy, BDR or pancreatoduodenectomy (PD), remains controversial. BDR is usually necessary in cases with biliary infiltration associated with perineural invasion and complete lymphadenectomy and eradication of the connective tissue around the common bile duct[57-60]. In terms of hepatectomy for GBC, the resection may vary from a small wedge resection near the gallbladder fossa to an extended right hepatectomy. The appropriateness of segment 4a+5 (S4a+5) hepatectomy for advanced GBC is supported by the drainage of the cystic vein into anatomic Couinaud's segments IVa and V and the frequency of liver metastases in this anatomical area[61]. The results of our previous study support the use of S4a+5 hepatectomy combined with BDR and regional lymphadenectomy for the treatment of T2 or T3 GBC[37]. However, additional PD achieved no significant difference in survival in patients with T2 or T3 GBC. Indications for PD in these cases were obvious duodenal or pancreatic invasion, or infiltrating LN metastases at the retro-pancreatic head portion[37].

ATTEMPTS TO DISCRIMINATE FAVORABLE CASES IN T2 GBC

T2 GBC shows a wide variety of tumor spread. Some T2 tumors show none of the histological invasive factors of LN metastasis, lymphatic or venous invasion, but others show prominent LN metastases, along with venous, lymphatic, or perineural invasion, resulting in poor prognosis. This issue indicates that patients with T2 GBC can be allocated to a favorable prognosis group or a poor prognosis group. If discrimination of favorable cases is appropriately performed, patients with favorable prognosis could be spared excessive extended radical surgery. To identify cases with a favorable prognosis, subset analyses of patients with T2 tumor according to certain pathological criteria have been performed. Several studies, including one from our institution, reported the usefulness of discrimination of T2 GBC according to the depth of subserosal invasion and horizontal tumor spread in the subserosal layer with or without a scoring system[62-65]. Our study focused on the phenomena of dedifferentiation (DD) and tumor budding (BD) demonstrated a significant prognostic impact of both BD and DD in patients with T2 tumor[66].

INVESTIGATION OF USEFUL PROGNOSTIC MARKERS AND FACTORS

Although prognostic markers of GBC have been widely investigated, promising prognostic makers or factors have not yet been established. Ki-67 labeling index (LI), p53 nuclear expression, CD8+ tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes (TIL) and mitotic count (MC) have classically been considered as candidates for prognostic markers. However, several previous studies have reported no prognostic impact of p53 overexpression in GBC[67-71], although reports of poor prognosis in cases with p53 overexpression are also available in the literature[72,73]. A previous study showed that patients with GBC and high Ki-67 exhibited worse postoperative prognosis than those with low Ki-67[40], although here again, several previous studies also reported that Ki-67 LI of cancer cells was not correlated with patient survival[68,70,71]. Therefore, the prognostic impact of p53 overexpression and Ki-67 LI in GBC remains controversial. In regard to CD8+ TIL, there is little evidence that this is a prognostic indicator. Only one study has reported that CD8+ TIL was correlated with prolonged survival in a univariate analysis[74]. A study from our institution concerning Ki-67 LI, p53 nuclear expression, CD8+ TIL and MC status in a series of 101 GBC patients indicated that only MC reflected the prognosis of GBC. In that study, MC showed a particularly strong prognostic impact in patients with T3 tumor and was identified as an independent prognostic factor in multivariate analyses that included the N and M factors of the TNM system of classification[75]. It is difficult to distinguish the extension of carcinoma in situ (CIS) from invasive carcinoma along the RAS. Laminin-5-gamma-2 chain, which is expressed in various types of invasive carcinoma, can be detected in the invasive fronts of invasive GBC, but is not expressed in CIS with extension along the RAS[76]. The results indicate that laminin-5-gamma-2 chain is a useful marker of determining the T factor. Heparanase and its transcriptional factor, hypoxia-inducible factor-1a, contribute to the invasion and meta-

static potentials, and are correlated with poor survival in GBC[77]. Cyclooxygenase-2, a well-known oxidative stress factor expressed in invasive fronts, is also related with poor prognosis of GBC[78]. The Hedgehog signaling pathway is considered to be a potential therapeutic target for various cancers, and hedgehog signaling factor Gli1 may be involved in the invasive phenotype through the matrix metalloproteinases[79]. Other, more recently reported factors that may have a prognostic impact in GBC based on multivariate analyses include transmembrane protease/serine 4[80], loss of microRNA-335[81], aldehyde dehydrogenase-1A3 overexpression, and decreased glutathione peroxidase-3 expression[82].

PATHOLOGICAL EXAMINATION FOR OPTIMAL SURGERY

Preoperative diagnosis using an imaging study is very important for selecting the optimal surgery according to T-stage. However, preoperative diagnosis of the T-stage in T1 or T2 GBC is not easy, and it is especially difficult in GBC arising in the gallbladder concomitant with adenomyomatosis, despite advances in medical imaging[83]. As a result, stage T1 or T2 GBC is often discovered incidentally after routine cholecystectomy. In such cases, pathological evaluations of prognostic factors using entire tumor sections can be used to determine the need for additional extended radical surgery. Intraoperative histological examination is usually performed during surgery for lesions preoperatively diagnosed as "suspected GBC" or "possible T1 or T2 GBC". In such cases, the resected specimen from cholecystectomy with or without en bloc liver resection (S4a+5 or liver bed) is submitted for intraoperative histological examination. However, diagnosis of the depth of invasion from frozen sections of GBC is a difficult task, and care must be taken to avoid obstructing the pathological diagnosis of formalin-fixed specimens when the tumor lesion is small.

CONCLUSION

This review has documented the basic knowledge and surgical strategies for GBC based on clinical and pathological data from previous studies. Discrimination of favorable cases, particularly T2 or T3 lesions, is useful for the selection of surgical strategies for individual patients. To establish useful prognostic markers or factors, further accumulation of studies is needed. As GBC is often discovered incidentally after routine cholecystectomy and definite preoperative diagnosis is often difficult, close cooperation between surgeons and pathologists is essential for developing a rational surgical strategy for GBC.

REFERENCES

1 **Randi G**, Franceschi S, La Vecchia C. Gallbladder cancer worldwide: geographical distribution and risk factors. *Int J Cancer* 2006; **118**: 1591-1602 [PMID: 16397865 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.21683]

2 **Medina E**, Kaempffer AM. [Cancer mortality in Chile: epidemiological considerations]. *Rev Med Chil* 2001; **129**: 1195-1202 [PMID: 11775349 DOI: 10.4067/S0034-98872001001000014]

3 **Lazcano-Ponce EC**, Miquel JF, Muñoz N, Herrero R, Ferrecio C, Wistuba II, Alonso de Ruiz P, Aristi Urista G, Nervi F. Epidemiology and molecular pathology of gallbladder cancer. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2001; **51**: 349-364 [PMID: 11760569 DOI: 10.3322/canjclin.51.6.349]

4 **Roa I**, Araya JC, Wistuba I, Villaseca M, de Aretxabala X, Burgos L. [Gallbladder cancer in the IX Region of Chile. Impact of the anatomopathological study of 474 cases]. *Rev Med Chil* 1994; **122**: 1248-1256 [PMID: 7659894]

5 **Sheth S**, Bedford A, Chopra S. Primary gallbladder cancer: recognition of risk factors and the role of prophylactic cholecystectomy. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2000; **95**: 1402-1410 [PMID: 10894571]

6 **Miyazaki M**, Takada T, Miyakawa S, Tsukada K, Nagino M, Kondo S, Furuse J, Saito H, Tsuyuguchi T, Chijiiwa K, Kimura F, Yoshitomi H, Nozawa S, Yoshida M, Wada K, Amano H, Miura F. Risk factors for biliary tract and ampullary carcinomas and prophylactic surgery for these factors. *J Hepatobiliary Pancreat Surg* 2008; **15**: 15-24 [PMID: 18274840 DOI: 10.1007/s00534-007-1276-8]

7 **Hsing AW**, Bai Y, Andreotti G, Rashid A, Deng J, Chen J, Goldstein AM, Han TQ, Shen MC, Fraumeni JF, Gao YT. Family history of gallstones and the risk of biliary tract cancer and gallstones: a population-based study in Shanghai, China. *Int J Cancer* 2007; **121**: 832-838 [PMID: 17450525 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.22756]

8 **Diehl AK**. Gallstone size and the risk of gallbladder cancer. *JAMA* 1983; **250**: 2323-2326 [PMID: 6632129 DOI: 10.1001/jama.1983.03340170049027]

9 **Roa I**, Ibacache G, Roa J, Araya J, de Aretxabala X, Muñoz S. Gallstones and gallbladder cancer-volume and weight of gallstones are associated with gallbladder cancer: a case-control study. *J Surg Oncol* 2006; **93**: 624-628 [PMID: 16724353 DOI: 10.1002/jso.20528]

10 **Csendes A**, Becerra M, Rojas J, Medina E. Number and size of stones in patients with asymptomatic and symptomatic gallstones and gallbladder carcinoma: a prospective study of 592 cases. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2000; **4**: 481-485 [PMID: 11077323 DOI: 10.1016/S1091-255X(00)80090-6]

11 **Mano H**, Roa I, Araya JC, Ohta T, Yoshida K, Araki K, Kinebuchi H, Ishizu T, Nakadaira H, Endoh K, Yamamoto M, Watanabe H. Comparison of mutagenic activity of bile between Chilean and Japanese female patients having cholelithiasis. *Mutat Res* 1996; **371**: 73-77 [PMID: 8950352 DOI: 10.1016/S0165-1218(96)90096-8]

12 **Gracie WA**, Ransohoff DF. The natural history of silent gallstones: the innocent gallstone is not a myth. *N Engl J Med* 1982; **307**: 798-800 [PMID: 7110244 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM198209233071305]

13 **Stephen AE**, Berger DL. Carcinoma in the porcelain gallbladder: a relationship revisited. *Surgery* 2001; **129**: 699-703 [PMID: 11391368 DOI: 10.1067/msy.2001.113888]

14 **Tazuma S**, Kajiyama G. Carcinogenesis of malignant lesions of the gall bladder. The impact of chronic inflammation and gallstones. *Langenbecks Arch Surg* 2001; **386**: 224-229 [PMID: 11382326 DOI: 10.1007/s004230100220]

15 **Towfigh S**, McFadden DW, Cortina GR, Thompson JE, Tompkins RK, Chandler C, Hines OJ. Porcelain gallbladder is not associated with gallbladder carcinoma. *Am Surg* 2001; **67**: 7-10 [PMID: 11206901]

16 **Tashiro S**, Imaizumi T, Ohkawa H, Okada A, Katoh T, Kawaharada Y, Shimada H, Takamatsu H, Miyake H, Todani T; Committee for Registration of the Japanese Study Group on Pancreaticobiliary Maljunction. Pancreaticobiliary maljunction: retrospective and nationwide survey in Japan. *J Hepatobiliary Pancreat Surg* 2003; **10**: 345-351 [PMID: 14598134 DOI: 10.1007/s00534-002-0741-7]

17 **Sasatomi E**, Tokunaga O, Miyazaki K. Precancerous condi-

tions of gallbladder carcinoma: overview of histopathologic characteristics and molecular genetic findings. *J Hepatobiliary Pancreat Surg* 2000; **7**: 556-567 [PMID: 11180887 DOI: 10.1007/s005340070004]
18 **Kang CM**, Kim KS, Choi JS, Lee WJ, Kim BR. Gallbladder carcinoma associated with anomalous pancreaticobiliary duct junction. *Can J Gastroenterol* 2007; **21**: 383-387 [PMID: 17571173]
19 **Tanaka K**, Nishimura A, Yamada K, Ishibe R, Ishizaki N, Yoshimine M, Hamada N, Taira A. Cancer of the gallbladder associated with anomalous junction of the pancreatobiliary duct system without bile duct dilatation. *Br J Surg* 1993; **80**: 622-624 [PMID: 8518907 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.1800800527]
20 **Chao TC**, Wang CS, Jan YY, Chen HM, Chen MF. Carcinogenesis in the biliary system associated with APDJ. *J Hepatobiliary Pancreat Surg* 1999; **6**: 218-222 [PMID: 10526055 DOI: 10.1007/s005340050110]
21 **Aldridge MC**, Gruffaz F, Castaing D, Bismuth H. Adenomyomatosis of the gallbladder. A premalignant lesion? *Surgery* 1991; **109**: 107-110 [PMID: 1984629]
22 **Funabiki T**, Matsumoto S, Tsukada N, Kimura T, Yoshizaki S, Horibe Y. A patient with early gallbladder cancer derived from a Rokitanski-Aschoff sinus. *Surg Today* 1993; **23**: 350-355 [PMID: 8318790 DOI: 10.1007/BF00309054]
23 **Kawarada Y**, Sanda M, Mizumoto R, Yatani R. Early carcinoma of the gallbladder, noninvasive carcinoma originating in the Rokitansky-Aschoff sinus: a case report. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1986; **81**: 61-66 [PMID: 3942125]
24 **Terada T**. Gallbladder adenocarcinoma arising in Rokitansky-Aschoff sinus. *Pathol Int* 2008; **58**: 806-809 [PMID: 19067858 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1827.2008.02316.x]
25 **Nabatame N**, Shirai Y, Nishimura A, Yokoyama N, Wakai T, Hatakeyama K. High risk of gallbladder carcinoma in elderly patients with segmental adenomyomatosis of the gallbladder. *J Exp Clin Cancer Res* 2004; **23**: 593-598 [PMID: 15743029]
26 **Kai K**, Ide T, Masuda M, Kitahara K, Miyoshi A, Miyazaki K, Noshiro H, Tokunaga O. Clinicopathologic features of advanced gallbladder cancer associated with adenomyomatosis. *Virchows Arch* 2011; **459**: 573-580 [PMID: 22038508 DOI: 10.1007/s00428-011-1155-1]
27 **Roa I**, de Aretxabala X, Araya JC, Roa J. Preneoplastic lesions in gallbladder cancer. *J Surg Oncol* 2006; **93**: 615-623 [PMID: 16724345 DOI: 10.1002/jso.20527]
28 **Yamagiwa H**. Mucosal dysplasia of gallbladder: isolated and adjacent lesions to carcinoma. *Jpn J Cancer Res* 1989; **80**: 238-243 [PMID: 2498259 DOI: 10.1111/j.1349-7006.1989.tb02299.x]
29 **Kubota K**, Bandai Y, Noie T, Ishizaki Y, Teruya M, Makuuchi M. How should polypoid lesions of the gallbladder be treated in the era of laparoscopic cholecystectomy? *Surgery* 1995; **117**: 481-487 [PMID: 7740417 DOI: 10.1016/S0039-6060(05)80245-4]
30 **Ishikawa O**, Ohhigashi H, Imaoka S, Nakaizumi A, Kitamura T, Sasaki Y, Shibata T, Wada A, Iwanaga T. The difference in malignancy between pedunculated and sessile polypoid lesions of the gallbladder. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1989; **84**: 1386-1390 [PMID: 2683741]
31 **Ito H**, Hann LE, D'Angelica M, Allen P, Fong Y, Dematteo RP, Klimstra DS, Blumgart LH, Jarnagin WR. Polypoid lesions of the gallbladder: diagnosis and followup. *J Am Coll Surg* 2009; **208**: 570-575 [PMID: 19476792 DOI: 10.1016/j.jamcollsurg.2009.01.011]
32 **Pilgrim CH**, Groeschl RT, Christians KK, Gamblin TC. Modern perspectives on factors predisposing to the development of gallbladder cancer. *HPB* (Oxford) 2013; **15**: 839-844 [DOI: 10.1111/hpb.12046]
33 **Eslick GD**. Epidemiology of gallbladder cancer. *Gastroenterol Clin North Am* 2010; **39**: 307-330, ix [PMID: 20478488 DOI: 10.1016/j.gtc.2010.02.011]
34 **Nath G**, Gulati AK, Shukla VK. Role of bacteria in carcinogenesis, with special reference to carcinoma of the gallbladder. *World J Gastroenterol* 2010; **16**: 5395-5404 [PMID: 21086555 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v16.i43.5395]
35 **Mishra RR**, Tewari M, Shukla HS. Helicobacter species and pathogenesis of gallbladder cancer. *Hepatobiliary Pancreat Dis Int* 2010; **9**: 129-134 [PMID: 20382581]
36 **Sobin L**, Gospodarowicz M, Wittekind C. TNM Classification of malignant tumors. 7th ed. John Wiley & Sons, Inc., Hoboken, NJ, 2009
37 **Kohya N**, Miyazaki K. Hepatectomy of segment 4a and 5 combined with extra-hepatic bile duct resection for T2 and T3 gallbladder carcinoma. *J Surg Oncol* 2008; **97**: 498-502 [PMID: 18314875 DOI: 10.1002/jso.20982]
38 **Pilgrim C**, Usatoff V, Evans PM. A review of the surgical strategies for the management of gallbladder carcinoma based on T stage and growth type of the tumour. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 2009; **35**: 903-907 [PMID: 19261430 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejso.2009.02.005]
39 **Bartlett DL**, Fong Y, Fortner JG, Brennan MF, Blumgart LH. Long-term results after resection for gallbladder cancer. Implications for staging and management. *Ann Surg* 1996; **224**: 639-646 [PMID: 8916879 DOI: 10.1097/00000658-199611000-00008]
40 **Kai M**, Chijiiwa K, Ohuchida J, Nagano M, Hiyoshi M, Kondo K. A curative resection improves the postoperative survival rate even in patients with advanced gallbladder carcinoma. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2007; **11**: 1025-1032 [PMID: 17508256 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-007-0181-4]
41 **Misra S**, Chaturvedi A, Misra NC, Sharma ID. Carcinoma of the gallbladder. *Lancet Oncol* 2003; **4**: 167-176 [PMID: 12623362 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(03)01021-0]
42 **Mekeel KL**, Hemming AW. Surgical management of gallbladder carcinoma: a review. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2007; **11**: 1188-1193 [PMID: 17712596 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-007-0115-1]
43 **Wakai T**, Shirai Y, Yokoyama N, Nagakura S, Watanabe H, Hatakeyama K. Early gallbladder carcinoma does not warrant radical resection. *Br J Surg* 2001; **88**: 675-678 [PMID: 11350438 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2168.2001.01749.x]
44 **Eguchi H**, Ishikawa O, Ohigashi H, Kasugai T, Yokoyama S, Yamada T, Doki Y, Murata K, Miyashiro I, Sasaki Y, Imaoka S. Surgical significance of superficial cancer spread in early gallbladder cancer. *Jpn J Clin Oncol* 2005; **35**: 134-138 [PMID: 15741303 DOI: 10.1093/jjco/hyi042]
45 **Yildirim E**, Celen O, Gulben K, Berberoglu U. The surgical management of incidental gallbladder carcinoma. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 2005; **31**: 45-52 [PMID: 15642425 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejso.2004.09.006]
46 **de Aretxabala X**, Roa I, Burgos L, Araya JC, Fonseca L, Wistuba I, Flores P. Gallbladder cancer in Chile. A report on 54 potentially resectable tumors. *Cancer* 1992; **69**: 60-65 [PMID: 1727676 DOI: 10.1002/1097-0142(19920101)69:1<60::AID-CNCR2820690112>3.0.CO;2-N]
47 **Ogura Y**, Mizumoto R, Isaji S, Kusuda T, Matsuda S, Tabata M. Radical operations for carcinoma of the gallbladder: present status in Japan. *World J Surg* 1991; **15**: 337-343 [PMID: 1853612 DOI: 10.1007/BF01658725]
48 **Cucinotta E**, Lorenzini C, Melita G, Iapichino G, Currò G. Incidental gall bladder carcinoma: does the surgical approach influence the outcome? *ANZ J Surg* 2005; **75**: 795-798 [PMID: 16173995 DOI: 10.1111/j.1445-2197.2005.03528.x]
49 **Wagholikar GD**, Behari A, Krishnani N, Kumar A, Sikora SS, Saxena R, Kapoor VK. Early gallbladder cancer. *J Am Coll Surg* 2002; **194**: 137-141 [PMID: 11848630 DOI: 10.1016/S1072-7515(01)01136-X]
50 **Ouchi K**, Suzuki M, Tominaga T, Saijo S, Matsuno S. Survival after surgery for cancer of the gallbladder. *Br J Surg* 1994; **81**: 1655-1657 [PMID: 7827897 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.1800811131]
51 **Matsumoto Y**, Fujii H, Aoyama H, Yamamoto M, Sugahara K, Suda K. Surgical treatment of primary carcinoma of the gallbladder based on the histologic analysis of 48 surgical

specimens. *Am J Surg* 1992; **163**: 239-245 [PMID: 1739180 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9610(92)90109-5]
52 **Shirai Y**, Yoshida K, Tsukada K, Muto T, Watanabe H. Early carcinoma of the gallbladder. *Eur J Surg* 1992; **158**: 545-548 [PMID: 1360827]
53 **Fong Y**, Brennan MF, Turnbull A, Colt DG, Blumgart LH. Gallbladder cancer discovered during laparoscopic surgery. Potential for iatrogenic tumor dissemination. *Arch Surg* 1993; **128**: 1054-1056 [PMID: 8368924 DOI: 10.1001/archsurg.1993.01420210118016]
54 **Chijiiwa K**, Kai M, Nagano M, Hiyoshi M, Ohuchida J, Kondo K. Outcome of radical surgery for stage IV gallbladder carcinoma. *J Hepatobiliary Pancreat Surg* 2007; **14**: 345-350 [PMID: 17653631 DOI: 10.1007/s00534-006-1186-1]
55 **Principe A**, Del Gaudio M, Ercolani G, Golfieri R, Cucchetti A, Pinna AD. Radical surgery for gallbladder carcinoma: possibilities of survival. *Hepatogastroenterology* 2006; **53**: 660-664 [PMID: 17086863]
56 **Miller G**, Jarnagin WR. Gallbladder carcinoma. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 2008; **34**: 306-312 [PMID: 17964753 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejso.2007.07.206]
57 **Kaneoka Y**, Yamaguchi A, Isogai M, Harada T, Suzuki M. Hepatoduodenal ligament invasion by gallbladder carcinoma: histologic patterns and surgical recommendation. *World J Surg* 2003; **27**: 260-265 [PMID: 12607048 DOI: 10.1007/s00268-002-6702-0]
58 **Shimizu Y**, Ohtsuka M, Ito H, Kimura F, Shimizu H, Togawa A, Yoshidome H, Kato A, Miyazaki M. Should the extrahepatic bile duct be resected for locally advanced gallbladder cancer? *Surgery* 2004; **136**: 1012-1017; discussion 1018 [PMID: 15523394 DOI: 10.1016/j.surg.2004.04.032]
59 **Kosuge T**, Sano K, Shimada K, Yamamoto J, Yamasaki S, Makuuchi M. Should the bile duct be preserved or removed in radical surgery for gallbladder cancer? *Hepatogastroenterology* 1999; **46**: 2133-2137 [PMID: 10521955]
60 **Burdiles P**, Csendes A, Diaz JC, Maluenda F, Avila S, Jorquera P, Aldunate M. Factors affecting mortality in patients over 70 years of age submitted to surgery for gallbladder or common bile duct stones. *Hepatogastroenterology* 1989; **36**: 136-139 [PMID: 2753458]
61 **Araida T**, Higuchi R, Hamano M, Kodera Y, Takeshita N, Ota T, Yoshikawa T, Yamamoto M, Takasaki K. Hepatic resection in 485 R0 pT2 and pT3 cases of advanced carcinoma of the gallbladder: results of a Japanese Society of Biliary Surgery survey--a multicenter study. *J Hepatobiliary Pancreat Surg* 2009; **16**: 204-215 [PMID: 19219399 DOI: 10.1007/s00534-009-0044-3]
62 **Kohya N**, Kitahara K, Miyazaki K. Rational therapeutic strategy for T2 gallbladder carcinoma based on tumor spread. *World J Gastroenterol* 2010; **16**: 3567-3572 [PMID: 20653066 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v16.i28.3567]
63 **Wakai T**, Shirai Y, Yokoyama N, Ajioka Y, Watanabe H, Hatakeyama K. Depth of subserosal invasion predicts long-term survival after resection in patients with T2 gallbladder carcinoma. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2003; **10**: 447-454 [PMID: 12734095 DOI: 10.1245/ASO.2003.06.014]
64 **Oertli D**, Herzog U, Tondelli P. Primary carcinoma of the gallbladder: operative experience during a 16 year period. *Eur J Surg* 1993; **159**: 415-420 [PMID: 8218552]
65 **Sasaki R**, Uesugi N, Itabashi H, Fujita T, Takeda Y, Hoshikawa K, Takahashi M, Funato O, Nitta H, Sugai T, Kanno S, Saito K. Clinicopathological study of depth of subserosal invasion in patients with pT2 gallbladder carcinoma. *J Surg Oncol* 2005; **92**: 83-88 [PMID: 16231372 DOI: 10.1002/jso.20377]
66 **Kai K**, Kohya N, Kitahara K, Masuda M, Miyoshi A, Ide T, Tokunaga O, Miyazaki K, Noshiro H. Tumor budding and dedifferentiation in gallbladder carcinoma: potential for the prognostic factors in T2 lesions. *Virchows Arch* 2011; **459**: 449-456 [PMID: 21785869 DOI: 10.1007/s00428-011-1131-9]
67 **Ajiki T**, Onoyama H, Yamamoto M, Asaka K, Fujimori T, Maeda S, Saitoh Y. p53 protein expression and prognosis in gallbladder carcinoma and premalignant lesions. *Hepatogastroenterology* 1996; **43**: 521-526 [PMID: 8799388]
68 **Hidalgo Grau LA**, Badia JM, Salvador CA, Monsó TS, Canaleta JF, Nogués JM, Sala JS. Gallbladder carcinoma: the role of p53 protein overexpression and Ki-67 antigen expression as prognostic markers. *HPB* (Oxford) 2004; **6**: 174-180 [PMID: 18333072 DOI: 10.1080/13651820410025110]
69 **Kim YW**, Huh SH, Park YK, Yoon TY, Lee SM, Hong SH. Expression of the c-erb-B2 and p53 protein in gallbladder carcinomas. *Oncol Rep* 2001; **8**: 1127-1132 [PMID: 11496329]
70 **Jarnagin WR**, Klimstra DS, Hezel M, Gonen M, Fong Y, Roggin K, Cymes K, DeMatteo RP, D'Angelica M, Blumgart LH, Singh B. Differential cell cycle-regulatory protein expression in biliary tract adenocarcinoma: correlation with anatomic site, pathologic variables, and clinical outcome. *J Clin Oncol* 2006; **24**: 1152-1160 [PMID: 16505435 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2005.04.6631]
71 **Kim WB**, Han HJ, Lee HJ, Park SS, Song TJ, Kim HK, Suh SO, Kim YC, Choi SY. Expression and clinical significance of cell cycle regulatory proteins in gallbladder and extrahepatic bile duct cancer. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2009; **16**: 23-34 [PMID: 18979138 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-008-0182-x]
72 **Lee CS**, Pirdas A. p53 protein immunoreactivity in cancers of the gallbladder, extrahepatic bile ducts and ampulla of Vater. *Pathology* 1995; **27**: 117-120 [PMID: 7567135 DOI: 10.1080/00313029500169692]
73 **Chang HJ**, Yoo BC, Kim SW, Lee BL, Kim WH. Significance of PML and p53 protein as molecular prognostic markers of gallbladder carcinomas. *Pathol Oncol Res* 2007; **13**: 326-335 [PMID: 18158568 DOI: 10.1007/BF02940312]
74 **Nakakubo Y**, Miyamoto M, Cho Y, Hida Y, Oshikiri T, Suzuoki M, Hiraoka K, Itoh T, Kondo S, Katoh H. Clinical significance of immune cell infiltration within gallbladder cancer. *Br J Cancer* 2003; **89**: 1736-1742 [PMID: 14583778 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6601331]
75 **Kai K**, Masuda M, Ide T, Takase Y, Miyoshi A, Kitahara K, Miyazaki K, Noshiro H, Tokunaga O. Mitotic count reflects prognosis of gallbladder cancer particularly among patients with T3 tumor. *Mol Clin Oncol* 2013; **1**: 633-638
76 **Eguchi T**, Inoue T, Fujii K, Yamaguchi H, Nishiyama K, Yonemasu H, Yao T, Tanaka M, Tsuneyoshi M. Laminin-5 (gamma2 chain) is a marker of invading cancer cells in human gallbladder carcinoma: special emphasis on extension of carcinoma in situ along Rokitansky-Aschoff sinuses. *Oncol Rep* 2008; **20**: 33-39 [PMID: 18575715]
77 **Wu W**, Pan C, Yu H, Gong H, Wang Y. Heparanase expression in gallbladder carcinoma and its correlation to prognosis. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2008; **23**: 491-497 [PMID: 17524042 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2007.04945.x]
78 **Kim H**, Song JY, Cho JY, Yoon YS, Han HS, Lee HS, Ryu HS, Choe G. Strong cytoplasmic expression of COX2 at the invasive fronts of gallbladder cancer is associated with a poor prognosis. *J Clin Pathol* 2010; **63**: 1048-1053 [PMID: 20924037]
79 **Matsushita S**, Onishi H, Nakano K, Nagamatsu I, Imaizumi A, Hattori M, Oda Y, Tanaka M, Katano M. Hedgehog signaling pathway is a potential therapeutic target for gallbladder cancer. *Cancer Sci* 2014; **105**: 272-280 [PMID: 24438533]
80 **Wu XY**, Zhang L, Zhang KM, Zhang MH, Ruan TY, Liu CY, Xu JY. Clinical implication of TMPRSS4 expression in human gallbladder cancer. *Tumour Biol* 2014; **35**: 5481-5486 [PMID: 24532432]
81 **Peng HH**, Zhang YD, Gong LS, Liu WD, Zhang Y. Increased expression of microRNA-335 predicts a favorable prognosis in primary gallbladder carcinoma. *Onco Targets Ther* 2013; **6**: 1625-1630 [PMID: 24250228]
82 **Yang ZL**, Yang L, Zou Q, Yuan Y, Li J, Liang L, Zeng G, Chen S. Positive ALDH1A3 and negative GPX3 expressions are biomarkers for poor prognosis of gallbladder cancer. *Dis*

Markers 2013; **35**: 163-172 [PMID: 24167362]
83 **Kai K**, Irie H, Ide T, Masuda M, Kitahara K, Miyoshi A, Miyazaki K, Noshiro H, Tokunaga O. Actual status of clinical diagnosis in patients with primary gallbladder cancer associated with adenomyomatosis. *Indian J Gastroenterol* 2013; **32**: 386-391 [PMID: 24214664 DOI: 10.1007/s12664-013-0355-9]

P- Reviewer: Oshiro Y, Rege RV, Xu Z **S- Editor**: Song XX
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Clinical Cases

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.12998/wjcc.v2.i10.522

World J Clin Cases 2014 October 16; 2(10): 522-527
ISSN 2307-8960 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography-related perforation: Management and prevention

Varayu Prachayakul, Pitulak Aswakul

Varayu Prachayakul, Siriraj GI Endoscopy Center, Division of Gastroenterology, Department of Internal Medicine, Siriraj Hospital, Faculty of Medicine, Mahidol University, Bangkok 10700, Thailand
Pitulak Aswakul, Liver and Digestive Institute, Samitivej-Sukhumvit Hospital, Bangkok 10120, Thailand
Author contributions: Prachayakul V and Aswakul P contributed equally to this work; Prachayakul V designed the concept; Prachayakul V and Aswakul P reviewed the literature, wrote and revised the paper.
Correspondence to: Varayu Prachayakul, Assist Professor, Siriraj GI Endoscopy Center, Division of Gastroenterology, Department of Internal Medicine, Siriraj Hospital, Faculty of Medicine, Mahidol University, 7 Prannok Rd., Bangkoknoi, Bangkok 10700, Thailand. kaiyjr@gmail.com
Telephone: +66-2-4121088 Fax: +66-2-4199610
Received: May 1, 2014 Revised: July 7, 2014
Accepted: July 25, 2014
Published online: October 16, 2014

Abstract

Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP) is a procedure that can result in serious complications, and thus should be handled by a skilled endoscopist to minimize the risk of complications and to enhance the success rate. The incidence of ERCP-related complications is 5%-10%, most commonly involving post-ERCP pancreatitis and clinically significant post-endoscopic sphincterotomy bleeding. Although ERCP-related perforation has a relatively lower incidence of 0.14%-1.6%, this complication is associated with a high mortality rate of 4.2%-29.6%. A classification of perforation type based on the instrument that caused the perforation was recently described that we postulated could affect the implementation of perforation management. In the present article, an algorithm for management and prevention of ERCP-related perforations is proposed that is based on the perforation type and delay of diagnosis. Available evidence demonstrates that a delayed diagnosis and/or treatment of perforation results in a poorer prognosis, and thus should be at the forefront of procedural consideration. Furthermore, this review provides steps and recommendations from the pre-procedural stage through the post-procedural evaluation with consideration of contributing factors in order to minimize ERCP-related complication risk and improve patient outcome. To avoid perforation, endoscopists must evaluate the risks related to the individual patient and the procedure and perform the procedure gently. Once a perforation occurs, immediate diagnosis and early management are key factors to minimize mortality.

Key words: Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography; Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography; Perforation; Prevention; Management; Classification

Core tip: Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP)-related perforation, is a rare complication with a high morbidity and mortality. An immediate diagnosis and early management of ERCP-related perforation are key factors to minimize mortality. In this review article, the authors shared their experiences and propose an algorithm to avoid perforation and for management once a perforation occurs.

Prachayakul V, Aswakul P. Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography-related perforation: Management and prevention. *World J Clin Cases* 2014; 2(10): 522-527 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2307-8960/full/v2/i10/522.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.12998/wjcc.v2.i10.522

INTRODUCTION

Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP)

Table 1 Previous classifications of endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography-related perforations

	According to Stapfer *et al*[12]	According to Howard *et al*[13]
Type Ⅰ	Lateral or medial wall perforation	Duodenal perforation remote from the papilla
Type Ⅱ	Perivaterian injury	Periampullary retroperitoneal perforation
Type Ⅲ	Distal bile duct injury related to wire/basket instrumentation	Guidewire perforation
Type Ⅳ	Retroperitoneal air alone	None

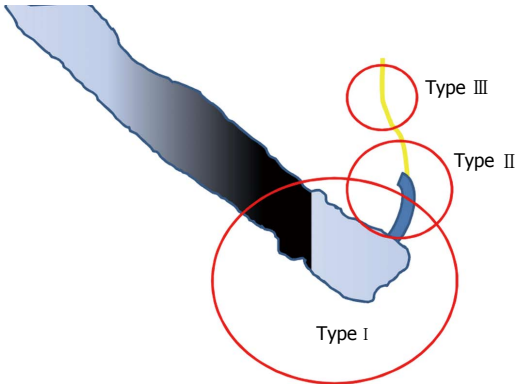


Figure 1 Classification of endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography-related perforation (based on Kim *et al*[14]).

is a procedure that should be performed by a skilled endoscopist to maximize the success rate and minimize complications, which occur in 5%-10% of cases[1,2]. The most common complications are post-ERCP pancreatitis (1.0%-3.5% of cases)[3-5] and clinically significant post-endoscopic sphincterotomy bleeding (0.1%-2.0% incidence)[6-9]. ERCP-related perforations are relatively uncommon (incidence of 0.14%-1.6%), though associated with a high mortality rate of 4.2%-29.6%[10,11]. Whereas delayed recognition and treatment of this complication contribute to fatality, early detection and management confer a better prognosis. This review focuses on the classification, early diagnosis, management, and prevention of ERCP-related perforations.

CLASSIFICATIONS OF ERCP-RELATED PERFORATION

ERCP-related perforations were previously classified into 3-4 types, regardless of the site of perforation[12,13] (Table 1). In 2011, Kim *et al*[14] proposed a new classification based on the instrument that caused the perforation. A type I perforation results from the scope itself, which always causes a large perforation with heavy contamination (Figure 1). A type Ⅱ perforation can be caused by the needle-knife used during the sphincterotomy, from the ERCP cannula or the sphincterotome, which cause a moderate-sized hole with less contamination. Type Ⅲ refers to a perforation caused by the guidewire and is associated with the least risk of contamination. A review of cases presented by Kim *et al*[14] and an additional 62 cases from Kwon *et al*[15] that were reevaluated using the new classification, revealed that 80% of patients with type I perforations (20/25 cases) required surgery, compared to 19% (7/37) of those with type Ⅱ perforations. We therefore postulated that this classification could be used to direct the management of patients with perforations.

EARLY RECOGNITION OF PERFORATIONS

Most type I perforations are immediately recognized by the endoscopist during the procedure. Large perforations can be definitively indicated by visualization of intra-abdominal organs, whereas smaller perforations may show only yellowish tissue of intra/retroperitoneal fat or by bleeding from other sites such as a lateral wall of the duodenum (Figure 2). If the endoscopist who performed the procedure suspects a perforation, evaluation of the pneumoperitoneum by fluoroscopy can be very helpful (Figure 3A). Some experts also recommend changing the duodenoscope to an end-view type for better mucosal visualization.

Type Ⅱs are typically retroperitoneal perforations that occur during treatment interventions. In some cases, the endoscopist may recognize that an injury is "too deep" with increased bleeding, abnormal positioning of the guidewire, skin emphysema, and a clear kidney shadow. When this type of perforation is suspected, it should be confirmed by fluoroscopy, which can help identify unexplainable air in the retroperitoneum (Figure 3B), or by contrast injection, which will show contrast leakage into the retroperitoneal cavity (Figure 3C).

Type Ⅲ perforationscan be recognized by an unusual guidewire position. If recognized in a timely manner, this type of perforation can be adequately managed by simply pulling the guidewire back into a safe position. However, the perforation can become a type Ⅱ if the endoscopist does not recognize the perforation and continues pushing the instrument further. Up to 20%-30% of type Ⅱ and Ⅲ perforations are not immediately diagnosed, and patients may report abdominal pain and discomfort, which are followed by fever and leukocytosis. These perforations can be confirmed by a computed scan of the abdomen, which reveals retroperitoneal air (Figure 4) or fluid collection[16].

MANAGEMENT

General principles of management for ERCP-related perforation include a *nil per os* directive, *iv* fluid resuscitation, administration of antibiotics to decrease intra/retroperitoneal contamination or fluid collection, pneumoperitoneal decompression, and, if possible, endoscopic closure. In some cases, surgical consultation may also be needed to control sepsis and repair the perforation, depending on the site and degree of leakage, the patient's condition, and mechanism of injury. Radiologic interventions were

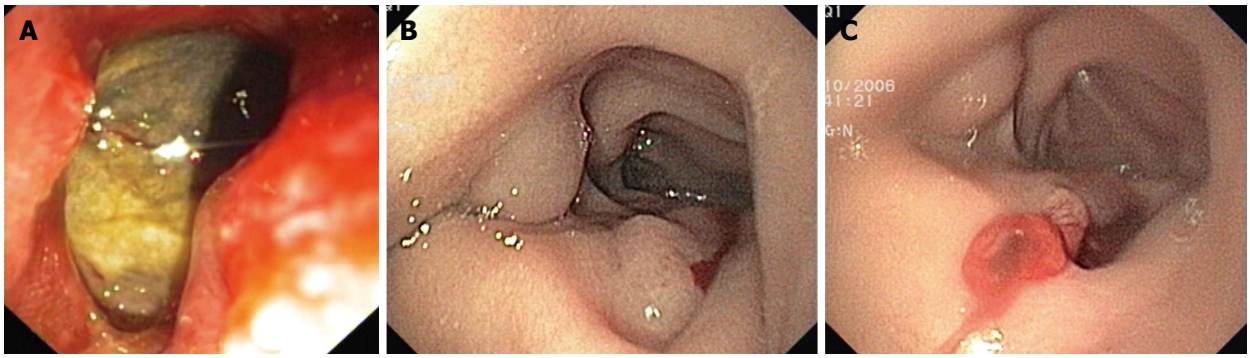


Figure 2 Endoscopic visualization of perforations. A: Image of yellowish tissue in the retroperitoneum; B and C: Bleeding from a lateral wall of the duodenum.

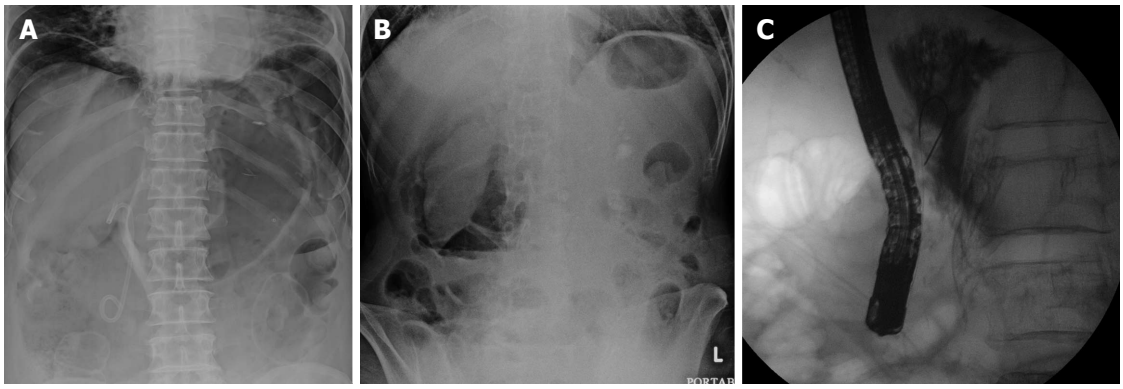


Figure 3 Fluoroscopy showing pneumoperitoneum (A), retroperitoneal air (B) and leakage of contrast media into the retroperitoneal cavity (C). The kidney outline (clear region on the right side of the image) showing retroperitoneal air.

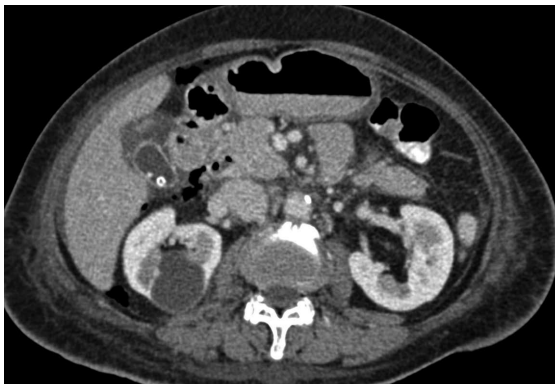


Figure 4 Computed tomography showing retroperitoneal air.

found to be useful in some particular cases, particularly those with localized retroperitoneal fluid collection and without clinical sign of peritonitis[17]. However, the management of ERCP perforation in that particular study was based upon whether the perforation was diagnosed immediately after it occurred, or delayed by at least 24 h after the procedure (recognized by abnormal vital or abdominal signs).

Immediate diagnosis

Type I perforations, which are typically 1.0-1.3 cm wide, have been successfully treated during ERCP with hemostatic clips either through the gastroscope(with or without cap assistance)[18,19] or with an endoloop[20], or with over-the-scope clips[21]. Contrast injections should be administered to rule out leakage, as 30%-60% of type I perforations fail endoscopic closure and require surgery. Patients who undergo immediate surgical correction typically remain in the hospital for 12-16 d. Prompt diagnosis is crucial, as evidenced by a study of Miller *et al*[11] that reported two deaths out of five cases involving type I perforations, resulting from delayed diagnosis in one case, and delayed operation in the other, and six deaths from delayed surgical repair of type Ⅱ perforations that were initially managed with a conservative treatment strategy[11]. Thus, some surgeons recommend immediate diagnosis and early surgery for ERCP-related perforations[22-24]. In our endoscopic center (within a tertiary care, university-based hospital), 4082 ERCP procedures were performed between January 2009 and June 2013, with a post-ERCP perforation rate of 0.29% (n = 10 type Ⅰ; n =2 type Ⅱ perforation cases). All of the patients (65-91 years old) were diagnosed during or immediately upon finishing the ERCP procedures. Eighty-three percent of these cases underwent surgical correction while only 17% received conservative treatment, with no deaths.

Mao *et al*[25] reported on nine cases of ERCP-related perforation (mostly type Ⅱ), six of which were managed conservatively with hospital stays ranging from 4 to 75 d. Subcutaneous emphysema was a significant clinical sign

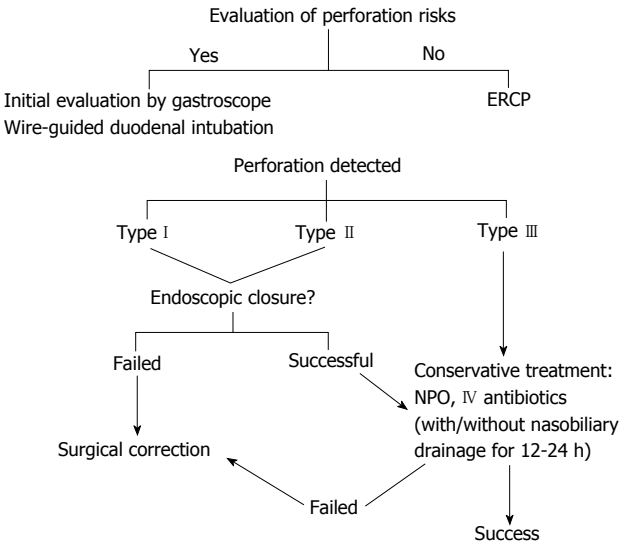


Figure 5 Algorithm for prevention and management of endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography-related perforations.

found in seven of the nine patients. To aid in the success of conservative treatments, which included antibiotics, endoscopic treatment (when possible), intensive observation and follow-up imaging, nasobiliary and gastrointestinal drainage was recommended to reduce the leakage of digestive juices. However, very high success rates were also reported with conservative treatment (with or without nasobiliary drainage) by Park *et al*[26] and Vezakis *et al*[27], using fully covered self-expandable metal stents for closure of perforated sites at the ampullary region.

The majority of type Ⅲ perforations involve only mild contrast leakage or pneumoperitoneum without contrast leakage, and can be managed conservatively, requiring hospitalization for only 5-6 d[11,24]. Genzlinger *et al*[28] found that up to 29% of patients who underwent ERCP showed pneumoperitoneum on plain radiography without clinical significance. However, further investigation is recommended in patients who have pneumoperitoneum and clinical signs of infection.

The surgical indications in the studies mentioned here differed from recommendations stated by Stapfer *et al*[12], which include large extravasation of contrast, fluid collection in the peritoneal or retroperitoneal space on follow-up computed tomography scan, massive subcutaneous emphysema, or retained choledocholithiasis. Our recommendation is to perform salvage surgery in patients with: (1) failure of initial endoscopic closure, especially type Ⅰ or type Ⅱ perforations; (2) no improvement in clinical signs of sepsis, or follow-up abdominal signs worsening within 12-24 h after successful endoscopic closure (type Ⅰ) or conservative management (type Ⅱ); and (3) retained instruments or choledocholithiasis requiring surgical removal.

Delayed diagnosis

The prognosis is generally worse for any type of perforation with a delayed diagnosis, and most patients develop clinical signs of peritonitis and sepsis within 1-5 d after the procedure[26-28]. It is important to note that abdominal signs might be relatively benign within the first few hours, even for type Ⅰ perforations, however the presentation of peritoneal signs as a late finding is related to a poor clinical outcome[11]. Surgical drainage and correction is recommended in cases of delayed type Ⅱ diagnosis with clinical sepsis[11,21,26,27]. However, most patients (50%-90%) having type Ⅱ perforations with minimal leakage or type Ⅲ perforations will respond to conservative treatment.

Table 2 Factors associated with increased risk of post-endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography perforation (from Enns *et al*[24])

Factors	Results of multivariate analysis [OR (95%CI)]
Dilated common bile duct	2.32 (1.02-5.03)
Sphincter of oddi dysfunction	3.20 (1.64-8.94)
Longer duration of procedure	1.02 (1.00-1.04)
Biliary stricture dilatation	7.29 (1.84-28.11)
Performance of sphincterotomy	6.94 (2.43-19.77)

PREVENTION OF ERCP-RELATED PERFORATION

There are several factors that have been associated with an increased risk for ERCP-related perforation (Table 2). Nonetheless, there are steps that can be taken to avoid causing ERCP-related perforations, beginning before the procedure, and continuing through the follow-up stage (Figure 5).

Pre-procedural evaluation

Some patients have a higher risk of perforation because of surgically altered anatomy. Such patients should undergo "endoscopic scanning" using an end-view gastroscope before starting ERCP. In cases of failure to pass the end-view scope owing to anastomotic stricture or too much resistance, continuation with the ERCP procedure should first be discussed with the patients and their families. If the endoscopist decides to follow through with the procedure, a duodenoscope should be inserted in an "over-the-guidewire" fashion to minimize duodenal wall injury. When narrowing of the anastomosis site is encountered, balloon dilatation over the guidewire can be helpful prior to duodenoscope insertion. However, this is not recommended for cases with malignant strictures, but rather duodenal stenting with a self-expandable metal stent followed by ERCP in the subsequent weeks is more appropriate.

During bile duct cannulation and intervention

There are several comments and recommendations concerning the procedure that should be kept in mind: (1) Patients with periampullary diverticula have a higher risk of perforation, especially from sphincterotomy. Therefore, the endoscopist must be very careful during this

process. A balloon sphincteroplasty is recommended in such cases, rather than endoscopic sphincterotomy; (2) Insertion of any ERCP instruments into the bile duct should be performed in an "over-the-guidewire" fashion to prevent a "false track." Furthermore, the endoscopist should perform ERCP as gently as possible to minimize tissue injury; (3) Endoscopic sphincterotomy should be carried out in the suggested direction of 11 to 12 o' clock for the common bile duct and 12 to 2 o'clock for pancreatic sphincterotomy. Over-bowing of the sphincterotome should be avoided to prevent a "zipper cut," and cutting should not go beyond the second fold above the papilla. Adequate knowledge and intensive observation of ampulla anatomy are essential for all endoscopists who perform ERCP; (4) Needle-knife sphincterotomy should be performed only by experienced endoscopists. Those who are less experienced should recognize their limitations and be responsible enough to request assistance; and (5) Dilatation of the ampulla increases the risk of perforation. Therefore, the endoscopist should consider the length of sphincterotomy or the size of balloon sphincteroplasty suitable for the objective of the maneuver, such as limited or no sphincterotomy for stenting, dilating the ampulla no more than the size of the common bile duct above, and an appropriately sized sphincterotomy depending on the size of the stone.

During fluoroscopy

The endoscopist should observe the patient's abdominal signs and perform fluoroscopy intermittently during the ERCP procedure. A diagnosis can be immediately made upon recognition of an abnormal guidewire position, extravasation of contrast, or pneumoperitoneum, which can allow for prompt treatment. Furthermore, a fluoroscopic abdominal scan should be performed after any difficult procedure to identify possible complications.

Post-procedural care

Patients should be encouraged to promptly report any abdominal symptoms and should be watched for abnormal clinical signs after the ERCP procedure. The ward staff should be notified to maintain special observation of patients with difficult cases for early detection of possible complications.

CONCLUSION

As ERCP-related perforations are a serious complication with a high mortality rate, endoscopists should perform the procedure with caution. To avoid perforation, endoscopists must evaluate the risks related to the patient and the procedure and perform the procedure with care. Once a perforation occurs, immediate diagnosis and early management are key factors to minimize mortality.

REFERENCES

1 **Loperfido S**, Angelini G, Benedetti G, Chilovi F, Costan F, De Berardinis F, De Bernardin M, Ederle A, Fina P, Fratton A. Major early complications from diagnostic and therapeutic ERCP: a prospective multicenter study. *Gastrointest Endosc* 1998; **48**: 1-10 [PMID: 9684657 DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5107(98)70121-X]

2 **Wu HM**, Dixon E, May GR, Sutherland FR. Management of perforation after endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP): a population-based review. *HPB* (Oxford) 2006; **8**: 393-399 [PMID: 18333093]

3 **Maranki J**, Yeaton P. Prevention of post-ERCP pancreatitis. *Curr Gastroenterol Rep* 2013; **15**: 352 [PMID: 24193373 DOI: 10.1007/s11894-013-0352-2]

4 **Masci E**, Toti G, Mariani A, Curioni S, Lomazzi A, Dinelli M, Minoli G, Crosta C, Comin U, Fertitta A, Prada A, Passoni GR, Testoni PA. Complications of diagnostic and therapeutic ERCP: a prospective multicenter study. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2001; **96**: 417-423 [PMID: 11232684 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2001.03594.x]

5 **Jeurnink SM**, Siersema PD, Steyerberg EW, Dees J, Poley JW, Haringsma J, Kuipers EJ. Predictors of complications after endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography: a prognostic model for early discharge. *Surg Endosc* 2011; **25**: 2892-2900 [PMID: 21455806 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-011-1638-9: 21455806]

6 **Zippi M**, De Felici I, Pica R, Agus MA, Solinas A, Occhigrossi G, Traversa G. Self-expandable metal stent placement for treatment of severe sphincterotomy bleeding. *Clin Ter* 2013; **164**: e27-e29 [PMID: 23455748 DOI: 10.7417/CT.2013.1517]

7 **Dunne R**, McCarthy E, Joyce E, McEniff N, Guiney M, Ryan JM, Beddy P. Post-endoscopic biliary sphincterotomy bleeding: an interventional radiology approach. *Acta Radiol* 2013; **54**: 1159-1164 [PMID: 23892235 DOI: 10.1177/0284185113491567]

8 **Balmadrid B**, Kozarek R. Prevention and management of adverse events of endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography. *Gastrointest Endosc Clin N Am* 2013; **23**: 385-403 [PMID: 23540966 DOI: 10.1016/j.giec.2012.12.007]

9 **Yang XM**, Hu B. Endoscopic sphincterotomy plus large-balloon dilation vs endoscopic sphincterotomy for choledocholithiasis: a meta-analysis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 9453-9460 [PMID: 24409076 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i48.9453]

10 **Alfieri S**, Rosa F, Cina C, Tortorelli AP, Tringali A, Perri V, Bellantone C, Costamagna G, Doglietto GB. Management of duodeno-pancreato-biliary perforations after ERCP: outcomes from an Italian tertiary referral center. *Surg Endosc* 2013; **27**: 2005-2012 [PMID: 23299135 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-012-2702-9:23299135]

11 **Miller R**, Zbar A, Klein Y, Buyeviz V, Melzer E, Mosenkis BN, Mavor E. Perforations following endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography: a single institution experience and surgical recommendations. *Am J Surg* 2013; **206**: 180-186 [PMID: 23870391 DOI: 10.1016/j.amjsurg.2012.07.050]

12 **Stapfer M**, Selby RR, Stain SC, Katkhouda N, Parekh D, Jabbour N, Garry D. Management of duodenal perforation after endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography and sphincterotomy. *Ann Surg* 2000; **232**: 191-198 [PMID: 10903596 DOI: 10.1097/00000658-200008000-00007]

13 **Howard TJ**, Tan T, Lehman GA, Sherman S, Madura JA, Fogel E, Swack ML, Kopecky KK. Classification and management of perforations complicating endoscopic sphincterotomy. *Surgery* 1999; **126**: 658-663; discussion 664-665 [PMID: 10520912 DOI: 10.1016/S0039-6060(99)70119-4]

14 **Kim BS**, Kim IG, Ryu BY, Kim JH, Yoo KS, Baik GH, Kim JB, Jeon JY. Management of endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography-related perforations. *J Korean Surg Soc* 2011; **81**: 195-204 [PMID: 22066121]

15 **Kwon W**, Jang JY, Ryu JK, Kim YT, Yoon YB, Kang MJ, Kim SW. Proposal of an endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography-related perforation management guideline based on perforation type. *J Korean Surg Soc* 2012; **83**: 218-226 [PMID: 23091794]

16 **Ruiz-Tovar J**, Lobo E, Sanjuanbenito A, Martínez-Molina E.

Case series: pneumoretroperitoneum secondary to duodenal perforation after endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography. *Can J Surg* 2009; **52**: 68-69 [PMID: 19234656]
17 **Krishna RP**, Singh RK, Behari A, Kumar A, Saxena R, Kapoor VK. Post-endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography perforation managed by surgery or percutaneous drainage. *Surg Today* 2011; **41**: 660-666 [PMID: 21533938 DOI: 10.1007/s00595-009-4331-z]
18 **Lee TH**, Bang BW, Jeong JI, Kim HG, Jeong S, Park SM, Lee DH, Park SH, Kim SJ. Primary endoscopic approximation suture under cap-assisted endoscopy of an ERCP-induced duodenal perforation. *World J Gastroenterol* 2010; **16**: 2305-2310 [PMID: 20458771 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v16.i18.2305]
19 **Solomon M**, Schlachterman A, Morgenstern R. Iatrogenic duodenal perforation treated with endoscopic placement of metallic clips: a case report. *Case Rep Med* 2012; **2012**: 609750 [PMID: 22431936 DOI: 10.1155/2012/609750]
20 **Kwon CI**, Song SH, Hahm KB, Ko KH. Unusual complications related to endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography and its endoscopic treatment. *Clin Endosc* 2013; **46**: 251-259 [PMID: 23767036 DOI: 10.5946/ce.2013.46.3.251]
21 **Salord S**, Gornals JB, Maisterra S, Pons C, Busquets J, Fabregat J. Endoscopic closure of duodenal perforation with an over-the-scope clip during endoscopic ultrasound-guided cholangiopancreatography. *Rev Esp Enferm Dig* 2012; **104**: 489-490 [PMID: 23130857 DOI: 10.4321/S1130-01082012000900007]
22 **Dubecz A**, Ottmann J, Schweigert M, Stadlhuber RJ, Feith M, Wiessner V, Muschweck H, Stein HJ. Management of ERCP-related small bowel perforations: the pivotal role of physical investigation. *Can J Surg* 2012; **55**: 99-104 [PMID: 22564521]
23 **Palanivelu C**, Jategaonkar PA, Rangarajan M, Anand NV, Senthilnathan P. Laparoscopic management of a retroperitoneal duodenal perforation following ERCP for periampullary cancer. *JSLS* 2008; **12**: 399-402 [PMID: 19275857]
24 **Enns R**, Eloubeidi MA, Mergener K, Jowell PS, Branch MS, Pappas TM, Baillie J. ERCP-related perforations: risk factors and management. *Endoscopy* 2002; **34**: 293-298 [PMID: 11932784 DOI: 10.1055/s-2002-23650]
25 **Mao Z**, Zhu Q, Wu W, Wang M, Li J, Lu A, Sun Y, Zheng M. Duodenal perforations after endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography: experience and management. *J Laparoendosc Adv Surg Tech A* 2008; **18**: 691-695 [PMID: 18803511 DOI: 10.1089/lap.2008.0020]
26 **Park WY**, Cho KB, Kim ES, Park KS. A case of ampullary perforation treated with a temporally covered metal stent. *Clin Endosc* 2012; **45**: 177-180 [PMID: 22866262 DOI: 10.5946/ce.2012.45.2.177]
27 **Vezakis A**, Fragulidis G, Nastos C, Yiallourou A, Polydorou A, Voros D. Closure of a persistent sphincterotomy-related duodenal perforation by placement of a covered self-expandable metallic biliary stent. *World J Gastroenterol* 2011; **17**: 4539-4541 [PMID: 22110286 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v17.i40.4539]
28 **Genzlinger JL**, McPhee MS, Fisher JK, Jacob KM, Helzberg JH. Significance of retroperitoneal air after endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography with sphincterotomy. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1999; **94**: 1267-1270 [PMID: 10235205 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.1999.00996.x]

P- Reviewer: Murata A, Thomopoulos KC **S- Editor**: Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Clinical Cases

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.12998/wjcc.v2.i10.528

World J Clin Cases 2014 October 16; 2(10): 528-533
ISSN 2307-8960 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Primary intestinal lymphangiectasia: Minireview

Sachin B Ingle, Chitra R Hinge (Ingle)

Sachin B Ingle, Department of Pathology, MIMSR Medical College, Latur, Maharashtra 4132512, India
Chitra R Hinge (Ingle), Department of Physiology, MIMSR Medical College, Latur, Maharashtra 4132512, India
Author contributions: Ingle SB and Hinge (Ingle) CR prepared the manuscript; Ingle SB critically revised the intellectual content and gave final approval of manuscript.
Correspondence to: Sachin B Ingle, Professor, Department of Pathology, MIMSR Medical College, Ambajogai road, Vishwanathpuram, Latur, Maharastra 4132512, India. dr.sachiningle@gmail.com
Telephone: +91-2382-227424 Fax: +91-2382-228939
Received: April 18, 2014 Revised: June 28, 2014
Accepted: July 25, 2014
Published online: October 16, 2014

Key words: Primary idiopathic intestinal lymphangiectasia; Mucosa-submucosa; Protein loosing enteropathy; Double balloon endoscopy; Biopsy

Core tip: Waldmann's disease is an unusual primary idiopathic intestinal lymphangiectasia, which results in protein loosing enteropathy. Recently, double balloon endoscopy and biopsy in combination is an effective diagnostic tool to hit the correct diagnosis to avoid untoward complications related to disease and treatment due to misdiagnosis. Thus, the clinician should keep in mind this rare condition as a differential diagnosis of oedema.

Ingle SB, Hinge (Ingle) CR. Primary intestinal lymphangiectasia: Minireview. *World J Clin Cases* 2014; 2(10): 528-533 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2307-8960/full/v2/i10/528.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.12998/wjcc.v2.i10.528

Abstract

Primary idiopathic intestinal lymphangiectasia is an unusual disease featured by the presence of dilated lymphatic channels which are located in the mucosa, submucosa or subserosa leading to protein loosing enteropathy.Most often affected were children and generally diagnosed before third year of life but may be rarely seen in adults too. Bilateral pitting oedema of lower limb is the main clinical manifestation mimicking the systemic disease and posing a real diagnostic dilemma to the clinicians to differentiate it from other common systemic diseases like Congestive cardiac failure, Nephrotic Syndrome, Protein Energy Malnutrition, *etc.* Diagnosis can be made on capsule endoscopy which can localise the lesion but unable to take biopsy samples. Thus, recently double-balloon enteroscopy and biopsy in combination can be used as an effective diagnostic tool to hit the correct diagnosis. Patients respond dramatically to diet constituting low long chain triglycerides and high protein content with supplements of medium chain triglyceride. So early diagnosis is important to prevent untoward complications related to disease or treatment for the sake of accurate pathological diagnosis.

INTRODUCTION

Primary Intestinal lymphangiectasia (PIL) was originally described in 1961 by Waldmann *et al*[1]. It is an unusual cause of protein losing enteropathy either due to congenital malformation or obstruction of lymphatics of intestine[2]. Lymphangectasia is characterised by dilated and proliferating lymphatic channels located in mucosa, submucosa or subserosa leading to protein loosing enteropathy and loss of lymph into gut resulting in to hypoproteinemia, hypogammaglobulinemia, hypoalbuminemia and lymphopenia[3-5]. Peripheral oedema usually symmetrical (lower limb oedema) is the main clinical feature posing a real diagnostic dilemma to the clinicians to differentiate it from other common conditions like congestive cardiac failure, nephrotic syndrome, protein energy malnutrition, *etc*[3]. Other symptoms are ascites, pleural effusion, weight loss and abdominal pain, diarrhoea with increased faecal loss of protein and fat with increased serum levels of α1-antitrypsin[2,5]. Diagnosis is defined by endoscopic evaluation and confirmed on histopathologi-

cal evaluation of biopsy of small intestine[1].

Now a day double balloon endoscopy and biopsy is the mainstay to arrive at correct diagnosis.

EPIDEMOLOGY

The worldwide incidence and prevalence of PIL is not known[2,6]. After 1961, as per available literature less than 200 cases were reported[7,8]. Very few familial forms are reported[1,2,9]. There is no specific predilection for sex and race[6]. Most commonly, it has been seen in children and majority of the cases were diagnosed at or before 3 years of age but can be seen in adults also[5,6].

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

Waldmann's disease is also called as exudative enteropathy. The pathogenesis is not clear. The proposed hypothetical theories for pathogenesis are.

Lymphatic obstruction theory

The basic cause for protein loss in PIL is poorly understood although lymphatic channel malformation/lymphatic hypoplasia leads to obstruction in lymph flow with resultant increase in intraluminal pressure in lymphatic channels[6,10,11]. This, increased intraluminal pressure will cause dilatation of the submucosal,subserosal lymphatic vessels in the intestine finally leading to the rupture of the cystically dilated channels and leading to discharge of the lymph into the bowel lumen[6,12]. Thus, net result is hypoalbuminemia, hypogammaglobinemia and lymphopenia.

Genetic theory: There are mutations in genes that regulate the process of lymphogenesis[5]. Multiple genes, *e.g.*, vascular endothelial growth factor receptor 3, prospero-related homeobox-transcriptional factor, forkhead transcriptional factor and *SOX18* play vital role in lymphogenesis[13]. Mutation of the *CCBE1* gene has been identified as a cause of intestinal lymphangiectasia in Hennekam syndrome.

CLINICAL PRESENATION

Age-PIL is mainly seen in paediatric age group (usually before 3 years of age) and young adults but may be diagnosed in adults too[2,14-16].

Oedema is the main clinical manifestation. The patient may present with ascites, pleural effusion and pericarditis. Other symptoms are lymphedema, abdominal pain, fatigue, moderate diarrhoea, weight loss and deficiency of fat soluble vitamins may also be present.

Oedema is of pitting type and usually symmetrical in distribution involving lower limb. Sometimes severe oedema involving face, scrotum or vagina[5].

Rarely lymphedema have been described which is elicited by "stemmer's sign" and it is difficult to differentiate from other systemic causes of oedema[2,5]. Sonographic evidence of fetal ascites had also been reported[2,5,17].

Non-specific clinical features such as fatigue, nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, weight loss, failure to thrive, moderate diarrhoea with faecal loss of fat along with increased faecal loss of protein, leading to rise in alfa-1-antitrypsin levels and there is deficiency of fat soluble vitamins[5,18].

Hypocalcemia-patients can also develop hypocalcemia and tetany due to vitamin D deficiency[2,6,19]. A case of digital clubbing in PIL was reported[20]. Osteomalacia and osteoporosis associated with PIL was reported[21].

Rare Associations-An association of PIL with celiac sprue was described[5,22]. PIL has been reported as a rare cause of lower gastrointestinal bleeding. In addition iron deficiency may occur[5,18]. Recently proved association with angiodysplasia leading to occult blood loss in PIL[5,23,24].

A case of intestinal lymphangiectasia presenting as abdominal mass was reported[2,5,25]. Recurrent haemolytic uraemic syndrome has been described in association with intestinal lymphangiectasia[2,26]. Patients with PIL are prone to develop infections due to lymphopenia and hypogammaglobulinemia[18,27].

Only two cases of disseminated cryptococcal meningitis and osteomyelitis in-patient with lymphangectasia have been reported in the literature so far[28-30]. Recently another case of cryptococcal meningitis as primary manifestation in a patient with intestinal lymphangiectasia has been reported[30]. Lymphoma may complicate the long term outcome of PIL patients[5,31].

PIL may exist as a part of a genetic syndromes, *i.e.*, Noonan, Von Recklinghausen, Hennekam and Yellow nail syndrome[2,5,14]. Finally, an association with autoimmune poly glandular disease type 1 has been described[5,32,33]. Recently a case of intestinal lymphangiectasia in a patient with infantile systemic hyalinosis syndrome has been reported[34].

DIAGNOSTIC EVALUATION

Now days, diagnosis of Intestinal lymphangiectasia is based on characteristic findings during a double-balloon enteroscopy with further confirmation by histopathological examination of corresponding biopsy specimens[6,35]. To confirm the primary nature of waldmanns disease we must first exclude the secondary causes of intestinal lymphangiectasia[6].

Capsule endoscopy

Capsule endoscopy provides complete examination of small bowel mucosa thus can evaluate the extent of lymphangiectasia[36,37]. However, the drawback of capsular endoscopy is the inability to obtain biopsies. So recently double balloon enteroscopy is evolved.

Double balloon enteroscopy

In view of the drawback of capsular endoscopy, its inability to obtain biopsies, double balloon enteroscopy was

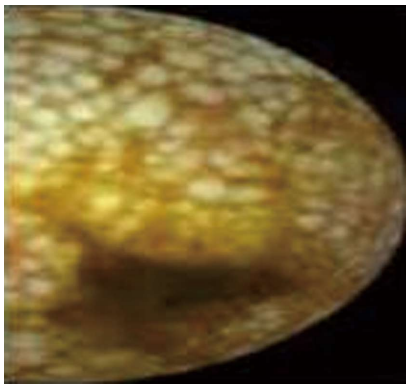


Figure 1 Snow flake appearance.

evolved which allowed obtaining biopsies from lesions detected by capsular endoscopy[35,36].

Endoscopy reveals scattered white spots, which have been described as a characteristic snowflake appearance, (Figure 1) overlying the small intestinal mucosa[4,38].

On endoscopy

Histopathological examination of biopsies shows dilated lymphatic vessels in mucosa, submucosa and serosa with polyclonal plasma cells confirming the intestinal lymphangiectasia (Figures 2).

Although various methods are available to investigate PIL, careful histopathological examination of biopsies is must to confirm the diagnosis. Various methods to investigate PIL are ^{99}Tc-HSA, 24 h stool alfa-1-antitrypsin clearance, lymphoscintigraphy, ultrasonography (USG), computed tomography (CT) scan, magnetic resonance imaging (MRI).

^{99}Technetium-labelled scintigraphy is useful to arrive at the diagnosis of PIL. Due to high cost and infectious risk, it has replaced with alfa-1-antitrypsin method[2,39].

Lymphoscintigraphy identifies abnormality in lymphatic tree but at present is not a routine method for PIL diagnosis[2,40,41].

On radiographic barium studies, thickened irregular mucosal fold with tiny nodules representing dilated lymphatic suggest the intestinal lymphangiectasia[42].

Non-invasive modalities

Imaging with USG/CT scan has shown diffuse thickening of small bowel wall because of engorgement of villi that contain the dilated lymphatic channels[5,43]. CT scan may show "halo sign". A halo sign that consist of thickened, low-attenuation inner ring representing dilated lymphatics and higher attenuation outer ring, which consist of muscularis propria and serosa[43-45]. Nonenhanced, fluid-sensitive MRI may show bright signal intensity, which corresponds to lymphangiectasia in the mucosa[42,44].

Other laboratory investigations

PIL is associated with many laboratory findings which include decreased albumin and total protein levels[2,5,45].

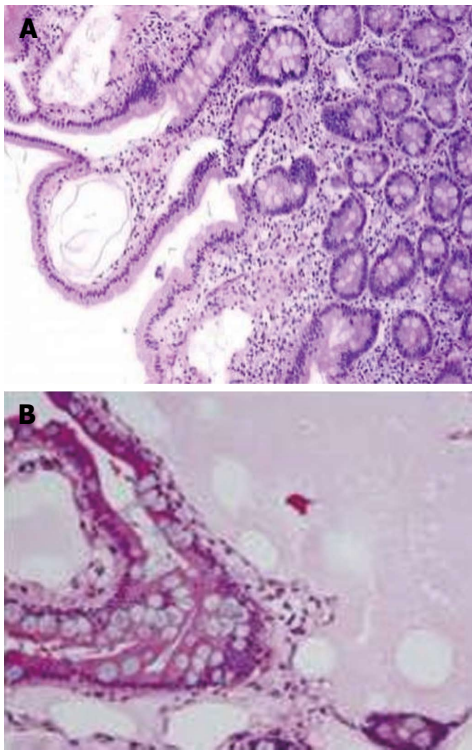


Figure 2 Histopathological examination of biopsies. A: Dilated lymphatics in mucosa and submucosa; B: 40 ×; showing dilated lymphatic channels filled with lymph.

In Addition diminished immunoglobulins IgG, IgA and IgM suggesting B cell depletion and reduced numbers of $CD4^+$ cells as naive $CD45RA^+$ lymphocytes and $CD45RO^+CD8^+$T cells reflecting T-cell depletion seen[2,5,46,47].

Finally, a recent report indicates there is failure of compensatory mechanism of production of T lymphocytes by the thymus to overcome the enteric loss of T lymphocytes leading to lymphopenia associated with lymphangiectasia[5,48].

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

The differential diagnosis of PIL is large and involves many conditions producing protein-losinggastroenteropathy. Much closer differential are those, which involve protein loss associated with impaired intestinal lymphatic drainage. Such conditions include cardiac causes like congestive cardiac failure, constrictive pericarditis and cardiomyopathy[49-52]. Surgical repair of complex congenital heart disease (such as the Fontan procedure for a functional single ventricle), other conditions like lymphenteric fistula[10,53], Whipple's disease[54], Crohn's disease[55], sarcoidosis[56], human immunodeficiency virus-related enteropathy[57], intestinal tuberculosis[58], radiation and/or chemotherapy with retroperitoneal fibrosis[59] and portal hypertension or hepatic venous outflow obstruction after liver transplantation and in congenital hepatic fibrosis due to phosphomannose isomerase deficiency[60].

TREATMENT

The principal treatment for PIL is diet rich in protein, low in fat with supplementation of medium chain triglyceride. Medium chain triglyceride is directly absorbed in portal venous circulation by passing the intestinal lymphatics, thus provides the energy and lessens lacteal engorgement and lymph loss. A low fat diet reduces lymphatic flow and pressure preventing the lacteal dilation and lymph leakage resulting from their rupture. In some, reversal of clinical and biochemical changes has been seen with this dietary modification. In most patients, dietary treatment is permanently needed. This is found to be more effective in children than adults. In some cases, total parenteral nutrition is needed. Supportive therapy includes albumin infusion and paracentesis.

In patients, not responding to such therapy other options may be used after or in combination with dietary modification. These are octreotide, antiplasmin,tranexemic acid, vitamin D supplementation and surgical resection of segmental or localised intestinal lymphangiectasia[8,11,61].

To conclude PIL is an idiopathic protein loosing enteropathy either due to genetic defect or due to lymphatic obstruction. Careful endoscopic examination and meticulous histopathological evaluation is mandatory to arrive at correct pathological diagnosis to decide the proper treatment plan. One should keep in mind this rare condition as a differential diagnosis of oedema.

REFERENCES

1 **Waldmann TA**, Steinfeld JL, Dutcher TF, Davidson JD, Gordon RS. The role of the gastrointestinal system in "idiopathic hypoproteinemia". *Gastroenterology* 1961; **41**: 197-207 [PMID: 13782654]

2 **Vignes S**, Bellanger J. Primary intestinal lymphangiectasia (Waldmann's disease). *Orphanet J Rare Dis* 2008; **3**: 5 [PMID: 18294365 DOI: 10.1186/1750-1172-3-5]

3 **Katoch P**, Bhardwaj S. Lymphangiectasia of small intestine presenting as intussusception. *Indian J Pathol Microbiol* 2008; **51**: 411-412 [PMID: 18723975]

4 **Abramowsky C**, Hupertz V, Kilbridge P, Czinn S. Intestinal lymphangiectasia in children: a study of upper gastrointestinal endoscopic biopsies. *Pediatr Pathol* 1989; **9**: 289-297 [PMID: 2748490]

5 **Freeman HJ**, Nimmo M. Intestinal lymphangiectasia in adults. *World J Gastrointest Oncol* 2011; **3**: 19-23 [PMID: 21364842]

6 **Lai Y**, Yu T, Qiao XY, Zhao LN, Chen QK. Primary intestinal lymphangiectasia diagnosed by double-balloon enteroscopy and treated by medium-chain triglycerides: a case report. *J Med Case Rep* 2013; **7**: 19 [PMID: 23316917 DOI: 10.1186/1752-1947-7-19]

7 **Lee J**, Kong MS. Primary intestinal lymphangiectasia diagnosed by endoscopy following the intake of a high-fat meal. *Eur J Pediatr* 2008; **167**: 237-239 [PMID: 17453239 DOI: 10.1007/s00431-007-0445-8]

8 **Wen J**, Tang Q, Wu J, Wang Y, Cai W. Primary intestinal lymphangiectasia: four case reports and a review of the literature. *Dig Dis Sci* 2010; **55**: 3466-3472 [PMID: 20198428 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-010-1161-1]

9 **Le Bougeant P**, Delbrel X, Grenouillet M, Leou S, Djossou F, Beylot J, Lebras M, Longy-Boursier M. Familial Waldmann's disease. *Ann Med Interne* (Paris) 2000; **151**: 511-512 [PMID: 11104932]

10 **Mistilis SP**, Skyring AP, Stephen DD. Intestinal lymphangiectasia mechanism of enteric loss of plasma-protein and fat. *Lancet* 1965; **1**: 77-79 [PMID: 14234205 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(65)91657-0]

11 **Jeffries GH**, Chapman A, Sleisenger MH. Low-fat diet in intestinal lymphangiectasia. its effect on albumin metabolism. *N Engl J Med* 1964; **270**: 761-766 [PMID: 14107315 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM196404092701503]

12 **Toskes P**. Gastrointestinal diseases: malabsorption. In Cecil Textbook of Medicine. 18th edition. Wyngaarden J, Smith L (eds). Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 1988: 732-745

13 **Hokari R**, Kitagawa N, Watanabe C, Komoto S, Kurihara C, Okada Y, Kawaguchi A, Nagao S, Hibi T, Miura S. Changes in regulatory molecules forlymphangiogenesis in intestinal lymphangiectasia with enteric protein loss. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2008; **23**: e88-95 [PMID: 18005011]

14 **Al Sinani S**, Rawahi YA, Abdoon H. Octreotide in Hennekam syndrome-associated intestinal lymphangiectasia. *World J Gastroenterol* 2012; **18**: 6333-6337 [PMID: 23180957 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v18.i43.6333]

15 **Boursier V**, Vignes S. [Limb lymphedema as a first manifestation of primary intestinal lymphangiectasia (Waldmann's disease)]. *J Mal Vasc* 2004; **29**: 103-106 [PMID: 15229406 DOI: 10.1016/S0398-0499(04)96858-8]

16 **Tift WL**, Lloyd JK. Intestinal lymphangiectasia. Long-term results with MCT diet. *Arch Dis Child* 1975; **50**: 269-276 [PMID: 50050 DOI: 10.1136/adc.50.4.269]

17 **Schmider A**, Henrich W, Reles A, Vogel M, Dudenhausen JW. Isolated fetal ascites caused by primary lymphangiectasia: a case report. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2001; **184**: 227-228 [PMID: 11174507 DOI: 10.1067/mob.2001.106756]

18 **Xinias I**, Mavroudi A, Sapountzi E, Thomaidou A, Fotoulaki M, Kalambakas A, Karypidou E, Kollios K, Pardalos G, Imvrios G. Primary intestinal lymphangiectasia: is it always bad? Two cases with different outcome. *Case Rep Gastroenterol* 2013; **7**: 153-163 [PMID: 23626516 DOI: 10.1159/000348763]

19 **Lu YY**, Wu JF, Ni YH, Peng SS, Shun CT, Chang MH. Hypocalcemia and tetany caused by vitamin D deficiency in a child with intestinal lymphangiectasia. *J Formos Med Assoc* 2009; **108**: 814-818 [PMID: 19864203]

20 **Wiedermann CJ**, Kob M, Benvenuti S, Carella R, Lucchin L, Piazzi L, Chilovi F, Mazzoleni G. Digital clubbing in primary intestinal lymphangiectasia: a case report. *Wien Med Wochenschr* 2010; **160**: 431-436 [PMID: 20812055 DOI: 10.1007/s10354-010-0815-0]

21 **Li XP**, Shen WB, Long MQ, Meng XW, Lian XL, Yu M. Osteomalacia and osteoporosis associated with primary intestinal lymphangiectasis. *Chin Med J* (Engl) 2012; **125**: 1836-1838 [PMID: 22800909]

22 **Perisic VN**, Kokai G. Coeliac disease and lymphangiectasia. *Arch Dis Child* 1992; **67**: 134-136 [PMID: 1739329]

23 **Maamer AB**, Baazaoui J, Zaafouri H, Soualah W, Cherif A. Primary intestinal lymphangiectasia or Waldmann's disease: a rare cause of lower gastrointestinal bleeding. *Arab J Gastroenterol* 2012; **13**: 97-98 [PMID: 22980601 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajg.2012.03.001]

24 **Macdonald J**, Porter V, Scott NW, McNamara D. Small bowel lymphangiectasia and angiodysplasia: a positive association; novel clinical marker or shared pathophysiology? *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2010; **44**: 610-614 [PMID: 20535025]

25 **Rao R**, Shashidhar H. Intestinal lymphangiectasia presenting as abdominal mass. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2007; **65**: 522-523, discussion 523 [PMID: 17321261]

26 **Kalman S**, Bakkaloğlu S, Dalgiç B, Ozkaya O, Söylemezoğlu O, Buyan N. Recurrent hemolytic uremic syndrome associated with intestinal lymphangiectasia. *J Nephrol* 2007; **20**: 246-249 [PMID: 17514630]

27 **Dierselhuis MP**, Boelens JJ, Versteegh FG, Weemaes C,

Wulffraat NM. Recurrent and opportunistic infections in children with primary intestinal lymphangiectasia. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2007; **44**: 382-385 [PMID: 17325562]
28 **Cole SL**, Ledford DK, Lockey RF, Dass A, Kooper J. Primary gastrointestinal lymphangiectasia presenting as cryptococcal meningitis. *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol* 2007; **98**: 490-492 [DOI: 10.1016/S1081-1206(10)60765-X]
29 **Oehler RL**, Maldonado A, Mastorides SM, Reed JL. Cryptococcalosteomyelitis complicating intestinal lymphangiectasia. *Infect Dis ClinPract* 2007; **15**: 125-128
30 **Jabeen SA**, Murthy A, Kandadai RM, Meena AK, Borgohain R, Uppin MS. Cryptoccocal menigitis as a primary manifestation in a patient with intestinal lymphangictasia. *Ann Indian Acad Neurol* 2012; **15**: 218-220 [PMID: 22919199 DOI: 10.4103/0972-2327.99725]
31 **Bouhnik Y**, Etienney I, Nemeth J, Thevenot T, Lavergne-Slove A, Matuchansky C. Very late onset small intestinal B cell lymphoma associated with primary intestinal lymphangiectasia and diffuse cutaneous warts. *Gut* 2000; **47**: 296-300 [PMID: 10896925]
32 **Bereket A**, Lowenheim M, Blethen SL, Kane P, Wilson TA. Intestinal lymphangiectasia in a patient with autoimmune polyglandular disease type I and steatorrhea. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 1995; **80**: 933-935 [PMID: 7883852]
33 **Makharia GK**, Tandon N, Stephen Nde J, Gupta SD, Tandon RK. Primary intestinal lymphangiectasia as a component of autoimmune polyglandular syndrome type I: a report of 2 cases. *Indian J Gastroenterol* 2007; **26**: 293-295 [PMID: 18431016]
34 **Alreheili K**, AlMehaidib A, Alsaleem K, Banemi M, Aldekhail W, Al-Mayouf SM. Intestinal lymphangiectasia in a patient with infantile systemic hyalinosis syndrome: a rare cause of protein-losing enteropathy. *Ann Saudi Med* 2012; **32**: 206-208 [PMID: 22366835]
35 **Oh TG**, Chung JW, Kim HM, Han SJ, Lee JS, Park JY, Song SY. Primary intestinal lymphangiectasia diagnosed by capsule endoscopy and double balloon enteroscopy. *World J Gastrointest Endosc* 2011; **3**: 235-240 [PMID: 22110841]
36 **Gay G**, Delvaux M, Frederic M. Capsule endoscopy in nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs-enteropathy and miscellaneous, rare intestinal diseases. *World J Gastroenterol* 2008; **14**: 5237-5244 [PMID: 18785273]
37 **Chamouard P**, Nehme-Schuster H, Simler JM, Finck G, Baumann R, Pasquali JL. Videocapsule endoscopy is useful for the diagnosis of intestinal lymphangiectasia. *Dig Liver Dis* 2006; **38**: 699-703 [PMID: 16527553]
38 **Asakura H**, Miura S, Morishita T, Aiso S, Tanaka T, Kitahora T, Tsuchiya M, Enomoto Y, Watanabe Y. Endoscopic and histopathological study on primary and secondary intestinal lymphangiectasia. *Dig Dis Sci* 1981; **26**: 312-320 [PMID: 7238258 DOI: 10.1007/BF01308371]
39 **Chiu NT**, Lee BF, Hwang SJ, Chang JM, Liu GC, Yu HS. Protein-losingenteropathy: diagnosis with 99mTc-labeled humanserum albumin scintigraphy. *Radiology* 2001; **219**: 86-90
40 **So Y**, Chung JK, Seo JK, Ko JS, Kim JY, Lee DS, Lee MC. Different patterns of lymphoscintigraphic findings in patients with intestinal lymphangiectasia. *Nucl Med Commun* 2001; **22**: 1249-1254 [PMID: 11606892 DOI: 10.1097/00006231-200111000-00013]
41 **Burnand KG**, McGuinness CL, Lagattolla NR, Browse NL, El-Aradi A, Nunan T. Value of isotope lymphography in the diagnosis of lymphoedema of the leg. *Br J Surg* 2002; **89**: 74-78 [PMID: 11851667 DOI: 10.1046/j.0007-1323.2001.01964.x]
42 **Steines JC**, Larson JH, Wilkinson N, Kirby P, Goodheart MJ. Intestinal lymphangiectasia mimicking primary peritoneal carcinoma. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2010; **203**: e9-e11 [PMID: 20801422]
43 **Yang DM**, Jung DH. Localized intestinal lymphangiectasia: CT findings. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2003; **180**: 213-214 [PMID: 12490507]
44 **Holzknecht N**, Helmberger T, Beuers U, Rust C, Wiebecke B, Reiser M. Cross-sectional imaging findings in congenital intestinal lymphangiectasia. *J Comput Assist Tomogr* 2002; **26**: 526-528 [PMID: 12218814 DOI: 10.1097/00004728-200207000-00009]
45 **Strober W**, Wochner RD, Carbone PP, Waldmann TA. Intestinal lymphangiectasia: a protein-losing enteropathy with hypogammaglobulinemia, lymphocytopenia and impaired homograft rejection. *J Clin Invest* 1967; **46**: 1643-1656 [PMID: 4168730 DOI: 10.1172/JCI105656]
46 **Heresbach D**, Raoul JL, Genetet N, Noret P, Siproudhis L, Ramée MP, Bretagne JF, Gosselin M. Immunological study in primary intestinal lymphangiectasia. *Digestion* 1994; **55**: 59-64 [PMID: 7509299 DOI: 10.1159/000201124]
47 **Fuss IJ**, Strober W, Cuccherini BA, Pearlstein GR, Bossuyt X, Brown M, Fleisher TA, Horgan K. Intestinal lymphangiectasia, a disease characterized by selective loss of naive CD45RA+ lymphocytes into the gastrointestinal tract. *Eur J Immunol* 1998; **28**: 4275-4285 [PMID: 9862365]
48 **Vignes S**, Carcelain G. Increased surface receptor Fas (CD95) levels on CD4+ lymphocytes in patients with primary intestinal lymphangiectasia. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2009; **44**: 252-256 [PMID: 18855225 DOI: 10.1080/00365520802321220]
49 **Davidson JD**, Waldmann TA, Goodman DS, Gordon RS. Protein-losing gastroenteropathy in congestive heart-failure. *Lancet* 1961; **1**: 899-902 [PMID: 13720056 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(61)91768-8]
50 **Valberg LS**, Corbett WE, McCorriston JR, Parker JO. Excessive loss of plasma protein into the gastrointestinal tract associated with primary myocardial disease. *Am J Med* 1965; **39**: 668-673 [PMID: 5831904 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9343(65)90088-4]
51 **Müller C**, Globits S, Glogar D, Klepetko W, Knoflach P. Constrictive pericarditis without typical haemodynamic changes as a cause of oedema formation due to protein-losing enteropathy. *Eur Heart J* 1991; **12**: 1140-1143 [PMID: 1782939]
52 **Wilkinson P**, Pinto B, Senior JR. Reversible protein-losing enteropathy with intestinal lymphangiectasia secondary to chronic constrictive pericarditis. *N Engl J Med* 1965; **273**: 1178-1181 [PMID: 5847556 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM196511252732202]
53 **Feldt RH**, Driscoll DJ, Offord KP, Cha RH, Perrault J, Schaff HV, Puga FJ, Danielson GK. Protein-losing enteropathy after the Fontan operation. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 1996; **112**: 672-680 [PMID: 8800155]
54 **Laster L**, Waldmann TA, Fenster LF, Singleton JW. Albumin metabolism in patients with Whipple's disease. *J Clin Invest* 1966; **45**: 637-644 [PMID: 4160668 DOI: 10.1172/JCI105379]
55 **Steinfeld JL**, Davidson JD, Gordon RS, Greene FE. The mechanism of hypoproteinemia in patients with regional enteritis and ulcerative colitis. *Am J Med* 1960; **29**: 405-415 [PMID: 13834226 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9343(60)90036-X]
56 **Popović OS**, Brkić S, Bojić P, Kenić V, Jojić N, Djurić V, Djordjević N. Sarcoidosis and protein losing enteropathy. *Gastroenterology* 1980; **78**: 119-125 [PMID: 7350018]
57 **Stockmann M**, Fromm M, Schmitz H, Schmidt W, Riecken EO, Schulzke JD. Duodenal biopsies of HIV-infected patients with diarrhoea exhibit epithelial barrier defects but no active secretion. *AIDS* 1998; **12**: 43-51 [PMID: 9456254 DOI: 10.1097/00002030-199801000-00006]
58 **Ploddi A**, Atisook K, Hargrove NS. Intestinal lymphangiectasia in intraabdominal tuberculosis. *J Med Assoc Thai* 1988; **71**: 518-523 [PMID: 3249186]
59 **Rao SS**, Dundas S, Holdsworth CD. Intestinal lymphangiectasia secondary to radiotherapy and chemotherapy. *Dig Dis Sci* 1987; **32**: 939-942 [PMID: 3608736 DOI: 10.1007/BF01296718]
60 **de Koning TJ**, Dorland L, van Berge Henegouwen GP. Phosphomannoseisomerase deficiency as a cause of congenital hepatic fibrosis and protein-losing enteropathy. *J Hepatol*

1999; **31**: 557 [DOI: 10.1016/S0168-8278(99)80052-X]
61 **Aoyagi K**, Iida M, Matsumoto T, Sakisaka S. Enteral nutrition as a primary therapy for intestinal lymphangiectasia: value of elemental diet and polymeric diet compared with total parenteral nutrition. *Dig Dis Sci* 2005; **50**: 1467-1470 [PMID: 16110837 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-005-2863-7]

P- Reviewer: Kai K, Mubarak M **S- Editor**: Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Clinical Cases

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.12998/wjcc.v2.i10.534

World J Clin Cases 2014 October 16; 2(10): 534-540
ISSN 2307-8960 (online)

CASE CONTROL STUDY

Comparison of semilunar coronally repositioned flap with gingival massaging using an Ayurvedic product (irimedadi taila) in the treatment of class- I gingival recession: A clinical study

Amit Kumar Mishra, Kanteshwari Kumathalli, Raja Sridhar, Rahul Maru, Brijesh Mangal, Sameer Kedia, Ravi Shrihatti

Amit Kumar Mishra, ESIC Hospital, Nanda Nagar, Indore (M.P), 125-A, Sai Bagh Colony, Indore, Madhya Pradesh 452001, India
Kanteshwari Kumathalli, Sri Aurobindo College of Dentistry, Village, Bhawrasala, Indore, Madhya Pradesh 453112, India
Raja Sridhar, Brijesh Mangal, Sameer Kedia, Modern Dental College and Research Centre, Gandhinagar, Indore, Madhya Pradesh 453112, India
Rahul Maru, Index Dental College, Indore (M.P) 452001, India
Ravi Shrihatti, Dr. D Y Patil Dental College and Hospital, Pune, Maharashtra 411018, India
Author contributions: Mishra AK contributed substantially to conception and design, acquisition of data, analysis and interpretation of data: study design, surgical treatment follow up and data collection; Kumathalli K guided throughout the study and final approval of the version to be published; Sridhar R contributed to first draft of the article and revision as suggested by reviewers; Maru R contributed to the drafting, corrections, second revision for important intellectual content; Mangal B and Kedia S contributed to the drafting the article, revising it critically for important intellectual content, corrections and third revision; Shrihatti R contributed substantially to the statistical analysis of the study.
Correspondence to: Dr. Brijesh Mangal, Modern Dental College and Research Centre, LG-21, 3-Urvashi Complex, Jaora Compound, Gandhinagar, Indore, Madhya Pradesh 453112, India. brijeshmangal2000@gmail.com
Telephone: +91-0731-4215248 Fax: +91-0731-4231010
Received: April 21, 2014 Revised: June 20, 2014
Accepted: August 27, 2014
Published online: October 16, 2014

Abstract

AIM: To study the comparison in terms of root coverage the effect of gingival massaging using an ayurvedic product and semilunar coronally repositioned flap (SCRF) to assess the treatment outcomes in the management of Miller's class I gingival recessions over a-6 mo period.

METHODS: The present study comprised of total of 90 sites of Miller's class- I gingival recessions in the maxillary anteriors, the sites were divided into three groups each comprising 30 sites, Group I -were treated by massaging using a Placebo (Ghee) Group II-were treated by massaging using an ayurvedic product (irimedadi taila). Group III-were treated by SCRF. Clinical parameters assessed included recession height, recession width, probing pocket depth, width of attached gingiva, clinical attachment level and thickness of keratinized tissue. Clinical recordings were performed at baseline and 6 mo later. The results were analyzed to determine improvements in the clinical parameters. The comparison was done using Wilcoxon signed rank test. The overall differences in the clinical improvements between the three groups was done using Kruskal-Wallis test. The probability value (*P*-value) of less than 0.01 was considered as statistically significant.

RESULTS: Non-surgical periodontal therapy and gingival massaging improves facial gingival recessions and prevents further progression of mucogingival defects. Root coverage was achieved in both the experimental groups. The SCRF group proved to be superior in terms of all the clinical parameters.

CONCLUSION: Root coverage is significantly better with semilunar coronally repositioned flap compared with the gingival massaging technique in the treatment of shallow maxillary Miller class I gingival recession defects.

Key words: Gingival recession; Semilunar flaps; Gingi-

val massaging; Non-surgical

Core tip: Gingival recession is the migration of the gingival margin apical to the cemento-enamel junction. A variety of surgical procedures have been described for the correction and management of mucogngival deformities and defects, with a variable degree of success. However, it should be emphasized that shallow recessions are subject to progression, but there are no case reports or controlled clinical trials to compare the effects of gingival massaging in the treatment of gingival recessions. The aim of our study was to compare in terms of root coverage the effect of gingival massaging using an ayurvedic product and semilunar coronally repositioned flap to assess the treatment outcomes in the management of Miller's class I gingival recessions over a 6 mo period.

Mishra AK, Kumathalli K, Sridhar R, Maru R, Mangal B, Kedia S, Shrihatti R. Comparison of semilunar coronally repositioned flap with gingival massaging using an Ayurvedic product (irimedadi taila) in the treatment of class- I gingival recession: A clinical study. *World J Clin Cases* 2014; 2(10): 534-540 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2307-8960/full/v2/i10/534.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.12998/wjcc.v2.i10.534

INTRODUCTION

Gingival recession is defined as the migration of the marginal tissue apical to the cemento-enamel junction (CEJ). Its occurrence is common and its prevalence increases with age. The recession of the gingiva resultant of attachment loss and root exposure may be associated with one or more tooth surfaces and lead to clinical problems such as dentinal hypersensitivity, root caries, cervical root abrasions and diminished cosmetic appeal[1,2].

Miller[3] (1985) in his classification of recession has described class I recession as marginal tissue recession that does not extend up to the mucogingival junction and not accompanied by any loss of bone or soft tissue in the interdental area. Very often, it is the most coronal millimeter of recession which is visible when the patient smiles. Thus even a marginal gingival recession, can account for major aesthetic problems and persistent dentinal hypersensitivity[4]. In order to combat these clinical problems, various treatment modalities have been proposed that have in due course evolved based on the knowledge of healing of the gingiva and the attachment system.

Aimetti *et al*[5] (2005) proposed non-surgical therapy *viz* periodic scaling and polishing for the treatment of shallow gingival recession. It was hypothesized that reduction of root convexity and elimination of microbial toxins from the root surface by scaling and root planing promotes creeping attachment of gingival margin. Tarnow[6] (1986) introduced the semilunar coronally repositioned flap (SCRF) procedure as one of the surgical approaches to treat Class I gingival recessions. It entails coronal advancement of a semilunar flap without any tension or disturbance to the subjacent tissues. The flap is stabilized in the desirable position under gravity, hence a sutureless technique.

Gingival massaging an age old practice is said to increase capillary gingival microcirculation, thereby increasing oxygen sufficiency, gingival fibroblastic proliferation, keratinization of oral and sulcuar epithelium, and formation of dense bundles of collagenous connective tissue all of which are attributable to creeping attachment[5,7]. Gingival massaging is carried out using various agents that aid lubrication as well as medication of the tissues. IrimedadiTaila an ayurvedicproductis said to have been used for centuries by many communities in the Middle East and North Africa as a massaging agent[8]. It consists mainly of Acacia arabica a complex mixture of the calcium, magnesium and potassium salts of Arabic acid. Its antiplaque properties are said to create right conditions for gingiva to recapture its biologic dimensions[5,8].

However no much of information is available upon an electronic or manual search concerning the effects of gingival massaging in the treatment of gingival recessions. There is a dearth of information as to by what exact mechanisms the non-surgical approaches help root coverage and to what extent if at all. Given that many patients are skeptical about surgical treatment, scaling/root planing followed by gingival massaging with an agent could be a better option provided their benefits are proved. This study is one such attempt to evaluate the effect of gingival massaging using an ayurvedic product in comparison with SCRF to assess the treatment outcomes in the management of Miller's class I gingival recessions. Hence the aim of the present study was to assess the efficacy of SCRF and gingival massaging (by placebo and IrimedadiTaila) in terms of root coverage in Miller's Class I recession, with respect to clinical parameters [Recession height (RH), recession width (RW), probing depth (PD), clinical attachment level (CAL), thickness of keratinized tissue (TKT) and width of attached gingiva]. Further, intergroup which comparisons of treatment outcomes to assess advantages or disadvantages of one technique over the other was also assessed.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

A total of 90 sites of Miller's class- I gingival recessions on labial aspects of maxillary anteriors, were selected from the patients reporting to the out-patient department of Periodontics, Modern Dental College and Research Centre, Indore. Teeth associated with inadequate width of attached gingiva, caries/restorations were excluded. Pregnant females and individuals afflicted by systemic disease, tobacco/alcohol abuse, parafunctional habits were excluded from the study. Individuals who were already on the regimen of gingival massage or had undergone mucogingival surgery were dropped out of the study.

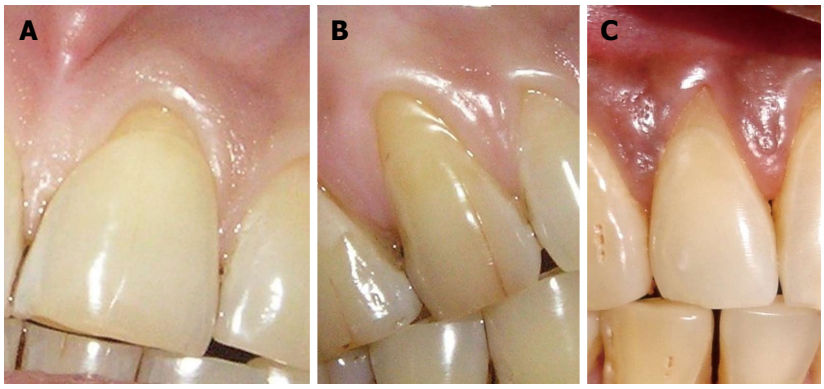


Figure 1 Miller's class- I gingival recession. A: Miller's class- I gingival recession with 11; B: Miller's class- I gingival recession with 13; C: Miller's class- I gingival recession with 12.

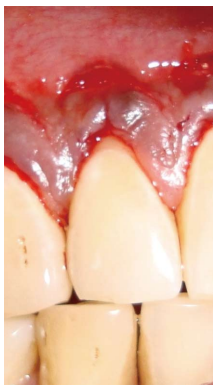


Figure 2 Coronally repositioned flap with 12.

The study protocol was approved by the ethical committee of Modern Dental College and Research Centre, Indore and study sites were randomly allocated to three different study groups after obtaining an informed consent. Group I (control group) comprised of 30 sites that were treated by massaging with placebo (clarified butter). Group Ⅱ (test group) included 30 sites that were treated by massaging with an ayurvdicoil (IrimedadiTaila). Group Ⅲ (test group) included 30 sites to be treated by SCRF[6].

Clinical evaluation

The sites were subjected to clinical assessments as follows: RH was measured as the distance from the CEJ to the gingival margin (GM), calculated in millimeters. RW was recorded as horizontal width of CEJ. Probing pocket depth was measured as the distance from the GM to the bottom of the gingival sulcus. CAL was calculated as recession height and probing depth (RH + PD). Width of attached gingiva was recorded as the distance between the free gingival groove and the MGJ. All the readings were recorded using a manual pressure-sensitive periodontal probe DB 764 R, (Aesculap, Tuttlingen, Germany) calibrated at a force of 0.2 N. Readings for TKT was obtained by penetrating the tissue with a 15 number endodontic spreader under lidocaine 15 gm spray and subsequently the penetration depth was measured with an electronic caliper of 0.01 mm resolution. The gingival thickness was assessed at midbuccal level in the attached gingiva, half way between the mucogingival junction and free gingival groove[9]. These readings were recorded preoperatively as well as 6 mo post-operatively and then subjected to statistical analysis.

Clinical procedures

After a detailed examination and diagnosis, scrupulous oral prophylaxis was accomplished to ensure that local etiological factors are eliminated; followed by oral care instructions and patient motivation towards compliance. Patients belonging to group I (Figure 1A) and group Ⅱ (Figure 1B) were trained to master the technique of gingival massaging with either of the agents as the case may be. The technique involved massaging their gums with finger three times daily for two minutes in the concerned area and then rinse away with water. Patients were instructed to comply with gingival massaging for the span of 6 mo, after which to report back for post-operative evaluation. Sites belonging to group Ⅲ (Figure 1C) were treated surgically by semilunar coronally repositioned flap (Figure 2) as recommended by Tarnow[6], followed by suitable postoperative surgical care and oral care instructions. The patients were recalled at 1, 3 and 6 mo post operatively. One and 3 mo postoperative recall visits were utilized for reinforcement of oral care regimen and massaging techniques, wherein, readings at 6 mo postoperative follow up only were utilized for statistical analysis.

Statistical analysis

Shapiro-Wilk test was applied to test for the Normalcy of the data. The parameters significantly differed from normal distribution, and therefore, all the comparisons were tabulated using Non-Parametric tests, *i.e.*, wilcoxon signed rank test, Kruskal Wallis and Mann Whitney *U* test. All comparisons were done using SPSS Statistical Software Package Version 10.0 and probability value (*P*-value) of less than 0.01 was considered as statistically significant.

RESULTS

Gingival massaging with placebo (Ghee) (Figure 3A)

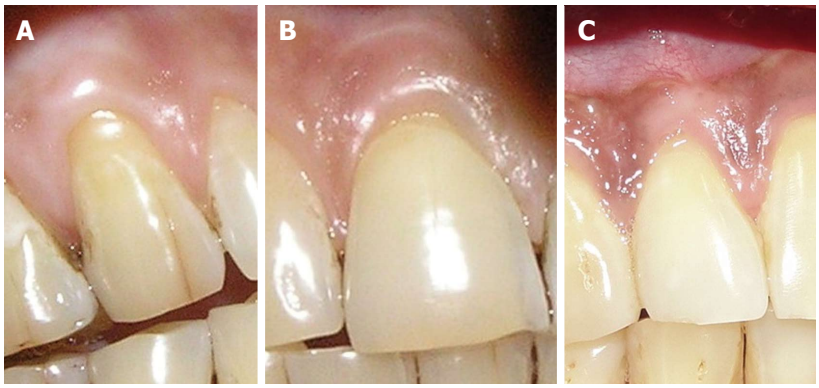


Figure 3 Six months post-operative view. A: Six months post-operative view of 12; B: Six months post-operative view of 11; C: Six months post-operative view of 13.

Table 1 Evaluation of clinical parameters from pre-operative to 6 mo post-operative period for group Ⅰ-gingival massaging using a placebo (Clarified butter) (n = 30)

Clinical parameters	Baseline (mean ± SD)	6 mo (mean ± SD)	*P*-value (significance)
Recession height	1.7 ± 0.65	1.5 ± 0.51	0.034
Recession width	3.8 ± 0.66	3.57 ± 0.63	0.100
Probing pocket depth	1.9 ± 0.40	1.5 ± 0.51	0.001[b] (S)
Clinical attachment level	3.5 ± 0.82	3 ± 0.87	0.002[b] (S)
Thickness of keratinized tissue	0.84 ± 0.18	0.97 ± 0.21	< 0.001[b] (S)
Width of attached gingiva	2.53 ± 0.57	2.8 ± 0.55	0.011

[b]P < 0.01, clinical parameters from pre-operative *vs* 6 mo post-operative period. S: Significant.

Table 2 Evaluation of clinical parameters from pre-operative to 6 mo post-operative period for group-Ⅱ gingival massaging using an ayurvedic oil (iremedadi taila) (n = 30)

Clinical parameters	Baseline (mean ± SD)	6 mo (mean ± SD)	*P*-value (significance)
Recession height	1.77 ± 0.63	1.27 ± 0.58	0.003[b] (S)
Recession width	3.3 ± 0.46	2.23 ± 0.43	< 0.001[b] (S)
Probing pocket depth	1.47 ± 0.50	1.63 ± 0.49	0.096 (NS)
Clinical attachment level	3.23 ± 0.82	2.9 ± 0.76	0.064 (NS)
Thickness of keratinized tissue	0.85 ± 0.17	1.07 ± 0.19	< 0.001[b] (S)
Width of attached gingiva	2.37 ± 0.56	2.9 ± 0.66	0.001[b] (S)

[b]P < 0.01, clinical parameters from pre-operative *vs* 6 mo post-operative period. S: Significant; NS: Non significant.

Table 3 Evaluation of clinical parameters from pre-operative to 6 mo post-operative period for Group-Ⅲ semilunar coronally repositioned flap (n = 30)

Clinical parameters	Baseline (mean ± SD)	6 mo (mean ± SD)	*P*-value (significance)
Recession height	2.33 ± 0.55	0.57 ± 0.50	< 0.001[b] (S)
Recession width	3.33 ± 0.76	1.1 ± 0.66	< 0.001[b] (S)
Probing pocket depth	1.57 ± 0.50	1.33 ± 0.48	0.071
Clinical attachment level	3.87 ± 0.73	1.9 ± 0.66	< 0.001[b] (S)
Thickness of keratinized tissue	0.97 ± 0.19	1.38 ± 0.23	< 0.001[b] (S)
Width of attached gingiva	2.63 ± 0.71	3.37 ± 0.56	0.001 (S)

[b]P < 0.01, clinical parameters from pre-operative *vs* 6 mo post-operative period. S: Significant.

resulted in a statistically significant reduction in probing pocket depth (P = 0.001), gain in clinical attachment level (P = 0.002) and increase in thickness of keratinized tissue (P < 0.001). The clinical improvements with respect to recession height, recession width and width of attached gingiva were statistically nonsignificant (Table 1). Gingival massaging using an ayurvedic product (IrimedadiTaila) (Figure 3B), on the contrary resulted in to statistically significant reductions in recession height and recession width (P < 0.003 and P < 0.001 respectively); also a significant gain in thickness of keratinized tissue and width of attached gingiva (P < 0.001) and (P = 0.001) respectively. But reductions in probing pocket depth and clinical attachment level were statistically nonsignificant (Table 2). Sites treated by semilunar coronally repositioned flap (Figure 3C) exhibited highly significant improvements with respect to all the clinical parameters except probing pocket depth (Table 3).

Intergroup comparisons (Table 4) *via* Kruskal Wallis test aided in the determination of advantages of one technique over the other. Sites treated by SCRF exhibited highly significant improvements with respect to recession height (P < 0.001), recession width (P < 0.001), CAL (P < 0.001), thickness of keratinized tissue (P < 0.004) as compared to those treated by gingival massaging with the ayurvedic substance. However no significant difference was observed in relation to probing pocket depth between the groups (Table 5). Sites treated by SCRF had similar advantages when compared with sites treated by gingival massaging using a placebo (Table 6).

When compared between gingival massaging with an ayurvedic substance and placebo, former showed remarkable improvements only with respect to recession width (P < 0.001), probing pocket depth (P < 0.001) and thickness of keratinized tissue (P < 0.001). However there was no significant difference with respect to CAL, recession height and width of keratinized gingiva (Table 7).

DISCUSSION

Gingival recession is a common condition whose extent and prevalence has been noted to increase with age. It

Table 4 Comparison of clinical parameters from pre-operative to 6 mo post-operative period between the three groups using Kruskal Wallis test[1]

Clinical parameter	Group Ⅰ	Group Ⅱ	Group Ⅲ	χ^2	*P*-value (significance)
Recession height	0.2 ± 0.48	0.5 ± 0.78	1.77 ± 0.73	47.56	< 0.001[b] (S)
Recession width	0.23 ± 0.77	1.07 ± 0.58	2.23 ± 0.82	51.28	< 0.001[b] (S)
Probing pocket depth	0.4 ± 0.49	-0.17 ± 0.53	0.23 ± 0.68	13.29	< 0.001[b] (S)
Clinical attachment level	0.5 ± 0.73	0.33 ± 0.96	1.97 ± 0.81	42.01	< 0.001[b] (S)
Thickness of keratinized tissue	-0.13 ± 0.12	-0.23 ± 0.15	-0.41 ± 0.27	22.86	< 0.001[b] (S)
Width of attached gingiva	-0.27 ± 0.52	- 0.53 ± 0.68	-0.73 ± 0.98	7.03	0.03 (NS)

[1]Degree of freedom: 2. [b]*P* < 0.01, clinical parameters from pre-operative *vs* 6 mo post-operative period. S: Significant; NS: Non significant.

Table 5 Comparison of clinical parameters between group 3 *vs* group 2 using Mann-Whitney *U* test

Clinical parameter	*Z* value	*P* value (significance)
Recession height	-5.064	< 0.001[b] (S)
Recession width	-4.996	< 0.001[b] (S)
Probing pocket depth	-2.455	0.014
Clinical attachment level	-5.390	< 0.001[b] (S)
Thickness of keratinized tissue	-2.841	0.004 (S)
Width of attached gingiva		

[b]*P* < 0.01, clinical parameters of group 3 *vs* group 2. S: Significant.

Table 6 Comparison of clinical parameters between group 3 *vs* group 1 using Mann-Whitney *U* test

Clinical parameter	*Z* value	*P* value (significance)
Recession height	-6.366	< 0.001[b] (S)
Recession width	-6.141	< 0.001[b] (S)
Probing pocket depth	-0.855	0.392
Clinical attachment level	-5.682	< 0.001[b] (S)
Thickness of keratinized tissue	-4.441	< 0.001[b] (S)
Width of attached gingiva		

[b]*P* < 0.01, clinical parameters of group 3 *vs* group 1. S: Significant.

Table 7 Comparison of clinical parameters between group 2 *vs* group 1 using Mann-Whitney *U* test

Clinical parameter	*Z* value	*P* value (significance)
Recession height	-1.772	0.076
Recession Width	-4.330	< 0.001[b] (S)
Probing pocket depth	-3.734	< 0.001[b] (S)
Clinical attachment level	-1.494	0.135
Thickness of keratinized tissue	-2.579	0.01[b] (S)
Width of attached gingiva		

[b]*P* < 0.01, clinical parameters of group 2 *vs* group 1. S: Significant.

has been estimated that 50% of the population has one or more sites with 1mm or more of such root exposure. This prevalence rate increases to 88% for individuals above 65 years of age[10].

Given the high prevalence rate of gingival recession defects among the general population, it is imperative that dental practitioners have an understanding of the etiology, complications and treatment options of the condition. Even in this era, when sophisticated techniques and materials are available, non-invasive approaches to treatment of recessions remain in practice with paramount importance. This study was carried out to assess the viability of surgical and non-surgical techniques for management of gingival recessions.

Numerous studies reported the efficacy and predictability of proposed surgical techniques. Several factors govern the selection of a surgical technique to treat recessed teeth such as the anatomy of the defect site, such as the size of the recession, width of keratinized tissue adjacent to the defect, dimensions of the interdental soft tissue, and the depth of the vestibule or the presence of frenula and evidence based predictability of various procedures[11-13]. The SCRF surgical procedure is easy to perform and highly reproducible in shallow recession defects (class I) when gingival augmentation is not needed. Case reports[2,14,15] have shown a high success rate for this procedure.

Gingival massaging, an age old traditional oral hygiene practice which has been used for centuries by many communities have two quite separate effects on gingival keratinization. One, the direct effect of frictional stimulation leading to an increased mitotic rate and greater thickness of both the malpighian region and the stratum corneum of the gingival epithelium and the other, an indirect effect of the more efficient removal of dental plaque which leads to a reduction in inflammation, allows the gingival epithelium to express more fully its keratinizing potential[16]. The other effects of gingival massaging is said to increase capillary gingival microcirculation[17,18] thereby increasing oxygen sufficiency[19], gingival fibroblastic proliferation[7], and formation of dense bundles of collagenous connective tissue[20]. However, only one case is available in the literature[21] showing successful root coverage at multiple sites resulting from gingival massage. To our knowledge, there have been no long term controlled studies to provide outcome assessment data with regard to predictability and percentage of recession coverage by gingival massaging using ayurvedicoil. Hence this study was undertaken to compare benefits of gingival massaging using ayurvedic oil with those of SCRF technique in the treatment of class I recession.

This study witnessed that, although SCRF technique proved to be far superior, the clinical outcomes of gingival massaging by an ayurvedic oil (IrimedadiTaila) were

almost close to it (Tables 1, 2 and 3). Both the procedures produced statistically significant improvement with relation to recession height, recession width, thickness of keratinized tissue and width of attached gingiva, implying that both the methods are equivalent in root coverage and increasing width and thickness of attached gingiva. The significant root coverage achieved with of SCRF technique in the present study is almost in accordance with numerous other studies with only slight differences[12,22-26]. Some of those studies with higher success in root coverage have notably used additional methods of flap fixation such as sutures/adhesives or microsurgical techniques that may have enhanced clinical outcomes. Thus the differences in surgical protocols and measurement methods adapted in the study could be held responsible for variations in the results. The significant increase in width of attached gingiva with SCRF technique could be attributed to the granulation tissue that fills the semilunar area. Other studies too have presented similar observation although with slight variations[24,25,27-29]. This variability could be attributed to the bias in the methods used to identify the mucogingival position, surgical approach and improper case selection. The significant increase in the thickness of keratinized tissue in our study goes well in accordance with Bittencourt *et al*[26]. Increase in the thickness of gingival tissue is desirable since it can resist gingival recession resulting from faulty tooth brushing and inflammatory reactions[29,30]. But some authors have questioned the ability of thick gingival tissue in the prevention of recession. Based on a 2 year prospective clinical study authors recommend the practice of correct brushing technique to prevent recession instead of relying on the ability of thickness of gingiva[31]. Only long term follow up studies can determine the sound basis for this association. SCRF technique also leads to significant gain in CAL in the study sample. Similar observations have been reported by other studies too[24,26,32]. The probing depth reductions were non-significant.

In this study, an attempt was made to elucidate the role of creeping attachment in root coverage following gingival massaging with ayurvedic oil. Gain in CAL was assumed to be reflecting creeping attachment but the gain in CAL following gingival massaging were negligible (0.4-0.89 mm) and statistically non-significant (Table 2). These results are weak to support the hypothesis that, gingival massaging brings root coverage *via* creeping attachment. The available literature also lacks exact details as to when and how the creeping attachment starts and progresses. Certain studies have observed that creeping attachment occurs between 1 mo to 1 year.

In contrast, there was increase in the probing depths although negligible. This leads us to speculate that, massaging action may have lead to flattening and adaptation of gingival margin, or even marginal hypertrophy that majorly attributes to reduction in width and height of visible recession. Though this speculation may not hold strong consideration, it cannot be denied.

Intergroup comparisons (Table 4) demonstrated clear advantages of SCRF over gingival massaging with ayurvedic oil, which inturn is advantageous over gingival massaging with placebo (clarified butter). This clearly states the superior nature of SCRF in the treatment of class I recessions, while, gingival massaging with ayurvedic oil maintains close proximity to SCRF in terms of its clinical outcomes. Unfortunately no such data is available in the literature against which our observations could be compared.

Nevertheless SCRF procedure is a gold standard approach in terms of all the clinical parameters except for probing pocket depth and width of attached gingiva compared to the gingival massaging group. Under the circumstances where SCRF procedure remains contraindicated, or in patients who are skeptical on having to undergo surgical therapy for recession coverage, gingival massaging with an ayurvedic substance (IrimedadiTaila) offers a best alternative with almost equivalent benefits. Even the simple gingival massaging using an inert lubricant (such as Ghee) can be opted for as an adjunct to Scaling and root planing in areas of recession during maintenance phase.

COMMENTS

Background

The Semilunar coronally repositioned flap (SCRF) is one of the procedure described in the *Journal of Clinical Periodontology* in 1986 for the treatment of shallow recession. So far, however, no controlled clinical study has evaluated the SCRF performed as originally described and compared it with gingival massaging using an Ayurvedic product.

Research frontiers

Root coverage was achieved in both the groups and was stable during the evaluation period of 6 mo.

Innovations and breakthroughs

This is the pioneer study, where authors have used Ayurvedic product for massaging and results were significant when compared with SCRF technique.

Applications

Daily home care by the patient and gingival massaging might play an important role in improving gingival recessions and prevents further progression of mucogingival defects.

Terminology

IrimedadiTaila: Name of Ayurvedic massaging oil, with ingrediants like Acacia Arabica, *etc.*, which is used for maintaining plaque free environment in the oral cavity.

Peer review

The authors have chosen a very interesting and inexhaustible theme for the article.

REFERENCES

1 **Löe H**, Anerud A, Boysen H. The natural history of periodontal disease in man: prevalence, severity, and extent of gingival recession. *J Periodontol* 1992; **63**: 489-495 [PMID: 1625148 DOI: 10.1902/JOP.1992.63.6.489]

2 **Bouchard P**, Malet J, Borghetti A. Decision-making in aesthetics: root coverage revisited. *Periodontol 2000* 2001; **27**: 97-120 [PMID: 11551302 DOI: 10.1034/J.1600-0757.2001.027001097.x]

3 **Miller PD**. A classification of marginal tissue recession. *Int J Periodontics Restorative Dent* 1985; **5**: 8-13 [PMID: 3858267]

4 **Clauser C**, Nieri M, Franceschi D, Pagliaro U, Pini-Prato G. Evidence-based mucogingival therapy. Part 2: Ordinary and individual patient data meta-analyses of surgical treatment of recession using complete root coverage as the outcome

variable. *J Periodontol* 2003; **74**: 741-756 [PMID: 12816306 DOI: 10.1902/JOP.2003.74.5.741]
5 **Aimetti M**, Romano F, Peccolo DC, Debernardi C. Non-surgical periodontal therapy of shallow gingival recession defects: evaluation of the restorative capacity of marginal gingiva after 12 months. *J Periodontol* 2005; **76**: 256-261 [PMID: 15974850 DOI: 10.1902/JOP.2005.76.2.256]
6 **Tarnow DP**. Semilunar coronally repositioned flap. *J Clin Periodontol* 1986; **13**: 182-185 [PMID: 3457805 DOI: 10.1111/J.1600-051X.1986.tb01456.x]
7 **Horiuchi M**, Yamamoto T, Tomofuji T, Ishikawa A, Morita M, Watanabe T. Toothbrushing promotes gingival fibroblast proliferation more effectively than removal of dental plaque. *J Clin Periodontol* 2002; **29**: 791-795 [PMID: 12423290 DOI: 10.1034/J.1600-051X.2002.290901.x]
8 **Gazi MI**. The finding of antiplaque features in Acacia Arabica type of chewing gum. *J Clin Periodontol* 1991; **18**: 75-77 [PMID: 2045522 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-051X.1991.tb01123.x]
9 **Goaslind GD**, Robertson PB, Mahan CJ, Morrison WW, Olson JV. Thickness of facial gingiva. *J Periodontol* 1977; **48**: 768-771 [PMID: 271223 DOI: 10.1902/JOP.1977.48.12.768]
10 **Kassab MM**, Cohen RE. The etiology and prevalence of gingival recession. *J Am Dent Assoc* 2003; **134**: 220-225 [PMID: 12636127 DOI: 10.14219/JADA.ARCHIVE.2003.0137]
11 **Zucchelli G**, Testori T, De Sanctis M. Clinical and anatomical factors limiting treatment outcomes of gingival recession: a new method to predetermine the line of root coverage. *J Periodontol* 2006; **77**: 714-721 [PMID: 16584355 DOI: 10.1902/JOP.2006.050038]
12 **Haghighati F**, Mousavi M, Moslemi N, Kebria MM, Golestan B. A comparative study of two root-coverage techniques with regard to interdental papilla dimension as a prognostic factor. *Int J Periodontics Restorative Dent* 2009; **29**: 179-189 [PMID: 19408480 DOI: 10.11607/PRD.00.0851]
13 **Kerner S**, Sarfati A, Katsahian S, Jaumet V, Micheau C, Mora F, Monnet-Corti V, Bouchard P. Qualitative cosmetic evaluation after root-coverage procedures. *J Periodontol* 2009; **80**: 41-47 [PMID: 19228088 DOI: 10.1902/jop.2009.080413]
14 **Thompson BK**, Meyer R, Singh GB, Mitchell W. Desensitization of exposed root surfaces using a semilunar coronally positioned flap. *Gen Dent* 2000; **48**: 68-71; quiz 72-73 [PMID: 11199557]
15 **Casati MZ**, Nociti FH jr, SallumEnilson A. Treatment of gingival recessions by semilunar coronally positioned flap. *Rev Assoc Paul Cir Dent* 2001; **55**: 169-172
16 **Ekuni D**, Yamanaka R, Yamamoto T, Miyauchi M, Takata T, Watanabe T. Effects of mechanical stimulation by a powered toothbrush on the healing of periodontal tissue in a rat model of periodontal disease. *J Periodontal Res* 2010; **45**: 45-51 [PMID: 19602119 DOI: 10.1111/J.1600-0765.2009.01195.X]
17 **Hanioka T**, Nagata H, Murakami Y, Tamagawa H, Shizukuishi S. Mechanical stimulation by toothbrushing increases oxygen sufficiency in human gingivae. *J Clin Periodontol* 1993; **20**: 591-594 [PMID: 8408721 DOI: 10.1111/J.1600-051X.1993.TB00776.X]
18 **Perry DA**, McDowell J, Goodis HE. Gingival microcirculation response to tooth brushing measured by laser Doppler flowmetry. *J Periodontol* 1997; **68**: 990-995 [PMID: 9358366 DOI: 10.1902/JOP.1997.68.10.990]
19 **Tanaka M**, Hanioka T, Kishimoto M, Shizukuishi S. Effect of mechanical toothbrush stimulation on gingival microcirculatory functions in inflamed gingiva of dogs. *J Clin Periodontol* 1998; **25**: 561-565 [PMID: 9696256 DOI: 10.1111/J.1600-051X.1998.tb02488.x]
20 **Fraleigh CM**. Tissue changes with manual and electric brushes. *J Am Dent Assoc* 1965; **70**: 380-387 [PMID: 14232288]
21 **Ando K**, Ito K, Murai S. Improvement of multiple facial gingival recession by non-surgical and supportive periodontal therapy: a case report. *J Periodontol* 1999; **70**: 909-913 [PMID: 10476900 DOI: 10.1902/JOP.1999.70.8.909]
22 **Marggraf E**. A direct technique with a double lateral bridging flap for coverage of denuded root surface and gingiva extension. Clinical evaluation after 2 years. *J Clin Periodontol* 1985; **12**: 69-76 [PMID: 3855873 DOI: 10.1111/J.1600-051X.1985.tb01355.x]
23 **Jahangirnezhad M**. Semilunarcoronally repositioned flap for the treatment of gingival recession with and without tissue adhesives: a pilot study. *J Dent* (Tehran) 2006; **3**: 36-39
24 **Bittencourt S**, Del Peloso Ribeiro E, Sallum EA, Sallum AW, Nociti FH, Casati MZ. Comparative 6-month clinical study of a semilunar coronally positioned flap and subepithelial connective tissue graft for the treatment of gingival recession. *J Periodontol* 2006; **77**: 174-181 [PMID: 16460241 DOI: 10.1902/JOP.2006.050114]
25 **Bittencourt S**, Ribeiro Edel P, Sallum EA, Sallum AW, Nociti FH, Casati MZ. Root surface biomodification with EDTA for the treatment of gingival recession with a semilunar coronally repositioned flap. *J Periodontol* 2007; **78**: 1695-1701 [PMID: 17760538 DOI: 10.1902/JOP.2007.060507]
26 **Bittencourt S**, Ribeiro Edel P, Sallum EA, Sallum AW, Nociti FH, Casati MZ. Semilunar coronally positioned flap or subepithelial connective tissue graft for the treatment of gingival recession: a 30-month follow-up study. *J Periodontol* 2009; **80**: 1076-1082 [PMID: 19563287 DOI: 10.1902/JOP.2009.080498]
27 **Pini Prato G**, Tinti C, Vincenzi G, Magnani C, Cortellini P, Clauser C. Guided tissue regeneration versus mucogingival surgery in the treatment of human buccal gingival recession. *J Periodontol* 1992; **63**: 919-928 [PMID: 1453307 DOI: 10.1902/JOP.1992.63.11.919]
28 **Rosetti EP**, Marcantonio RA, Rossa C, Chaves ES, Goissis G, Marcantonio E. Treatment of gingival recession: comparative study between subepithelial connective tissue graft and guided tissue regeneration. *J Periodontol* 2000; **71**: 1441-1447 [PMID: 11022773 DOI: 10.1902/JOP.2000.71.9.1441]
29 **Müller HP**, Stahl M, Eger T. Root coverage employing an envelope technique or guided tissue regeneration with a bioabsorbable membrane. *J Periodontol* 1999; **70**: 743-751 [PMID: 10440635 DOI: 10.1902/jop.1999.70.7.743]
30 **Paolantonio M**, Dolci M, Esposito P, D'Archivio D, Lisanti L, Di Luccio A, Perinetti G. Subpedicle acellular dermal matrix graft and autogenous connective tissue graft in the treatment of gingival recessions: a comparative 1-year clinical study. *J Periodontol* 2002; **73**: 1299-1307 [PMID: 12479634 DOI: 10.1902/JOP.2002.73.11.1299]
31 **Wennström JL**, Zucchelli G. Increased gingival dimensions. A significant factor for successful outcome of root coverage procedures? A 2-year prospective clinical study. *J Clin Periodontol* 1996; **23**: 770-777 [PMID: 8877664 DOI: 10.1111/J.1600-051X.1996.tb00608.x]
32 **Santana RB**, Mattos CM, Dibart S. A clinical comparison of two flap designs for coronal advancement of the gingival margin: semilunar versus coronally advanced flap. *J Clin Periodontol* 2010; **37**: 651-658 [PMID: 20528963 DOI: 10.1111/J.1600-051X.2010.01582.x]

P- Reviewer: Mishra AK, Pejcic A, Zucchelli G
S- Editor: Ji FF **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Clinical Cases

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.12998/wjcc.v2.i10.541

World J Clin Cases 2014 October 16; 2(10): 541-545
ISSN 2307-8960 (online)

CLINICAL TRIALS STUDY

HLA antigens in individuals with down syndrome and alopecia areata

Juliany L Estefan, Juliana C Oliveira, Eliane D Abad, Simone B Saintive, Luis Cristóvão MS Porto, Marcia Ribeiro

Juliany L Estefan, Eliane D Abad, Simone B Saintive, Pediatric Dermatology Service, Martagão Gesteira Pediatric Institute, Federal University of Rio de Janeiro, Rio de Janeiro, RJ 21941-901, Brazil
Juliany L Estefan, Marcia Ribeiro, Medical Genetics Service, Martagão Gesteira Pediatric Institute, Federal University of Rio de Janeiro, Rio de Janeiro, RJ 21941-901, Brazil
Juliana C Oliveira, Luis Cristóvão MS Porto, Histocompatibility and Cryopreservation-HLA Laboratory, State University of Rio de Janeiro, Policlínica Piquet Carneiro/UERJ, Rio de Janeiro, RJ 21941-901, Brazil
Author contributions: Estefan JL contributed to research design, analysis and interpretation of data, drafting the paper and revising it critically; Oliveira JC, Abad ED and Saintive SB contributed to drafting the paper and revising it critically; Porto LCMS contributed to substantial contributions to research conception and design; drafting the paper and revising it critically; Ribeiro M contributed to substantial contributions to research conception and design, analysis and interpretation of data, drafting the paper and revising it critically; all authors contributed to final approval of the version to be published.
Correspondence to: Juliany L Estefan, MD, Msc, Medical Genetics Service, Martagão Gesteira Pediatrics Institute, Federal University of Rio de Janeiro, Rua Bruno Lobo, 50, Cidade Universitária, Ilha do Fundão, Rio de Janeiro, RJ 21941-901, Brazil. ju_estefan@yahoo.com.br
Telephone: +55-21-25626148
Received: April 2, 2014 Revised: June 3, 2014
Accepted: August 27, 2014
Published online: October 16, 2014

Abstract

AIM: To describe human leukocyte antigen (HLA) alleles in individuals with Down syndrome and alopecia areata.

METHODS: A cross-sectional study was conducted, which evaluated 109 individuals. Ten with down syndrome (DS) and alopecia areata (AA), ten with DS without AA and ten with AA without DS, and their families. The individuals were matched by gender and age. The following data were computed: gender, age, ethnic group, karyotype, clinical presentation and family history of alopecia areata. Descriptive analysis: measures of central tendency and frequency distribution. Inferential analysis: Fisher's exact test to compare categorical data between the three groups and Kruskal-Wallis *ANOVA* test for numerical data.

RESULTS: Seventy per cent of evaluated individuals in the DS and AA group were male; presented mean age of 18.6 (SD ± 7.2) years and 70% were Caucasian. We observed involvement of the scalp, with a single lesion in 10% and multiple in 90% of subjects. It was observed that there is no significant difference in the frequency distributions of the alleles HLA loci A, B, C, DRB1 and DQB1 of subjects studied. However, according to Fisher's exact test, there is a trend (P = 0.089) of DS group to present higher proportions of HLA-A 36 and HLA-B 15 than the AA group and AA and DS group.

CONCLUSION: There was a tendency for the DS group, to present proportion of HLA-A 36 and HLA-B 15 higher than the AA group and group of individuals with AA and DS. However, there was no significant difference in the frequency distribution of the alleles.

Key words: Down syndrome; Alopecia areata; Human leukocyte antigen antigens; Immunology; Genetic

Core tip: The prevalence of alopecia areata (AA) in down syndrome (DS) individuals ranges from 1% to 11%, higher than in general population. The frequency distribution of human leukocyte antigen alleles in the groups was heterogeneous; there was a tendency of alleles A-36 and B-15 in DS group. The cause of AA in DS remains unknown.

Estefan JL, Oliveira JC, Abad ED, Saintive SB, Porto LCMS, Ribeiro M. HLA antigens in individuals with down syndrome and alopecia areata. *World J Clin Cases* 2014; 2(10): 541-545 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2307-8960/full/v2/i10/541.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.12998/wjcc.v2.i10.541

INTRODUCTION

Down syndrome (DS) is the most frequent chromosomal anomaly and common cause of mental retardation[1,2]. The prevalence of DS is approximately 1:770 births, with a slight preponderance in the male gender[3].

This syndrome presents an increased prevalence of autoimmune disorders[4]. The prevalence of alopecia areata (AA) in DS ranges from 1% to 11%, more frequent in this group than the general population[5-11]. Some studies conducted with DS patients with and without AA showed changes related to the immune system. There are few studies involving the histocompatibility antigens (HLA), DS and AA[12-14].

The purpose of this study was to describe HLA alleles (loci A, B, C, DRB1 and DQB1) in individuals with DS and AA.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

A cross-sectional study was conducted, in which 109 individuals were evaluated; 10 individuals with DS without AA (Group A) and 10 individuals with AA without DS (Group B), 10 individuals with DS and AA (Group C) and their families (Figure 1). The individuals were matched by gender and age. The clinical research protocol was approved by the Ethical Research Committee of the Martagão Gesteira Pediatric Institute (IPPMG) and all participants or their caregivers signed the informed consent.

All DS individuals were diagnosed clinically, most by cytogenetic analysis, and presented a documented medical history of AA or presented alopecia at the time of a consultation at the Medical Genetics Service. AA was considered to be hair loss leading to a "flaw" on any hairy body surface.

All the participants of the study were submitted to anamnesis and clinical exam to confirm DS and/or AA diagnosis by a clinical geneticist and by a dermatologist respectively. Exclusion criteria included: trichotillomania and presence of polycystic ovaries (evaluated by pelvic ultrasound in post-menarche female DS and/or AA patients).

The following data were computed: (1) gender and age; (2) cytogenetic exam; (3) ethnic group; (4) clinical picture of AA; (5) family history of AA; (6) HLA alleles; and (7) evaluation of family.

The HLA typing was performed using commercial kits: LABType® Typing sequence specific oligonucleotide probes (SSO) Tests (One Lambda, Inc. CA, United States), which are based on the use of SSO which are connected on the microbeads encoded by fluorescence identifying alleles encoded by the DNA sample.

A descriptive analysis with measures of central tendency and frequency distribution was made and an inferential analysis on exploratory level was made by Fisher's exact test to compare categorical data between the three groups by ANOVA and Kruskal-Wallis test for numerical data. Nonparametric test was used because the variables were not normally distributed (Gaussian), due to the dispersion of the data and rejection of the hypothesis of normality according to the Kolmogorov-Smirnov test. The criterion for determination of significance level was 5%.

RESULTS

Table 1 provides the frequency (*n*) and percentage (%) of categorical variables and disease according to demographic groups (A, B and C) and the corresponding descriptive level (*P* value) of Fisher's exact test. The age in months and the number of family members were expressed as mean, median and standard deviation and compared by Kruskal-Wallis ANOVA.

Table 2 provides the frequency (*n*) and the percentage (%) of the loci of HLA-A, B, C, DQB1 and DRB1 alleles, in the groups (DS, AA and DS + AA) and corresponding descriptive level (*P* value) of Fisher's exact test.

Regarding the relatives evaluation of first and second degrees, it was observed that the majority of alleles showed a low frequency. We emphasize some alleles such as HLA-C 07 (21/55), HLA-DQB1 03 (28/55) and HLA-DQB1 06 (22/55) which had a high frequency (> 50%) in the first-degree relatives of all groups.

DISCUSSION

This study reflects an unpublished investigation in patients with DS. However, there was no statistical significance in the distribution of HLA in DS with or without AA. Although the sample size reflected a small number of patients, in general, the groups did not differ (Table 1), reflecting the selection criteria used. Several studies have focused on the association of HLA and AA; some of them correlating prognosis, extent, chance of recurrence and family history with HLA[15-17]. These studies report that HLADQB1*03 allele was presented in 80% of all patients with AA, independently of the phenotype, and in 92% of individuals with total or universal AA. It was also demonstrated that the frequency of HLA-DRB1*1104 was increased in all sorts of AA[15,16]. These data were not reported in this study.

Although the literature reports that the AA in individuals with DS is more common in females[5,18], the sample was predominantly male (70.0%). Schepis *et al*[19] (2005) studied individuals with DS and AA, and also identified more men with AA (92.3%). Concerning the 352 DS cases recorded in IPPMG, 15 of them presented AA; the most frequently occurrence of AA in males was not significant ($P > 0.05$). AA can occur as a single and self-limited episode, but also can recur in DS patients[20,21]. In this study, 90% (9/10) individuals with DS and AA had

Table 1 Demographic and disease variables according the group *n* (%)

Variable	Category	DS group (A)		AA group (B)		DS + AA group (C)		*P* value[1]
Gender	Male	7	(70.0)	7	(70.0)	7	(30.0)	1.000
	Female	3	(30.0)	3	(30.0)	3	(30.0)	
Age, mo	Avarage ± SD (median)	224.1 ± 86.0 (233.5)		217.3 ± 90.2 (197.0)		224.3 ± 86.9 (223.5)		0.970[2]
Clinical presentation	1 lesion S			1	(10.0)	1	(10.0)	Descrip-tive
	1 lesion S/cilium			1	(10.0)	0	0.0	
	Lesions S			6	(60.0)	9	(90.0)	
	Lesion S/total			1	(10.0)	0	0.0	
	Lesion S/total/eyebrow			1	(10.0)	0	0.0	
Family history of alopecia	Yes	0	0	2	(20.0)	0	0	0.230
	No	10	(100.0)	8	(80.0)	10	(100.0)	
Karyotype	free trisomy	7	(100.0)			6	(85.7)	0.500
	Translocation	0	0			1	(14.3)	
Ethnic group	Caucasian	6	(60.0)	3	(30.0)	7	(70.0)	0.270
	Non-Caucasian	4	(40.0)	7	(70.0)	3	(30.0)	
Family (*n*)	0	0	0	2	(20.0)	1	(10.0)	Descrip-tive
	1	3	(30.0)	5	(50.0)	3	(30.0)	
	2	2	(20.0)	1	(10.0)	0	0.0	
	3	2	(20.0)	1	(10.0)	0	0.0	
	4	0	0.0	1	(10.0)	2	(20.0)	
	5	1	(10.0)	0	0.0	2	(20.0)	
	6	1	(10.0)	0	0.0	1	(10.0)	
	7	1	(10.0)	0	0.0	1	(10.0)	
Family (*n*)	Avarage ± SD (median)	3.1 ± 2.2 (2.5)		1.4 ± 1.3 (1)		3.4 ± 2.5 (4)		0.085[2]

[1]Fisher exact test; [2]Kruskal-Wallis ANOVA. S: Scalp; DS: Down syndrome; AA: Alopecia areata.

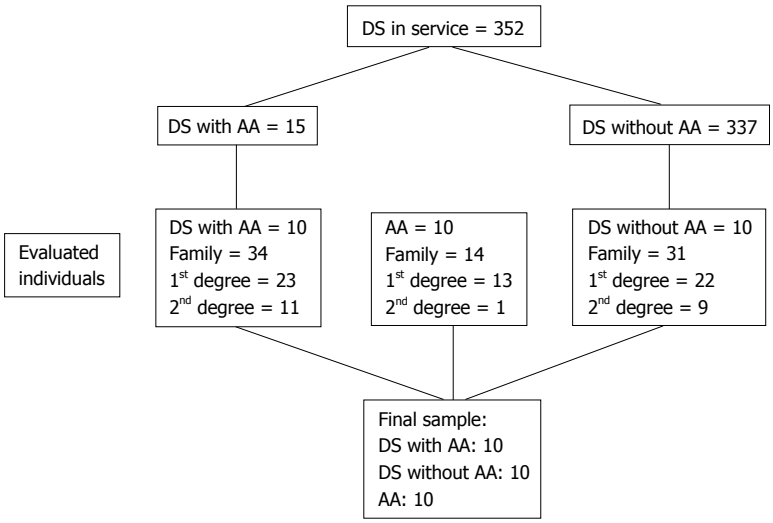


Figure 1 Structure of selected sample. DS: Down syndrome; AA: Alopecia areata.

more than one lesion on the scalp, and 10% (1/10) presented single lesion on the scalp. This finding was similar which is reported in the literature[19]. AA can affect any hairy area and the most affected is scalp (90%)[22-25]. All evaluated individuals presented scalp lesion.

Regarding family history, it is present in 10%-25% of cases of AA[10,26]. In this study we observed two cases (20%) of family history (first degree relative) in AA without DS group.

Genetic studies of AA have focused on HLA antigens due to immunological aspects of the disease[15,17,27,28]. Some have demonstrated that major complex of histocompatibility genes are the major determinants for diseases mediated by T cells, including AA[29,30]. In this study, no significant difference was observed at the level of 5% on the proportion of HLA-A between groups. According to Fisher's exact test, there is a trend ($P = 0.089$) of the DS group, present proportion of HLA-A 36 (30%) higher than the AA (0%) and DS with AA (0%) group. Xiao *et al*[17] (2006) evaluated Chinese individuals, 192 with AA and 252 controls and found higher frequency of HLA-A*02 and A*03 in patients than in controls. Despite not being the same allele, we can see that the distribution is in fact heterogeneous.

In the same study[17], comparing patients and controls, a higher frequency of HLA-B*18 and HLA-B*27

Table 2 Distribution of the most frequent human leukocyte antigen A, B, C, DQB1 and DRB1 alleles

Alleles	DS group (A)		AA group (B)		DS + AA group (C)		*P* value[1]
HLA-A 02	4	(40.0)	3	(30.0)	5	(50.0)	0.890
HLA-A 24	1	(10.0)	0	0.0	3	(30.0)	0.290
HLA-A 36	3	(30.0)	0	0.0	0	0.0	0.089
HLA-B 15	4	(40.0)	0	0.0	1	(10.0)	0.094
HLA-B 35	1	(10.0)	2	(20.0)	3	(30.0)	0.850
HLA-B 44	0	0.0	2	(20.0)	4	(40.0)	0.120
HLA-B 53	3	(30.0)	1	(10.0)	1	(10.0)	0.570
HLA-C 02	4	(40.0)	0	0.0	2	(20.0)	0.120
HLA-C 07	4	(40.0)	3	(30.0)	5	(50.0)	0.890
HLA-C 15	1	(10.0)	3	(30.0)	0	0.0	0.290
HLA-DQB1 02	6	(60.0)	3	(30.0)	4	(40.0)	0.530
HLA-DQB1 03	2	(20.0)	6	(60.0)	5	(50.0)	0.270
HLA-DRB1 01	1	(10.0)	2	(20.0)	3	(30.0)	0.850
HLA-DRB1 03	4	(40.0)	3	(30.0)	2	(20.0)	0.880
HLA-DRB1 04	0	0.0	1	(10.0)	2	(20.0)	0.750
HLA-DRB1 11	1	(10.0)	3	(30.0)	3	(30.0)	0.640
HLA-DRB1 13	3	(30.0)	2	(20.0)	4	(40.0)	0.880

[1]Fisher Exact test. HLA-A 01, -03, -11, -23, -25, -30, -31, -32, -33, -66, -68, -80. HLA-B 07, -08, -13, -14, -27, -37, -40, -42, -48, -49, - 50, -51, -52,- 57, -58, -81. HLA-C 01, -03,- 04,- 05, -06,- 08, -14,-16,-17. HLA-DQB1 04, -05, -06. HLA-DRB1 01, -07, -08, -10, -12, -15, -16 alleles had a frequency less than 1 and were not included in the Table 2. HLA: Human leukocyte antigen; DS: Down syndrome; AA: Alopecia areata.

was found in patients. In this study there was no significant difference at 5% in the proportion of HLA-B and between groups. According to Fisher's exact test, there is a trend (P = 0.094) in DS group presenting a higher proportion of HLA-B 15 (40%) than the others groups. There is few published data on HLA-C and AA. It was described in literature the highest frequency of HLA-Cw*0704 in patients with AA. In this study, it was observed that there is no significant difference at 5%, proportion of HLA-C, HLA-DQB1 and HLA-DRB1 alleles between groups.

This finding was different from some studies reported in the literature, conducted in patients with AA without DS, which showed a predisposition to develop AA in cases with HLA-DRB1*03, HLA-DRB1*04, HLA-DQB1*06, HLADRB1*13, HLADRw52a, DQ7, HLADQB1*03, HLA-DRB1*11[15-17,27,31,32].

Different HLA types are found in the population and it is rare to find two individuals having the same HLA[33]. The frequencies of alleles tend to be different among populations racially and ethnically distinct. The Brazilian population is genetically very different and it is justified by the contribution of three groups: Caucasians, Africans and Native Americans[34]. This fact may explain the heterogeneous distribution in this study and the differences found in earlier studies.

This study was conducted with a small sample. Moreover, it was difficult to collect some relatives of the subjects, especially the second degree, who refused to participate. These two factors were found limitations in this research.

In a conclusion, The frequency distribution of HLA alleles (loci A, B, C, DRB1 and DQB1) was heterogeneous in the three groups, with no significant difference in the proportion. There was a trend (P = 0.089) of the DS group to present higher proportion of HLA-A 36 than the others groups and a trend (P = 0.094) of the DS group to present higher proportion of HLA-B 15 than the others groups. HLA-C 07, HLA-DQB1 03 and HLA-DQB1 06 alleles showed high frequency (> 50%) in first-degree relatives of the total sample.

This study was conducted with a small sample. We suggest further studies with larger sample.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Medical students: Marcela, Erika, Patrícia and Annalu.

COMMENTS

Background

The prevalence of alopecia areata (AA) in down syndrome (DS) individuals ranges from 1% to 11%, higher than in general population.

Research frontiers

This study was undertaken to describe human leukocyte antigen (HLA) alleles in individuals with DS and AA, and try to explain the higher prevalence of AA in these individuals.

Innovations and breakthroughs

The frequency distribution of HLA alleles in the groups was heterogeneous; there was a tendency of alleles A-36 and B-15 in DS group. The cause of AA in DS remains unknown. The authors suggest further studies with a larger sample.

Peer review

The work presented in the paper provides an indication that individuals with Down syndrome exhibit a higher prevalence of AA than the general population. In spite a small sample size, the manuscript provides some interesting insights into the immune system disturbances in DS individuals.

REFERENCES

1 **Bertolini DL**, Vitalle MSS, Fisberg M. Morbimortalidade em indivíduos portadores da Síndrome de Down. *Pediatr Atual São Paulo* 1993; **6**: 42-49
2 **Gelehrter TD**, Collins FS. Citogenética. In: Fundamentos de Genética Médica. Guanabara Koogan, 1992: 135-160
3 **Fryns JP**. Chromosome 21, trisomy 21. In: Buyse ML. Birth Defects Encyclopedia. Blackwell Scientific Publications, 1990: 391-393
4 **Karlsson B**, Gustafsson J, Hedov G, Ivarsson SA, Annerén G. Thyroid dysfunction in Down's syndrome: relation to age and thyroid autoimmunity. *Arch Dis Child* 1998; **79**: 242-245 [PMID: 9875020 DOI: 10.1136/adc.79.3.242]
5 **Carter DM**, Jegasothy BV. Alopecia areata and Down syndrome. *Arch Dermatol* 1976; **112**: 1397-1399 [PMID: 134671 DOI: 10.1001/archderm.1976.01630340015003]
6 **Du Vivier A**, Munro DD. Alopecia areata, autoimmunity, and Down's syndrome. *Br Med J* 1975; **1**: 191-192 [PMID: 122906 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.1.5951.191]
7 **Garg S**, Messenger AG. Alopecia areata: evidence-based treatments. *Semin Cutan Med Surg* 2009; **28**: 15-18 [PMID: 19341938 DOI: 10.1016/j.sder.2008.12.002]
8 **Daneshpazhooh M**, Nazemi TM, Bigdeloo L, Yoosefi M. Mucocutaneous findings in 100 children with Down syndrome. *Pediatr Dermatol* 2007; **24**: 317-320 [PMID: 17542890 DOI: 10.1111/j.1525-1470.2007.00412.x]
9 **Dourmishev A**, Miteva L, Mitev V, Pramatarov K, Schwartz RA. Cutaneous aspects of Down syndrome. *Cutis* 2000; **66**: 420-424 [PMID: 11138359]

10 **Roselino AM**, Almeida AM, Hippolito MA, Cerqueira BC, Maffei CM, Menezes JB, Vieira RE, Assis SL, Ali SA. Clinical-epidemiologic study of alopecia areata. *Int J Dermatol* 1996; **35**: 181-184 [PMID: 8655233 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-4362.1996.tb01635.x]

11 **Wunderlich C**, Braun-falco O. [Mongolism and alopecia areata]. *Med Welt* 1965; **10**: 477-481 [PMID: 14276234]

12 **Bertotto A**, Crupi S, Fabietti GM, Troiani S, Parente C, Mezzetti D, Vaccaro R. CD3+/CD30+ circulating T lymphocytes are markedly increased in older subjects with Down's syndrome (Trisomy 21). *Pathobiology* 1999; **67**: 108-110 [PMID: 10023139 DOI: 10.1159/000028058]

13 **Bertotto A**, Gerli R, Spinozzi F, Muscat C, Fabietti GM, Crupi S, Castellucci G, De Benedictis FM, De Giorgi G, Britta R. CD26 surface antigen expression on peripheral blood T lymphocytes from children with Down's syndrome (trisomy 21). *Scand J Immunol* 1994; **39**: 633-636 [PMID: 7912005 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-3083.1994.tb03424.x]

14 **Miller ME**, Mellman WJ, Kohn G, Dietz WH. Qualitative and quantitative deficiencies of immunoglobulin G (IgG) in newborns with Down syndrome. *Ann NY Acad Sci* 1970; **171**: 512-516 [DOI: 10.1111/j.1749-6632.1970.tb39360.x]

15 **Colombe BW**, Price VH, Khoury EL, Garovoy MR, Lou CD. HLA class II antigen associations help to define two types of alopecia areata. *J Am Acad Dermatol* 1995; **33**: 757-764 [PMID: 7593774]

16 **Welsh EA**, Clark HH, Epstein SZ, Reveille JD, Duvic M. Human leukocyte antigen-DQB1*03 alleles are associated with alopecia areata. *J Invest Dermatol* 1994; **103**: 758-763 [PMID: 7798612 DOI: 10.1111/1523-1747.ep12412584]

17 **Xiao FL**, Yang S, Yan KL, Cui Y, Liang YH, Zhou FS, Du WH, Gao M, Sun LD, Fan X, Chen JJ, Wang PG, Zhu YG, Zhou SM, Zhang XJ. Association of HLA class I alleles with alopecia areata in Chinese Hans. *J Dermatol Sci* 2006; **41**: 109-119 [PMID: 16185849 DOI: 10.1016/j.jdermsci.2005.07.008]

18 **Muller SA**, Winkelmann RK. Alopecia areata. An evaluation of 736 patients. *Arch Dermatol* 1963; **88**: 290-297 [PMID: 14043621 DOI: 10.1001/archderm.1963.01590210048007]

19 **Schepis C**, Barone C, Lazzaro Danzuso GC, Romano C. Alopecia areata in Down syndrome: a clinical evaluation. *J Eur Acad Dermatol Venereol* 2005; **19**: 769-770 [PMID: 16268894 DOI: 10.1111/j.1468-3083.2005.01259.x]

20 **Alves R**, Ferrando J. Alopecia areata and Down's syndrome. *Rev Med Int Sindr Down* 2011; **15**: 34-36 [DOI: 10.1016/S2171-9748(11)70012-5]

21 **Whiting DA**. Histopathologic features of alopecia areata: a new look. *Arch Dermatol* 2003; **139**: 1555-1559 [PMID: 14676070 DOI: 10.1001/archderm.139.12.1555]

22 **Alkhalifah A**, Alsantali A, Wang E, McElwee KJ, Shapiro J. Alopecia areata update: part I. Clinical picture, histopathology, and pathogenesis. *J Am Acad Dermatol* 2010; **62**: 177-188, quiz 189-190 [PMID: 20115945 DOI: 10.1016/j.jaad.2009.10.032]

23 **Pereira JM**. Propedêutica das Doenças dos Cabelos e do Couro Cabeludo. São Paulo: Atheneu, 2001: 163-175

24 **Rivitti EA**. Alopecia areata: revisão e atualização. *An Bras Dermatol* 2005; **80**: 57-68 [DOI: 10.1590/S0365-05962005000100009]

25 **Wasserman D**, Guzman-Sanchez DA, Scott K, McMichael A. Alopecia areata. *Int J Dermatol* 2007; **46**: 121-131 [PMID: 17269961 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-4632.2007.03193.x]

26 **Duarte AA**, Cucé LC, Machado DS, Fukugava MFN, Gomes PA. Alopecia areata familiar. *An Bras Dermatol* 1996; **71**: 356-360

27 **Entz P**, Blaumeiser B, Betz RC, Lambert J, Seymons K, Eigelshoven S, Hanneken S, Kruse R, Nürnberg P, Nagy M, Nöthen MM. Investigation of the HLA-DRB1 locus in alopecia areata. *Eur J Dermatol* 2006; **16**: 363-367 [PMID: 16935791]

28 **Tazi-Ahnini R**, di Giovine FS, McDonagh AJ, Messenger AG, Amadou C, Cox A, Duff GW, Cork MJ. Structure and polymorphism of the human gene for the interferon-induced p78 protein (MX1): evidence of association with alopecia areata in the Down syndrome region. *Hum Genet* 2000; **106**: 639-645 [PMID: 10942113]

29 **Barahmani N**, de Andrade M, Slusser JP, Zhang Q, Duvic M. Major histocompatibility complex class I chain-related gene A polymorphisms and extended haplotypes are associated with familial alopecia areata. *J Invest Dermatol* 2006; **126**: 74-78 [PMID: 16417220 DOI: 10.1038/sj.jid.5700009]

30 **Nair RP**, Stuart P, Henseler T, Jenisch S, Chia NV, Westphal E, Schork NJ, Kim J, Lim HW, Christophers E, Voorhees JJ, Elder JT. Localization of psoriasis-susceptibility locus PSORS1 to a 60-kb interval telomeric to HLA-C. *Am J Hum Genet* 2000; **66**: 1833-1844 [PMID: 10801386 DOI: 10.1086/302932]

31 **Attia EA**, El Shennawy D, Sefin A. Serum Interleukin-4 and Total Immunoglobulin E in Nonatopic Alopecia Areata Patients and HLA-DRB1 Typing. *Dermatol Res Pract* 2010; **2010**: 503587 [PMID: 20671941 DOI: 10.1155/2010/503587]

32 **Duvic M**, Hordinsky MK, Fiedler VC, O'Brien WR, Young R, Reveille JD. HLA-D locus associations in alopecia areata. DRw52a may confer disease resistance. *Arch Dermatol* 1991; **127**: 64-68 [PMID: 1670917 DOI: 10.1001/archderm.1991.01680010074011]

33 **Abbas AK**, Lichtman AH, Pillai S. O complexo de histocompatibilidade principal. In: Abbas AK, Lichtman AH, Pillai S. Imunologia celular e molecular. Elsevier, 2011: 109-138

34 **Moraes ME**, Fernandez-Viña M, Salatiel I, Tsai S, Moraes JR, Stastny P. HLA class II DNA typing in two Brazilian populations. *Tissue Antigens* 1993; **41**: 238-242 [PMID: 8236236 DOI: 10.1111/j.1399-0039.1993.tb02012.x]

P- Reviewer: Husein-ElAhmed H, Romani A, Slomiany BL
S- Editor: Wen LL **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Clinical Cases

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.12998/wjcc.v2.i10.546

World J Clin Cases 2014 October 16; 2(10): 546-551
ISSN 2307-8960 (online)

OBSERVATIONAL STUDY

He had always wanted to ask an andrologist but had never done so

Carlo Foresta, Damiano Pizzol

Carlo Foresta, Damiano Pizzol, Department of Medicine, Section of Endocrinology and Centre for Human Reproduction Pathology, University of Padua, 35121 Padova, Italy
Author contributions: All authors contributed equally to this work.
Correspondence to: Dr. Pizzol Damiano, Department of Medicine, Section of Endocrinology and Centre for Human Reproduction Pathology, University of Padua, Via Gabelli 63, 35121 Padova, Italy. damiano.pizzol@uniroma1.it
Telephone: +39-49-8218573 Fax: +39-49-8218520
Received: March 31, 2014 Revised: June 4, 2014
Accepted: July 27, 2014
Published online: October 16, 2014

Abstract

AIM: To understand and analyze what young Italian males attending high school would like to ask andrologists but do not know how to or do not have the courage to do so.

METHODS: As part of our "Androlife" campaign, we invited 1565 students attending the last year of high school to participate in our research. Firstly, they attended a lesson on general and andrological health and then, on a voluntary basis, they responded to a survey and were subjected to a preventive andrological visit.

RESULTS: The data analysis showed that the main topics in which young people are interested are: sexual activity and sexuality, sexually transmitted diseases, andrological health and fertility, and lifestyle.

CONCLUSION: This study highlights that young people are very interested in sexual health issues and that they have specific needs and interests with regard to sexual health information. Public education campaigns such as Androlife should be supported and further improved on the basis of the advice received by young participants. Sexual and reproductive health education targeting adolescents and young adults represent the basis both for wellness and for fertility preservation, and thus benefits of increased support to educational campaigns would be apparent not only in terms of individual health but also in terms of cost reduction in public spending.

Key words: Men's health; Adolescence; Prevention; Education; Sexual health; Andrologist

Core tip: This article considers the questions young people are most frequently asking. It can be considered an innovative paper because in Italy and other countries many of these topics are considered taboo. Moreover, in this article we underline that the benefits of increased support for educational campaigns would be apparent not only in terms of individual health but also in terms of cost reduction in public spending.

Foresta C, Pizzol D. He had always wanted to ask an andrologist but had never done so. *World J Clin Cases* 2014; 2(10): 546-551 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2307-8960/full/v2/i10/546.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.12998/wjcc.v2.i10.546

INTRODUCTION

Sexual health, sexual disorders and everything related to sex have often been considered a taboo topic in Italy for many reasons, including cultural, social and religious factors. Furthermore, while the specialist in gynecology is now both well known and readily accepted, the specialist in andrology is not yet fully established among the public. However, both in Italy and all over the world, societies are becoming increasingly aware that men as well as women need sexual health care services, while at the same time services that are available are underutilized[1].

The absence of a referring specialist for men adds to the lack of heath education and prevention programs with the result that young people, particularly males, often are not knowledgeable of diseases and risk factors related to sexual health. This situation inevitably leads to difficulties in implementing preventive measures. Moreover, the difficulty that young people encounter in talking to parents and seeking medical attention for sex-related problems motivates adolescents to attempt to solve problems by using the web or by relying on word of mouth and often on urban myths. Consequently, if the user is unable to select and identify the correct information there exists a major risk that not only problems are seldom solved, but also that they are often aggravated[2]. However, the tendency to high-risk behavior and to low utilization of sexual health services is not only characteristic of young males but also extends to adult men, and it may contribute to lower male life expectancy[3]. Some authors have already taken into account social, behavioral and psychosocial factors associated with sexual activity among young adolescents in order to create effective and enforceable prevention programs[4-6], and in many countries these programs have already been activated[7-9]. In Italy, male sexual health has received growing attention in recent years and a previous study on young men has identified a number of risk factors for adolescents, highlighting a strong influence of body mass index (BMI) on skeletal proportions and penis length and identifying a large proportion of subjects with testicular hypotrophy at risk of future fertility problems[10]. A strong impetus to andrological health prevention was given by the campaign "Androlife". This was a project aimed mainly at young people with the aim of providing information, promoting prevention and collecting data. In this project, an anonymous questionnaire was administered to young participants selected among high school students. This paper focuses on just one section of this survey. In particular, we wanted to understand and analyze what young Italian males attending high school would like to ask andrologists but do not know how to or do not have the courage to do so.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Androlife campaign

Androlife is a project that has the following objectives: (1) to sensitize and to inform young people on general and andrological health; (2) to promote primary prevention of diseases, especially concerning the male reproductive system; (3) to collect information on the habits, lifestyles, general and sexual health status of young people through an anonymous questionnaire; and (4) to highlight pathological conditions detectable by a free medical examination performed only in volunteers.

To achieve these objectives the "Androlife team" organized social and cultural events, free clinics dedicated to andrological prevention, and interventions by specialists in high schools for students in their final year in order to inform, educate and provide a free medical preventive evaluation for those who wished it.

Patients and setting

A total of 1565 students attending the final year of high school in 2012-2013 in the Veneto Region of North-East Italy were enrolled in the study. All students, aged 18-19 years, attended an informative session held by a physician of the University of Padua. Of all participants, 1492 agreed to complete an anonymous survey. On a voluntary basis, 1083 participants then elected to undergo an on-site clinical examination. The study was approved by the local Ethics Committee with the protocol number 2208P.

Information session

The sessions focused on 5 main topics: sexually transmitted diseases, andrological diseases, lifestyle, drugs and alcohol and cybersex. For each topic, the specialist explained the risk factors, how to prevent them, how to take care of one's own health, the forms of self examination such as testicular self-examination, and possible solutions to existing problems. Students could also ask questions in public and/or ask further information in private on the topics covered.

Survey

The anonymous survey included a general family history and a number of questions on lifestyle, with particular attention to smoking, diet, physical activity and the use and, or, abuse of drugs. Moreover, a large section focused on sexual activity, such as number of partners, sexual orientation, use of condoms, and use and/or abuse of pornography on the web. Finally, the last section of the survey contained an empty space where each participant was invited to write questions they might have wanted to ask an andrologist but had never done so. This section represented the topic of this paper.

Visit

On-site clinical examination was aimed at collecting anthropometric and penile measurements that included: height, weight, BMI, waist circumference, arm span, pubis-to-floor and crown-to-pubis length, penis length, penis circumference and testicular examination.

RESULTS

Among 1492 subjects who completed the survey, 1184 provided a question that they had always wanted to ask a specialist but had never done so. Of these, 793 (67%) claimed to already know the word andrologist, but only 274 (23.1%) had already undergone an andrological check. After collecting all the questions, we clustered them into four main groups, taking into account the frequency with which questions were asked (Table 1): 475 (40.2%) adolescents had asked questions about sexuality and sexual activity, 242 (20.4%) about sexually transmitted diseases, 216 (18.2%) about andrological health and fertility, and 142 (12%) about lifestyle. A further 109 (9.2%) questions did not fit into one of these groups and were combined into a generic group. The first 3 clusters were further divided into subgroups. The first cluster on

Table 1 The main and most frequent questions of 1184 young Italian men *n* (%)

Sexuality and sexual activity	Masturbation	Is masturbation normal?
475 (40.2)	223 (46.9)	Can a frequent masturbation cause damage to the penis and/or to the body?
		Can masturbation be useful before a sexual intercourse?
		Can masturbation have negative effects on sports performance?
		Can masturbation reduce the risk of prostate cancer?
	Sexual intercourses	Which are the safest contraceptive methods?
	199 (41.9)	The oral sex cause oral cancer?
		Can anal sex be risky?
		What is the right age for the first sexual intercourse?
	Drugs for sex	Are there effective drugs to treat premature ejaculation?
	53 (11.2)	At what age can you use phosphodiesterase inhibitors?[1]
		Are there drugs to help penis growth?
		Are web products, to improve sexual performance, effective and safe?
Sexually transmitted diseases	HIV	Is HIV treatable?
242 (20.4)	95 (39.3)	Is a single sexual intercourse, with an HIV positive subject, enough to acquire the infection?
		Is HIV transmissible through masturbation?
		Why there is no cure for HIV?
	HPV	Is HPV a virus that can also affect men?
	79 (32.6)	How is HPV transmitted?
		Is it possible, and how, heal from HPV infection?
	Generic questions	Is the birth control pill effective against STD?
	68 (28.1)	Is sexual intercourse the only way of transmission of STD?
		What should you do in case of STD?
		Can those who have never had sexual intercourse have a STD?
Andrological health and fertility	Varicocele	How can I know if I have a varicocele?
216 (18.2)	91 (42.1)	Which are the effects of varicocele?
		Is always necessary to operate in case of varicocele?
		After the operation, may varicocele recur?
	Testicular tumours	Which are the symptoms of testicular cancer?
	80 (37.1)	Is it possible to prevent testicular cancer?
		Is it possible to heal from testicular cancer?
		Does testicular cancer always cause infertility?
	Generic questions	Does andropause exist? What age?
	45 (20.8)	Which are the consequences of testicular trauma?
		Is short frenulum dangerous?
		Can you return fertile after vasectomy?
Lifestyle	Can illicit drugs and alcohol interfere with sexual health?	
142 (12)	Does physical activity improve andrological health?	
	Is the use of androgens helpful or harmful to the andrological health?	
Generic questions	Can virginity be established for a man?	
109 (9.2)	Can web pornography cause addiction?	
	Has the partner a role in sexual desire?	
	To keep your cell phone in your pocket can damage fertility and or sexuality?	
	How can an issue of sexual orientation be addressed?	

[1]Students did not know the active ingredient of these drugs and, in the questions, they used the most famous trade names. HIV: Human immunodeficiency virus; STD: Sexually transmitted disease; HPV: Human papillomavirus virus.

sexuality and sexual activity was divided into masturbation, sexual intercourse and drug use for sex; the sexually transmitted diseases group into human immunodeficiency virus, human papillomavirus virus and into a third generic group; andrological health and fertility was divided into varicocele, testicular tumors, and a final generic one. Table 1 shows the main and most frequent questions that young men provided in the survey, while in Table 2 we have given short answers to the received questions.

DISCUSSION

Sexuality and sexual activity

The issue of sexuality is still a difficult topic to discuss with young people, and too little is being done to provide correct information to adolescents who are just starting to explore their sexuality. In this context, the Androlife campaign intended to be helpful to the largest number of young men not only in giving information but also in facilitating the promotion of health, and in particular andrological health. This campaign, aimed at high school students, highlighted, on the one hand, much interest and active participation by adolescents in the topic, and, on the other hand, a fundamental difficulty in dealing with these issues and a fundamental lack of knowledge of many basic facts on the part of the participants. The worst consequences are a lack of preventative measures, and a reliance on the web for addressing problems, with the result that such problems are not always approached properly, nor are they effectively solved. In this paper we have considered the main topics on which young men would like to receive information or clarification but do not know how to or where to find it. In particular, the largest number of questions was related to masturba-

Table 2 Answers to the most frequent questions of young Italian men

Sexuality and sexual activity	Yes, masturbation is normal
	Masturbation doesn't cause damage to the penis and/or to the body
	There is no evidence that masturbation is useful before sexual intercourse
	There is no evidence that masturbation has negative effects on sports performance
	It has not been demonstrated that masturbation reduces the risk of prostate cancer
	The safest considered contraceptives are condoms, the contraceptive pill and intrauterine devices
	The risk of cancer caused by oral sex is related to the transmission of HPV
	Anal sex can be risky due to the transmission of STD
	There isn't a "right age" for the first sexual intercourse because everyone reaches maturity at different ages
	There are effective drugs to treat premature ejaculation, but not all cases require drug treatment
	The clinic, not the age determine the use of phosphodiesterase inhibitors
	Drugs are useful for the growth of the genitals only in the case of some diseases (*e.g.*, certain hormone deficiencies)
	Is not safe, and often even effective, to rely on the web to improve sexual performance
Sexually transmitted diseases	HIV is treatable but not curable
	Even a single sexual intercourse, with an HIV positive subject, is enough to acquire the infection
	HIV is transmissible through masturbation only if the biological produced fluids come into contact with wounds
	The complexity of the virus causes the current treatment options to treat but not to heal from infection by HIV
	Yes, HPV can also affect men
	HPV is transmitted through all forms of sexual activity
	It is possible heal from HPV infection reducing risk factors (smoking, unprotected sex, low hygiene...)
	The birth control pill is absolutely not effective against STDs
	Sexual intercourse is not the only way of transmission of STD
	In case of STDs the first thing to do is consult a doctor as soon as possible
	STDs can also be present in people who have not had sex but have been in contact in other ways (*e.g.*, transfusions with infected blood)
Andrological health and fertility	A varicocele can be diagnosed by clinical examination or ultrasound
	A varicocele may be asymptomatic, present with scrotal symptoms or pains, and in some cases worse spermatogenesis and testicular function
	It is not always necessary to operate in the presence of a varicocele
	In some cases, after operation, varicocele may recur
	Symptoms of testicular cancer: presence of a mass, change in size, change in texture, scrotal and/or inguinal pain, scrotal weight feeling
	It is necessary to prevent testicular cancer
	Yes, it is possible to heal from testicular cancer
	If early treated, testicular cancer not always cause infertility
	There is no well-defined andropause but fertility and sexual potency decrease with age
	Severe testicular trauma may have consequences on testicular function and fertility
	A short frenulum is not dangerous and it is easily solved
	Regaining fertility after vasectomy is sometimes possible but difficult
Lifestyle	It is well established that drugs and alcohol negatively interfere with sexual health
	Physical activity is necessary to maintain and improve andrological health
	If not necessary, the use of androgens is harmful to the andrological health
Generic questions	Male virginity can not be established
	Yes, web pornography can cause addiction
	Yes, also the partner plays a very important role in sexual desire
	To date there are conflicting data on the role of cell phone on fertility and or sexuality
	It is good to deal with issues relating to sexual orientation with trained and professional doctors and psychologists

HIV: Human immunodeficiency virus; STD: Sexually transmitted disease; HPV: Human papillomavirus virus.

tion, denoting ignorance in this respect and highlighting widespread beliefs in popular myths. In fact, many young males are not aware of the fact that masturbation is integral to normal sexual development and that it represents a dynamic process during adolescence, and only compulsive masturbation should be considered a problem[11,12]. The other issue of great interest was, unsurprisingly, sexual intercourse. Interestingly, the main concern in this regard, was in contraceptives and methods for optimal performance, as well as about oral and anal sex while the risk of sexually transmitted disease (STD) did not seem to be prominent. Although previous studies have highlighted that there are a number of different pathways that may lead to either voluntary or involuntary adult sexual inexperience[13], it is more likely that many of the concerns voiced by the participants arise from actual voluntary practice, considering the growing proportion of adolescents engaged in oral and anal sex practices[14].

Sexually transmitted diseases

In our opinion, what should be worrisome is the lack of interest and concern displayed by the participants in STDs. In fact, the questions show that adolescents are poorly informed about the transmission pathways, consequences, and possible treatments for infections, and at the same time, they do not seem to give considerable thought to these issues. This observation is in agreement with the data collected by other authors who have highlighted the need for effective interventions to reduce adolescent STD infection[15]. Moreover, STDs also represent

the most significant modifiable risk factors for this age group with regard to fertility[16]. This topic does not seem to be a priority for adolescents, but this may only be the consequence of a lack of sexual health education and not of indifference toward these issues.

Andrological health and fertility

STDs do not seem to be of great interest, but when made aware of these issues, students expressed the will to learn more both in terms of the most common diseases and of those they are more afraid of, such as varicoceles and testicular tumors. A varicocele is one of the most common pathologies but despite numerous studies concerning its evaluation and treatment, uncertainties remain. Both overtreatment and undertreatment are particularly costly. Expensive ultrasound, office visits and surgery must be avoided in those who do not need these treatments, while a careful follow-up and eventual intervention must be guaranteed to subjects who may be in need of them[17]. Another disease of great interest to students is testicular cancer, which represents the most common malignancy in young men, with the highest incidence among men in Nordic countries. Known risk factors are cryptorchidism, a previous history of testicular cancer and a family history of testicular cancer, and early detection and appropriate treatment are the only methods to decrease mortality[18,19]. In fact, if adequately treated and followed up it represents the most curable solid tumour and survival rate exceeds 90% in young males[20]. Unfortunately, the majority of young males is not aware of this information, which is critical for successful health prevention. Therefore, this survey, in accordance with data collected by other authors, underscores the continued need for comprehensive sexual and reproductive health education for adolescents and young adults[21].

Lifestyle

A widespread social problem all over the world is the use and abuse of alcohol and illicit drugs[22]. This represents the main topic of lifestyle in which young people are involved and on which they focus their interest, and prevention and treatment efforts would benefit from more careful attention in preventive health programs. Another matter to consider is physical activity during adolescence. The long-term benefits of habitual physical activity are recognized[23], but it is necessary to inform adolescents about the risks of using doping substances, particularly considering the increased consumption of such substances by young people who practice sport[24,25].

Generic questions

In the last cluster, we collected less frequent but perhaps more topical and current questions asked by the participants. In addition to the issue about the possible negative effects of the use of mobile phones on fertility, questions asked by participants were commonly questions to which there are conflicting answers[26], and questions on topics of interest concerning web pornography and sexual orientation. Web pornography is a phenomenon of such increasing interest as to be defined by some authors as the new sexual revolution[27]. To date, a number of studies have highlighted the reasons why web pornography has such widespread use, and considered the characteristics of this new form of sexuality[28,29]. However, no one has yet taken into account the possible negative effects of the use or abuse of web pornography in terms of an increase or decrease in interest in real sexuality and in real sexual intercourse. Sexual orientation represents a difficult topic for adolescents to bring up, particularly because of the family and social context in Italy. It is demonstrated that homosexual young people face different developmental challenges during adolescence than those faced by heterosexual youths or individuals who recognize their homosexual orientation later in life[30]. Though sexuality has acquired new dimensions in many countries including Italy, religions and cultures consider sexuality almost exclusively as focused on reproduction[31]. Hence, there exists a difficulty for young people to deal with the issue of sexual orientation and therefore, the necessity to provide an adequate and qualified service for information and assistance. In conclusion, this study highlights not only that young people are very interested in general health issues, but also that they have very specific needs and interests on sexual health and sexual health information. In our opinion, public education campaigns such as Androlife should be increased in number and frequency and improved on the basis of the view of young participants. Sexual and reproductive health education and promotion for adolescents and young adults represents the basis both for wellness and for fertility preservation. Finally, the benefits of increased support for educational campaigns would be apparent not only in terms of individual health but also in terms of a reduction in public spending costs.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The authors thank Dr. Pelizzon Alessandro, School of Law and Justice, Southern Cross University-East Lismore NSW 2480-Australia, for his kindly and careful editing.

COMMENTS

Background

Sexual activity, sexual health and sexual disorders are open issues and current problems especially among adolescents.

Innovations and breakthroughs

This study highlights not only that young people are very interested in general health issues, but also that they have very specific needs and interests on sexual health and sexual health information.

Applications

This is an interesting and meaningful topic which brings attention to the health care providers and raises public awareness for the importance of education in reproductive health.

Peer review

This is an interesting and meaningful topic.

REFERENCES

1 **Kalmuss D**, Austrian K. Real men do...real men don't:

Young Latino and African American men's discourses regarding sexual health care utilization. *Am J Mens Health* 2010; **4**: 218-230 [PMID: 19477755 DOI: 10.1177/1557988309331797]
2 **Shoveller J**, Knight R, Davis W, Gilbert M, Ogilvie G. Online sexual health services: examining youth's perspectives. *Can J Public Health* 2012; **103**: 14-18 [PMID: 22338322]
3 **Pinkhasov RM**, Wong J, Kashanian J, Lee M, Samadi DB, Pinkhasov MM, Shabsigh R. Are men shortchanged on health? Perspective on health care utilization and health risk behavior in men and women in the United States. *Int J Clin Pract* 2010; **64**: 475-487 [PMID: 20456194 DOI: 10.1111/j.1742-1241.2009.02290.x]
4 **Marston M**, Beguy D, Kabiru C, Cleland J. Predictors of sexual debut among young adolescents in Nairobi's informal settlements. *Int Perspect Sex Reprod Health* 2013; **39**: 22-31 [PMID: 23584465 DOI: 10.1363/3902213]
5 **Shoveller JA**, Knight R, Johnson J, Oliffe JL, Goldenberg S. 'Not the swab!' Young men's experiences with STI testing. *Sociol Health Illn* 2010; **32**: 57-73 [PMID: 20415807 DOI: 10.1111/j.1467-9566.2009.01222.x]
6 **Kimmel A**, Williams TT, Veinot TC, Campbell B, Campbell TR, Valacak M, Kruger DJ. 'I make sure I am safe and I make sure I have myself in every way possible': African-American youth perspectives on sexuality education. *Sex Educ* 2013; **13**: 172-185 [PMID: 23585729 DOI: 10.1080/14681811.2012.709840]
7 **Carvalho FT**, Gonçalves TR, Faria ER, Shoveller JA, Piccinini CA, Ramos MC, Medeiros LR. Behavioral interventions to promote condom use among women living with HIV. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2011; (**9**): CD007844 [PMID: 21901711]
8 **Story M**, Nanney MS, Schwartz MB. Schools and obesity prevention: creating school environments and policies to promote healthy eating and physical activity. *Milbank Q* 2009; **87**: 71-100 [PMID: 19298416 DOI: 10.1111/j.1468-0009.2009.00548.x]
9 **Khan LK**, Sobush K, Keener D, Goodman K, Lowry A, Kakietek J, Zaro S. Recommended community strategies and measurements to prevent obesity in the United States. *MMWR Recomm Rep* 2009; **58**: 1-26 [PMID: 19629029]
10 **Foresta C**, Garolla A, Frigo AC, Carraro U, Isidori AM, Lenzi A, Ferlin A. Anthropometric, penile and testis measures in post-pubertal Italian males. *J Endocrinol Invest* 2013; **36**: 287-292 [PMID: 22776895]
11 **Robbins CL**, Schick V, Reece M, Herbenick D, Sanders SA, Dodge B, Fortenberry JD. Prevalence, frequency, and associations of masturbation with partnered sexual behaviors among US adolescents. *Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med* 2011; **165**: 1087-1093 [PMID: 21810625 DOI: 10.1001/archpediatrics.2011.142]
12 **Calabrò RS**, Galì A, Marino S, Bramanti P. Compulsive masturbation and chronic penile lymphedema. *Arch Sex Behav* 2012; **41**: 737-739 [PMID: 21792689 DOI: 10.1007/s10508-011-9812-7]
13 **Haydon AA**, Cheng MM, Herring AH, McRee AL, Halpern CT. Prevalence and predictors of sexual inexperience in adulthood. *Arch Sex Behav* 2014; **43**: 221-230 [PMID: 23900992 DOI: 10.1007/s10508-013-0164-3]
14 **Cherie A**, Berhane Y. Oral and anal sex practices among high school youth in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia. *BMC Public Health* 2012; **12**: 5 [PMID: 22216887 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2458-12-5]
15 **Newbern EC**, Anschuetz GL, Eberhart MG, Salmon ME, Brady KA, De Los Reyes A, Baker JM, Asbel LE, Johnson CC, Schwarz DF. Adolescent sexually transmitted infections and risk for subsequent HIV. *Am J Public Health* 2013; **103**: 1874-1881 [PMID: 23947325 DOI: 10.2105/AJPH.2013.301463]
16 **Remes O**, Whitten AN, Sabarre KA, Phillips KP. University students' perceptions of environmental risks to infertility. *Sex Health* 2012; **9**: 377-383 [PMID: 22877598 DOI: 10.1071/SH11090]
17 **Kolon TF**. The adolescent varicocele--a Shakespearean tragedy or much ado about nothing? *J Urol* 2013; **189**: 2024-2025 [PMID: 23500035]
18 **Manecksha RP**, Fitzpatrick JM. Epidemiology of testicular cancer. *BJU Int* 2009; **104**: 1329-1333 [PMID: 19840008 DOI: 10.1111/j.1464-410X.2009.08854.x]
19 **Ondrusova M**, Ondrus D. Epidemiology and treatment delay in testicular cancer patients: a retrospective study. *Int Urol Nephrol* 2008; **40**: 143-148 [PMID: 17634758 DOI: 10.1007/s11255-007-9245-3]
20 **Travis LB**, Beard C, Allan JM, Dahl AA, Feldman DR, Oldenburg J, Daugaard G, Kelly JL, Dolan ME, Hannigan R, Constine LS, Oeffinger KC, Okunieff P, Armstrong G, Wiljer D, Miller RC, Gietema JA, van Leeuwen FE, Williams JP, Nichols CR, Einhorn LH, Fossa SD. Testicular cancer survivorship: research strategies and recommendations. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2010; **102**: 1114-1130 [PMID: 20585105 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/djq216]
21 **Sabarre KA**, Khan Z, Whitten AN, Remes O, Phillips KP. A qualitative study of Ottawa university students' awareness, knowledge and perceptions of infertility, infertility risk factors and assisted reproductive technologies (ART). *Reprod Health* 2013; **10**: 41 [PMID: 23962162 DOI: 10.1186/1742-4755-10-41]
22 **Swendsen J**, Burstein M, Case B, Conway KP, Dierker L, He J, Merikangas KR. Use and abuse of alcohol and illicit drugs in US adolescents: results of the National Comorbidity Survey-Adolescent Supplement. *Arch Gen Psychiatry* 2012; **69**: 390-398 [PMID: 22474107 DOI: 10.1001/archgenpsychiatry.2011.1503]
23 **Duckham RL**, Baxter-Jones AD, Johnston JD, Vatanparast H, Cooper D, Kontulainen S. Does physical activity in adolescence have site-specific and sex-specific benefits on young adult bone size, content, and estimated strength? *J Bone Miner Res* 2014; **29**: 479-486 [PMID: 23907819 DOI: 10.1002/jbmr.2055]
24 **El Scheich T**, Weber AA, Klee D, Schweiger D, Mayatepek E, Karenfort M. Adolescent ischemic stroke associated with anabolic steroid and cannabis abuse. *J Pediatr Endocrinol Metab* 2013; **26**: 161-165 [PMID: 23382306 DOI: 10.1515/jpem-2012-0057]
25 **Fürhapter C**, Blank C, Leichtfried V, Mair-Raggautz M, Müller D, Schobersberger W. Evaluation of West-Austrian junior athletes' knowledge regarding doping in sports. *Wien Klin Wochenschr* 2013; **125**: 41-49 [DOI: 10.1007/s00508-012-0318-7]
26 **Merhi ZO**. Challenging cell phone impact on reproduction: a review. *J Assist Reprod Genet* 2012; **29**: 293-297 [PMID: 22350528 DOI: 10.1007/s10815-012-9722-1]
27 **Garlick S**. A new sexual revolution? Critical theory, pornography, and the Internet. *Can Rev Sociol* 2011; **48**: 221-239 [PMID: 22214041]
28 **Daneback K**, Ross MW. The complexity of internet sexuality. *Adv Psychosom Med* 2011; **31**: 121-134 [PMID: 22005208 DOI: 10.1159/000328920]
29 **Ross MW**. Typing, doing, and being: sexuality and the internet. *J Sex Res* 2005; **42**: 342-352 [PMID: 19827239 DOI: 10.1080/00224490509552290]
30 **Rotheram-Borus MJ**, Fernandez MI. Sexual orientation and developmental challenges experienced by gay and lesbian youths. *Suicide Life Threat Behav* 1995; **25** Suppl: 26-34; discussion 35-39 [PMID: 8553426]
31 **Benagiano G**, Carrara S, Filippi V. Social and ethical determinants of sexuality: 4. Sexuality and families. *Eur J Contracept Reprod Health Care* 2012; **17**: 329-339 [PMID: 22974432 DOI: 10.3109/13625187.2012.702810]

P- Reviewer: Nowicki S, Zhao Y **S- Editor**: Wen LL
L- Editor: Cant MR **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Clinical Cases

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.12998/wjcc.v2.i10.552

World J Clin Cases 2014 October 16; 2(10): 552-564
ISSN 2307-8960 (online)

SYSTEMATIC REVIEWS

Reporting of dental status from full-arch radiographs: Descriptive analysis and methodological aspects

Fabian Huettig, Detlef Axmann

Fabian Huettig, Detlef Axmann, Department of Prosthodontics with Section "Medical Materials and Technology" at the Centre of Dentistry, Oral Medicine, Maxillofacial Surgery of Eberhard-Karls-University Hospital, D-72076 Tuebingen, Germany
Author contributions: Huettig F and Axmann D established the search strategy, selection criteria and methodology of report; Huettig F performed the literature research, selected the articles and performed the full text review; Axmann D reviewed the data aquisiton by spot tests; Huettig F wrote and Axmann D reviewed the paper.

Supported by The "Walter and Anna Koerner-Scholarship" as part of the Land of Baden-Wurttemberg's Dentists Chamber (Stuttgart, Germany) within the cooperation of Tuebingen University and Peking University Dental Schools; by Mrs. Barbara Welder of Dental Clinics Library at Eberhard-Karls-University (Tuebingen, Germany); by Lucas M Leister for English proofreading
Correspondence to: Dr. Fabian Hüttig, Department of Prosthodontics with Section "Medical Materials and Technology" at the Centre of Dentistry, Oral Medicine, Maxillofacial Surgery of Eberhard-Karls-University Hospital, Osianderstrasse 2-8, D-72076 Tuebingen, Germany. fabian.huettig@med.uni-tuebingen.de
Telephone: +49-7071-2986183 Fax: +49-7071-295917
Received: April 10, 2014 Revised: July 11, 2014
Accepted: August 27, 2014
Published online: October 16, 2014

Abstract

AIM: To identify standards, how entities of dental status are assessed and reported from full-arch radiographs of adults.

METHODS: A PubMed (Medline) search was performed in November 2011. Literature had to report at least one out of four defined entities using radiographs: number of teeth or implants; caries, fillings or restorations; root-canal fillings and apical health; alveolar bone level. Cohorts included to the study had to be of adult age. Methods of radiographic assessment were noted and checked for the later mode of report in text, tables or diagrams. For comparability, the encountered mode of report was operationalized to a logical expression.

RESULTS: Thirty-seven out of 199 articles were evaluated *via* full-text review. Only one article reported all four entities. Eight articles reported at the maximum 3 comparable entities. However, comparability is impeded because of the usage of absolute or relative frequency, mean or median values as well as grouping. Furthermore the methods of assessment were different or not described sufficiently. Consequently, established sum scores turned out to be highly questionable, too. The amount of missing data within all studies remained unclear. It is even so remissed to mention supernumerary and aplased teeth as well as the count of third molars.

CONCLUSION: Data about dental findings from radiographs is, if at all possible, only comparable with serious limitations. A standardization of both, assessing and reporting entities of dental status from radiographs is missing and has to be established within a report guideline.

Key words: Research design; Guideline; Dental radiography; Epidemiology; Public health; EQUATOR

Core tip: Full mouth dental radiographs are in worldwide daily use and contain various informations about dental and oral health of adult patients. This is why it is often used for epidemiologic research or to augment clinical data. But, when reported, data is presented in multifarious ways. Thus no or only little comparison of research outcome is possible. Existing standards of evaluation and reporting should be fixed in a reporting guideline regarding: number of teeth and implants; caries, fillings and restorations; root-canal fillings and apical health; alveolar bone level. Application of sum scores turned out to be very questionable.

Huettig F, Axmann D. Reporting of dental status from full-arch

radiographs: Descriptive analysis and methodological aspects. *World J Clin Cases* 2014; 2(10): 552-564 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2307-8960/full/v2/i10/552.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.12998/wjcc.v2.i10.552

INTRODUCTION

Beside diagnosis support, X-rays are an established method to follow up treatments with surrogate characteristics, such as: bone loss in implantology, periodontology and maxillo-facial surgery, or apical flare up and loss of teeth in endodontology, or caries prevalence in operative dentistry.

Moreover, it is used for assessment of skeletal changes focussing orthodontic or temporo-mandibular-disorders. It is even possible to find approaches of forensic medicine, *i.e.*, for non-invasive age determination *via* orthopantomograms.

The quality of panoramic radiographs has enhanced during the last years. Namely their sensitivity and specifity to diagnose findings, as mentioned before, is considered to be satisfying. Problems of underestimation are discussed commonly. Nevertheless, determining oral health by radiographic presentable dimensions of the dental status is possible. That is why panoramic radiographs are often used for epidemiologic and retrospective analysis of dental status and oral health respectively. Recently, a review subsumed the competence and application of panoramic radiographs for epidemiologic studies of oral health[1]. However, it remains uncertain, whether standards are established to report radiographic findings which describe dental status or oral health data in general. No results, neither in Pubmed/Medline, EQUATOR-Network (www.equator-network.com) or Cochrane Library could be identified searching a relevant guideline. Therefore, this systematic review was launched, to find out, which approaches are commonly used, to assess and report the entities: decay, missing, restorative, endodontic and periodontal status as surrogate dimensions of oral health (Table 1).

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Search and identification/inclusion and exclusion

A Medline/PubMed search was performed for articles reporting findings from full arch radiographs, focused on oral health and dental status of adults. This search was conducted in November 2011. No time limit was set. Panoramic X-ray or a full-mouth radiographic survey with periapical radiographs of all remaining teeth were definied as "Full arch radiograph". In the following, the term "radiograph" will be only used in this sense.

To find and include such papers the following search-string was constructed stepwise and applied finally as: ("radiographic study" or "panoramic") and ("oral health" or "dental status" or "dental health" or "dentition") not (children OR review OR edentulous)

The following inclusion and exclusion criteria were set for a full text review of findings: All peer-reviewed reports with dental findings obtained from full arch radiographs are included, even if there had been additional clinical examination or patient chart reviews. These reports had to focus on at least one surrogate of "dental status" or "oral health" (Table 1), whereas reports handling edentulous or partially edentulous patients were disregarded.

Only articles written in English were included. Studied cohorts had to be of adult age, respectively the mean age had to be at least 18 years.

If it was not determinable in the abstract, which kind of radiography was applied or which variables of dental status were reported, the article was included to full-text review.

Excluded was all literature handling radiometric issues only [*i.e.*, bone density, cephalometric angles of jaw and joint, subjected to soft-tissues (carotis, lymphal-nodes)] or focusing on specific teeth/tooth types only (such as caries in third molars) as well as anthropologic analysis. Articles were also excluded, if they turned out to report on the basis of bitewing radiographs or specific single radiographs to fulfill their objective.

Definition of variables of interest

Every previously included paper was reviewed towards the report of at least one out of the following eight variables (I a-Ⅳ), which reflect the surrogates listed in Table 1. If inclusion was validated, information about: (1) Bibliography and focus of study; (2) Number of patients studied and country of origin; (3) Number and kind of radiographs studied was noted first. Then the materials and method section (MMS) and results were checked for the following 8 variables of interest: I a: remaining/missing teeth (also included in DMFT/S); I b: implants or implant-loss; Ⅱ a: fillings (also included in DMFT/S); Ⅱ b: decay/caries (also included in DMFT/S); Ⅱ c: restorations (*i.e.*, crowns); Ⅲ a: root canal treatment; Ⅲ b: apical status; Ⅳ: alveolar bone level on teeth or implants.

These variables were recorded by their mode of report. Further statistical analyses applied to these variables within the articles were disregarded, due to the different focus of the studies. Regarding the application of these variables, it was noted if additional arrangements, exclusion or inclusion criteria towards the report were mentioned by the authors. For example: how to handle the "third molars", supernumerary teeth or teeth not depicted clearly on radiographs.

If a variable was mentioned in the section "methods" but not reported, it was mentioned not reported "(NR)". If a variable was not mentioned within the method section, it was noted as not defined "(ND)". Furthermore it was recorded, if the authors applied a special method of evaluation and how it was described or whom they cited. A "?" was assigned to indicate an assumption by the reviewers throughout the data, whenever there was no clear statement within the context of the article. For lon-

Table 1 Entities of dental status and their surrogates in oral health: Left column notes the entities of dental status, which can be assessed from a full-arch radiograph

Focused entities	Subject of clinical dentistry	Surrogate of oral health
Alveolar bone loss, furcation and vertical bony defects	Periodontology, implantology	Periodontitis/inflammation, risk of tooth loss
Fillings/inlays	Operative dentistry	Oral hygiene, caries, decay, risk for massive fillings/partial crowns
Massive filling/partial crown	Operative dentistry, prosthodontics	Risk of root canal treatment, risk for crown-treatment
Crowns and fixed dental prosthesis/ pontics	Prosthodontics, periodontology	Massive decay (even of healthy teeth), risen risk for caries and endodontic problems, risk for bone loss and fracture (missing teeth), missing teeth
Root canal filling and root posts	Operative dentistry, endodontology, prosthodontics	High number of life events of intervention, risk of tooth loss by fracture/ inflammation, need for crown
Apical lesion	Endodontology, oral surgery	High risk of tooth loss, poor root canal treatment, inflammation
Missing teeth	Prosthodontics, implantology	High number of life events of interventions, former inflammations, trauma, hypodontia, malocclussion
Implants	Periodontology, prosthodontics	Missing teeth, higher risk for inflammation (periimplantitis), occlusal rehabilitation
Edentoulism	Prosthodontics, oral surgery	High number of life events, no further risk of odontogenic inflammation (caries, periodontitis, apical lesions)

Their possible relation as a surrogate of oral health is shown in the right column. The involved subjects of Dental Medicine are noted in the middle column. Reading the table from top to down, it has to be considered, that surrogates include content of cells above.

gitudinal studies, the different comparisons between the dates of results were not considered, as far as no other way of report was applied. Information about removable dentures had been neglected, because these are generally not allowed to be seen on radiographs at all. If results of a study or cohort were published twice, first, the longer observation period and, secondly, the higher impact factor in year of publication gave favor for inclusion.

Operationalization of findings

The report of variables I to Ⅳ was reduced to a simple logic expression. Every expression, shown in Table 2, can be translated with the following "keys-words" and abbreviations: "ND" or "NR" indicates "not defined" or "not reported".

"N" = "number"; "[]" = "of/in"; "()" = "expressed as"; "/" = "by presenting values"; "," = "and"; "+" = "with"; "G" = "in group (s)"; "F" = frequency, "%" = percentage, "SD" = standard deviation, "Q" = quartiles, "rg" = range, "al" = "all patients/teeth/surfaces", "tot" = "total", "pat" = "patient(s)", "grades" = "declared graduation or scaling of measurements", "FDP" = "fixed dental prosthesis".

Variable I refers to "r" = remaining, "m" = missing or "f" = lost/failed teeth. Variables Ⅱ-Ⅳ always refer to affected patients, teeth, lesions, surfaces or sites. Following groups were standardized: age, gender, jaw, tooth-type, age-group, grades (of a previously defined classification).

If authors introduce special groupings (*i.e.*, diseased/ healthy, baseline/follow-up and so on), it was abbreviated "spec" for "special". This was mandatory due to the different outcome-variables of the studies.

For dental terms following abbreviations were used: "ABL" = "alveolar bone level/loss", "apH" = "apical health", "RCF" = "root canal filled", "FDI" = "FDI-tooth code", "FDP" = "fixed dental prosthesis".

Two examples of this operationalization: The following expression in the column "Ⅱb Caries/Decay": "N[surface](mean, SD)[pat]/G[age, gender]" is translated to "The number of carious surfaces is expressed as mean and standard deviation in a patient, by presenting values in groups of age and gender".

Another exemplary expression in the column "Ⅲa RCT" is "N[pat + teeth](F)" translated to "Number of patients with affected teeth is expressed as frequency".

Subsumption

All included papers were ordered according to their objective. Bibliography as well as number and origin of patients were described by frequency distributions. To discuss the consistency, the findings were subsumed for all papers towards each entity of interest. Therefore cited methods of radiographic evaluation were full-text reviewed, as far as these were written in English or German and obtainable *via* library services.

RESULTS

Following Figure 1, thirty-seven studies were evaluated and can be found in Table 2.

The years of publication of all results are shown in Figure 2. In whole 27447 (median = 191) X-rays have been evaluated and reported within 37 studies including 27772 (median = 215) patients. Figure 3 shows the shares of patients towards their origin. Ninety-four percent of the patients studied were from United States and Europe.

For nine journals no Impact Factor (IF) was noted at *Journal Citation Report* (JCR) of "Web of Knowledge" (www.webofknowledge.com). The 5-year IF in 2010 of all JCR-listed and evaluated journals was median = 2.23, range: 0.89-6.39, SD = 1.16. So the included articles represent an extract of high ranked journals, regarding an average IF of about 1.3 (median = 1.2, mean = 1.5) for

Table 2 Evaluated articles and encountered mode of report: All full-text reviewed articles are sorted by the year of publication

Ref.	Number of X-rays evaluated	Ⅰa: Number of teeth	Ⅱa: Fillings	Ⅱb: Caries	Ⅱc: Restorations	Ⅲa: RCF	Ⅲb: apF	Ⅳ: ABL
Helenius-Hietala *et al*[17] 2011[b]	212	N[r-teeth](mean,SD)[pat]	ND	N[pat] (mean)/G[spec]	ND	ND	NR	mm(mean,SD)/pat; meanABL[pat]/G[spec]; N[teeth+G[ABL]] (mean,SD)/G[spec]
Yoshihara *et al*[40] 2011[a]	177	N[r-teeth](mean,SD)[pat]/G[spec,gender]	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND
Andersen *et al*[28] 2011[b]	52	N[r-teeth](mean,SD, median,Q)[pat]/G(age)	ND	ND	ND	Combined: N[teeth](mean,SD,median,Q)[pat]/G[age]; N[teeth](F,%)[toothtype]/G[age]		ND
Seppänen *et al*[18] 2011[b]	84	N[r-teeth](median,rg)[pat]	ND	N[pat](F,%)[all pat], G[spec]	ND	ND	ND	N[pat](F)[ND]/G[spec]
Willershausen *et al*[9] 2011[d]	2374?	N[r-teeth](mean?)/G[age,spec], N[m-teeth](mean)/G[age]	N[teeth](mean,SD)[pat]/G[spec], N[pat](%)/G[age]	N[teeth](mean,SD)[pat]/G[spec], N[pat](%)/G[age]	N[teeth](mean,SD)[pat]/G[spec]; N[pat](%)/G[age]	N[teeth](mean,SD)[pat]/G[spec], N[pat](%)/G[age]	ND	ND
Kirkevang *et al*[22] 2009[b]	470	N[r-teeth](median,rg)[pat]/G[age]	N[teeth+1,2,3 surfaces](median,range)[pat]/G[age,toothtype]	N[teeth](median,rg)[pat]/G[age,tooth-type]	ND	ND	ND	ND
Saeves *et al*[10] 2009[d]	93	N[m-teeth](mean)[pat]/G[age,spec]	N[teeth](mean)[pat]/G[age,spec]	ND	"Some"	N[teeth](%)[all teeth]; N[pat](F)[spec]	ND	ND
Tarkkila *et al*[13] 2008[b]	161	N[r-teeth](mean,SD)[pat]/G[spec]	Combined with clinical examination: N[DMFT,DT,FT](mean,SD)[pat]/G[spec]		ND	NR	NR	ND
Buhlin *et al*[49] 2007[b]	51	N[r-teeth](mean,SD)[pat]/G[spec,all]	N[DMFS](mean,SD)[pat]/G[spec,all]; N[DMFT](mean,SD)[pat]/G[spec,all]		ND	ND	N[lesions](F,%)[pat]/G[spec]	N[pat](F,%)/G[grade]
Nalçaci *et al*[26] 2007[d]	190	N[r-,m-teeth](mean,SD)[pat]/G[gender,tooth-type]	N[teeth](median,SD)[pat]/G[gender,all]	N[teeth](median,SD)[pat]/G[gender,all]	N[FPD](F,%)/G[gender,jaw] N[teeth](SD,median)[pat]	N[teeth](median,SD)[pat]/G[gender,all]	N[teeth](median,SD)[pat]/G[gender,all]	N[pat](median, SD)[ND ABL]/G[gender]
Huumonen *et al*[3] 2007[b]	95	N[m-teeth](F)/G[spec]	ND	N[teeth](F)/G[spec]; N[findings?](F)/G[spec]	ND	N[teeth](F)/G[spec]	N[teeth](F)/G[spec];	N[pat](F)/G[spec]
Jansson *et al*[36] 2006[c]	191?	N[r-teeth](mean,SD)[pat]/G[spec]	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	N[pat](F)/G[spec]
Tabrizi *et al*[11] 2006[c]	20	N[r-teeth](F,mean,SD)[pat]	N[DMFS,DMFT](mean,SD)[pat]/G[spec]		Included to DMFT?	ND	ND	ABL(mean)[pat]
Skudutyte-Rysstad *et al*[30] 2006[d]	146	ND	ND	ND	ND	N[pat+tooth](F,%)[all]; N[pat]/N[teeth](F); N[teeth](F,%)/G[spec]	N[pat+tooth](F,%)[all]; N[teeth](F)[grade]; N[pat]/N[teeth](F); N[teeth](F,%)[all]/G[spec]	ND
Peltola *et al*[31] 2006[a]	307	NR *via* DMFT	NR *via* DMFT N[pat](F)[DMFT = 0]/G[spec]	N[lesions](mean,SD)[pat]/G[spec]	ND	N[teeth](mean,SD)[pat]/G[spec]	N[lesions](mean,SD)[pat]/G[spec]	NR

Ma *et al*[2] 2005[a]	1232	N[pat+m-teeth](%)/ G[tooth-type]; N[m-teeth](%)[tooth-type]	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND
Olze *et al*[14] 2005[d]	275	NR	NR	NR	ND	ND	ND	ND
Cabrera *et al*[4] 2005c	1417	N[pat](F)/G[m-teeth,spec]	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND
Rosenquist *et al*[5] 2005[b]	452	N[pat](F)[G[m-teeth]/ G[spec]		N[pat](F)[G[m-teeth]/G(spec)		ND	N[pat](F)[teeth]/G[spec]	N[pat](F)[grade]/G(spec)
Montebugnoli *et al*[44] 2004[c]	113	NR *via* pantomography index	ND	NR *via* Pantomography index	ND	ND	NR	NR
Abou-Raya *et al*[46] 2002[a]	50	N[pat+m-teeth](%)/ G[spec]	ND	NR *via* Pantomography index	ND	ND	NR *via* pantomography index	NR *via* pantomography index
Enberg *et al*[21] 2001[a]	137?	N[r-teeth] (mean,SD)[pat]/ G[gender,age,spec]	ND	N[teeth](mean,SD)[pat]/ G[gender,age,spec]	ND	N[teeth](mean,SD)[pat]/ G[gender,age,spec]	N[teeth](mean,SD)[pat]/ G[gender,age,spec]	N[teeth](F,%)[pat]/ G[gender,age-group,spec]
Närhi *et al*[6] 2000[a]	396	N[pat+r-teeth]; N[r-teeth] (mean,SD)[pat]/ G[gender,jaw,spec]	ND	N[teeth]; N[teeth] (mean,SD)[pat]/ G[gender,spec]	ND	absN[teeth], N[teeth](mean,SD)[pat]/ G[gender,spec]	N[teeth], N[teeth](mean,SD)[pat]/ G[gender,jaw,spec]	N[teeth](mean,SD)[pat,grade] /G[gender, spec]
Aartman *et al*[43] 1999[a]	211	N[r-teeth] (mean,SD)[pat]/ G[spec]	ND	N[teeth](mean,SD) [pat]/ G[spec]	ND	N[teeth](mean,SD)[pat]/ G[spec]	ND	ND
Taylor *et al*[38] 1998[b]	362	N[r-teeth?](median)/ G[spec]	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND	N[pat](F,%)[grades]/G[spec, age-group];
Grau *et al*[48] 1997[c]	126	NR *via* pantomography index	ND	NR *via* pantomography index	ND	NR *via* pantomography index	NR *via* pantomography index	NR *via* pantomography index
Peltola *et al*[19] 1993[c]	990?	N[pat](%)[DMFT = 0]	N[DMF](mean,SD)[pat]/ G[age]	N[teeth](mean,SD,rg)[pat]	ND	N[pat](%)	N[pat](%)	N[pat+ND G[ABL]](F,%)
Hakeberg *et al*[33] 1993[c]	180	N[m-teeth] (mean,SD,rg)[pat]/ G[spec,gender,age]	N[surfaces](mean,SD,rg)[pat]/G[spec, gender,age]	N[surfaces](mean,SD,rg) [pat]/G[spec,gender,age]	ND	N[m-teeth] (mean,SD,rg)[pat]/ G[spec,gender,age]	N[lesions](mean,SD,rg)[pat] /G[spec,gender,age]	N[lesions](mean)[pat]/ G[grade,spec]
Corbet *et al*[24] 1992[b]	165	N[m-teeth] (mean,SD)[pat]/G[age]; N[m-teeth](%)[FDI]	ND	ND	N[pontics,cantilever,crowns](%)[FDI]; N[FPD](%)[units]; N[units,retainers](mean,SD)[all FPD]	ND	ND	ND
Lindqvist *et al*[15] 1989[d]	50	N[r-teeth](mean,rg)[pat]		N[pat+"seriously decayed teeth"](F,%)		N[teeth,pat](F); N["Inadequate" RCF](F,%)	N[pat](F)/G[lesions]	N[pat](F,%)/ G["periodontits"]; N[pat?](F)[spec]
Stermer Beyer-Olsen *et al*[37] 1989[c]	141	ND	ND	ND	ND	N[teeth](F), N[pat](F,%)	N[teeth,RCF-teeth](F), N[pat](F,%)	N[pat](F,%)
Grover *et al*[7] 1982[a]	5000	N[pat](F,%)/G[m-teeth]		Combined for all carious as N[findings,pat](F,%)		ND	N[findings,pat](F,%)	N[pat+G[periodontits]](F,%)
Langland *et al*[16] 1980[b]	2921	ND	ND	N[pat+lesion?](F,%)	N[pat+FPD](F,%)	N[pat+tooth](F,%)	N[pat+lesion?](F,%)	N[pat+G[periodontits]](F,%)
Meister *et al*[25] 1977[b]	5783	ND	ND	ND	N[pat+FPD](F,%)	ND	N[findings](F,%)	N[pat+G[periodontits]](%)

Pelton *et al*[20] 1973[d]	200	ND	ND	N[findings](F)/ G[jaw,spec]	ND	ND	ND	ND
Christen *et al*[27] 1967[b]	1338	ND	ND	ND	"Many ill fitting crowns"	ND	N[pat+tooth](F)	N[pat+"gross periodontits"](F,%)
Lilly *et al*[8] 1967[d]	1285	N[pat](F,%)/G[r-teeth]	ND	ND	ND	N[teeth](F)/G[tooth-type]; N[pat,canals](F)	N[teeth](F)G[spec]	ND

The date is followed by a discretionary index for the 5 year Impact Factor of the journal in 2010 (a < 1.5; b < 3; c > 3; d: None). Please see caption: Operationalization of findings in "Materials and Methods" section to decipher content in columns Ⅰa-Ⅳ. Column Ⅱb "Implants" is not shown for a comprehensive view and due to the lack of noteworthy reports. RCF: Root-canal-fillings; apF: Apical findings; ABL: Alveolar bone loss; ND: Not defined; NR: Not reported.

Dental Journals listed in the JCR in 2011.

All modes of report are shown-according to the scheme of operationalization-in Table 2. The following subheadings subsume these findings and focus on the methodic of radiographic assessment.

Missing/remaining teeth and implants

Thirty/37 (81%) of all studies reported remaining and/or missing teeth. Four articles intended a report of these values within their material and method section, but did not so. Beside mean-and median values, two artificial approaches were found: Ma *et al*[2] reported the prevalence of missing tooth types (first molars). Other authors gave the number of absolute frequency of missing teeth within their studied cohort[3]. In addition to this the following groupings were found: "< 10 missing teeth"[4], "0, 1-5, 6-14, 15-20, > 20 missing teeth"[5], "1-7, 8-20, 21-32 teeth"[6], "1-2, 3-5, 6-9, 10-14, 15-20, 21-27 missing teeth"[7], "0, 1-11, 21-12, 22-27, 28-31, 32"[8].

This approach of grouping allowed the authors mentioned above to report only the "number of patients" within their established groups. Before 1990 absolute frequencies were reported more frequently. Due to the variety of dentition, especially existence of 3rd molars, the problem of report is thoroughly discussed below.

Only 3 articles considered and reported dental implants. That is why this column is not shown in Table 2. The modes of report were: "N[pat + implants](%)/G[age]"[9], "N[implants](F)[all pat]/G[spec]"[3] and worded "some"[10].

Caries, fillings and restorations

Due to the clinical DMFT-index decayed (carious) and filled (restored) teeth are often pooled and mixed up. Six authors did so-three out of these using the DMFT/DMFS-Index[11-13]. Overall 19 out of 37 papers mentioned to evaluate "carious problem", "-lesions", "-teeth" or "defective teeth". One did not report their announced findings[14] and two remained unclear[15,16]. Four authors got more specific towards their assessment by mentioning the following criteria: "deep caries cavities"[17], "carious pulpal exposure lesions"[18], "lesions clearly perforating the enamel and clear radiolucencies under old fillings were recorded. Enamel caries was excluded"[19], "gross carious lesions … in posterior teeth"[7].

Pelton *et al*[20] classified caries lesions within a reliability study of panoramic and periapical radiographs as "C1: radiographically viewed that involved the enamel, but did not penetrate the dentin; C2: … involved the enamel and the dentin, but not the pulp; C3: … said to involve the pulp".

Two other authors explained more concrete: "Caries was judged to be present in the radiograph when a clearly defined reduction in mineral content of the proximal, occlusal, and/or restored surfaces was evident"[6], and "(Caries was) present when the lesion reached the dentin proximally or occlusally or was found at restored surfaces"[21].

Kirkevang *et al*[22] used a method published by Wenzel[23] described as follows: "A surface was assessed as having a caries lesion if a radiolucency, exhibiting the shape of a caries lesion and observed at a caries-susceptible site", and augmented with "extended into dentine; radiolucencies confined to the enamel were ignored".

In the same article Kirkevang *et al*[22] gave concrete information about fillings: "Registrations were performed on mesial, distal and occlusal or incisal surfaces. Fillings in pits and fissures in oral and buccal surfaces were not registered".

Tabrizi *et al*[11] stated "Restorations and dental caries were also calculated for each participant", but owes the data by presenting only DMFT-values.

Reporting is also structured by using absolute frequencies of patients with "lesions"[18,19], or "affected teeth" in all patients[3]. In addition to this, following groupings were found: "0,

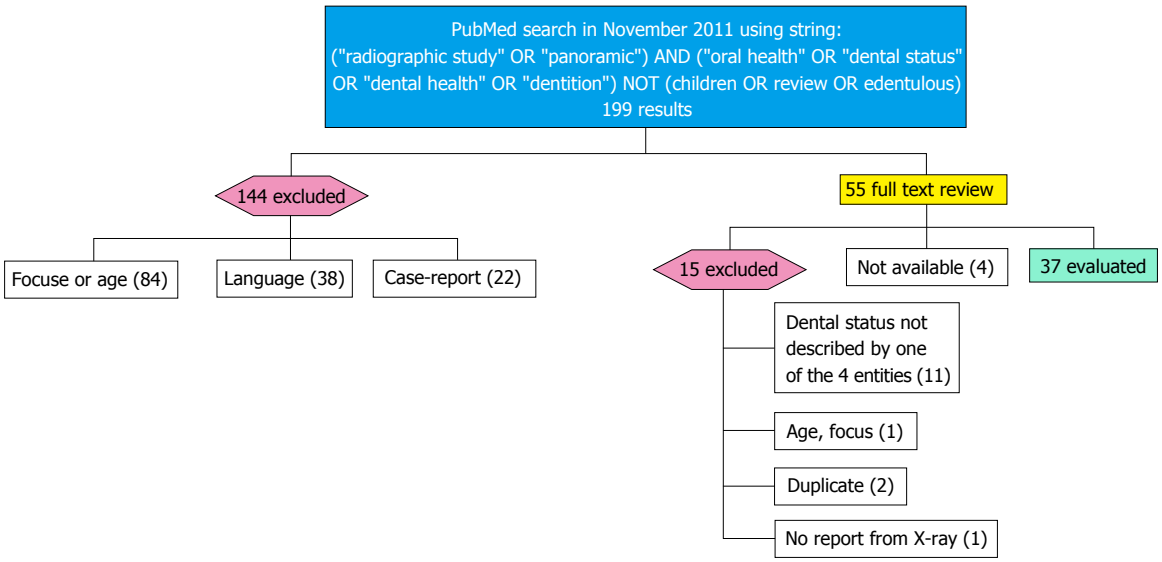


Figure 1 Flow chart of review strategy and finally evaluated articles: The flow chart shows the systematic exclusion of search results towards the finally evaluated studies. The primary reasons for exclusion are mentioned including the number of concerned articles.

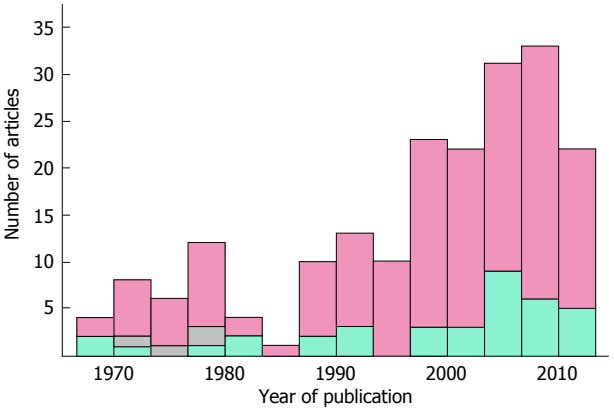


Figure 2 Distribution of included and excluded articles: Distribution of the 37 evaluated (green) and 159 excluded (red) studies of the search results ordered by their date of publication. Shaded fractions represent the 4 articles which were not available as full text version.

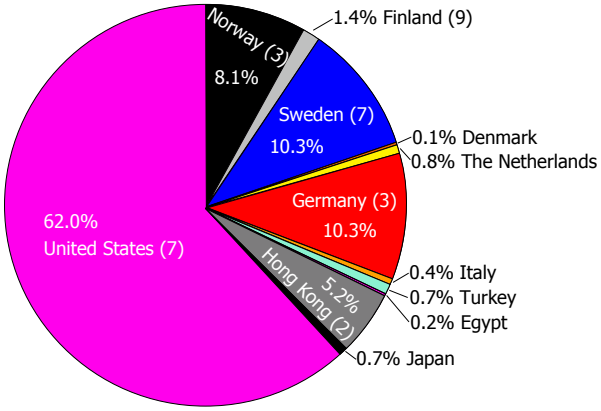


Figure 3 Shares of patients in the 37 evaluated studies with respect to the country of origin: The number of contributing studies is noted in brackets behind the country. Preponderance of United States is due to two reports of "mass X-ray evaluation" in the years 1977 and 1982. If these two are left out of consideration the median value of studied subjects in a paper is 212 (mean = 485).

< 5, > 5 defective teeth"[5], "0, 1-2, ⩾ 3 carious lesions"[19]. Restorations were reported six times[9,10,16,24-26], but 2 articles did insufficiently[10,27]. Within three out of seven articles restorations, fillings and decay were merged[5,11,15].

Root canal fillings and apical health

Identification of root canal filled teeth was taken for granted in 15 out of the 18 papers. Within 3 papers it was clarified in more detail within the MMS as "ongoing or completed root canal treatment, …, pulp amputation", "teeth with pulp amputation, endodontic fillings, or both"[3,6,21]. One article merged root canal fillings and apical health[28].

Seventeen further articles focused on apical health. The periapical index (PAI) by Orstavik *et al*[29] was used for diagnosis of periapical health by only three authors, who regarded the PAI-scores 3-5 as positive finding[3,28,30].

For Peltola *et al*[31] "A radiolucency measuring > 2 mm in the apical bone was considered to be an apical rarefaction". Nalçaci *et al*[26] cited Soikkonen *et al*[32] method: "A periapical lesion, interpreted as apical periodontitis, was recorded if there was a clearly discernible local widening of the apical periodontal membrane space". But, this approach is not described within this referred citation (handling edentulous patients at all). Hakeberg *et al*[33] divided "Periradicular destructions … into three different classes according to size; 1 = pathologically altered lamina dura and radiolucency less than 2 mm, 2 = radiolucency of 2-10 mm, 3 = radiolucency > 10 mm"[33], and set grade 2 as cut-off for affection. The earliest grading found was in Lilly *et al*[8] 1967: "less than 5 mm and 5-10 mm apical translucency"[8].

The remaining five articles only mentioned to evaluate "apical radiolucencies"[17], "periapical lesions"[5], without further criteria or mentioning additions like: "radicular cysts as well as sclerotic periapical lesions indicating con-

densing osteitis"[6,21], or "sign of osteolysis"[12].

Alveolar bone level

The most various methods in assessment and reporting were found for alveolar bone level.

Metric measurements were used by five authors[6,7,17,21,33]. In addition to this following groupings were found: "≥ 6 mm, ≥ 4 mm"[17], "> 1-3 mm, > 3-6 mm, > 6 mm"[6], "< 2 mm, 2-4 mm, > 4 mm"[33]. "< 4 mm = moderate periodontitis, > 4 mm = severe periodontits"[7].

To relativize metric measures the following formula for alveolar bone loss is used: "total bone height divided by total root length [the distance from the radiographic apex to the cemento-enamel junction (CEJ)] multiplied by 100.", and applied *i.e.*, by Tabrizi *et al*[11].

Rosenquist[5,12] decided to use a modified criterion of Lindhe[34]: "< 1/3 of the root length, > 1/3 of the root length, and horizontal loss supporting tissues, > 1/3 of the root length, angular bony defects and/or furcation involvement" which is similar to Nyman *et al*[35] cited by Tabrizi *et al*[11]. Two authors used a relative root length, but went for an overall approach and added a criterion for "diseased" *via* their amount of findings: "≥ 30% of the sites with ≥ 1/3 bone loss"[36] and "including one or more teeth"[37].

Semiquantitative approaches were found specified: "classified as extension to: (1) to the coronal third of the root; (2) the middle third of the root; and (3) the apical third of the root"[18,21]. Graduations apart from thirds exist also: *i.e.*, as an ordinal scale with five grades: "0%, 1%-24%, 25%-49%, 50%-74%, or ≥ 75%"[38] or with only one cut-off point as: "one-fourth or more of the normal bone height"[37].

A direct measurement of ABL-percentages was developed by Schei *et al*[39] and used by only one author[38].

For two authors "A healthy horizontal bone level was considered to be 2 mm"[21,31]. Huumonen *et al*[3] graded into "(1) No bone loss, bone level within 2-3 mm of the cemento-enamel junction area; (2) Slight bone loss, bone level at the cervical third of theroots; and (3) Moderate to advanced bone loss, bone level between the middle third of the roots at or beyond the apex"[3]. Slightly different graduation-starting out the same with level 0-Nalçaci *et al*[26] continues: "(1) Moderate bone loss, bone level at the middle third of the roots; (2) Advanced bone loss, bone level at the apical third of the roots; and (3) Severe bone loss, bone level at or beyond the apex", but did not mentioned a cut-off. So it remains unclear (ND) what the reported "horizontal bone loss" is intended to be.

In three cases the results were presented with previously not defined expressions like "periodontal problem"[18] or undefined graduations like "Slight marginal bone loss … and vertical bone loss"[19]. The definition lacks what exactly is supposed to mean "affected" in this context. Likewise less helpful is a more historical graduation we came over: "If considerable bone loss was seen, this was called 'gross periodontal disease'. If there was pronounced 'arclike' bone loss limited to the molar and incisor regions, this was designated as periodontosis"[25].

One methodical article on forensics was coping with the calculation of DMFT and DFT-Index. They stated within their material and method section to grade ABL of 2nd premolars towards the criteria "0, less than half of first third, up to third of root, more than a third". But the findings were not reported at all[14].

DISCUSSION

The diversity of assessments and report modes is found to be alarming. The applied search strategy covers only a small, but high-ranked, sample of articles handling radiographic findings. It has to be assumed, that diagnosis and report of the entities studied here are not standardized at all, as it is for clinical dental status, namely the DMFT-, CPITN-, PI-, or BOP-Index for example.

In the following, each above mentioned and studied entity is discussed critically towards assessment and report. Further consequences are subsumed.

Number of teeth and implants

The method to identify teeth from a radiograph is quite simple. Not so the communication of amounts and values.

Commonly, every time when the descriptive level of absolute frequencies (*i.e.*, number of affected patients) is not used, the calculation has to be relative to a standardized data-set (*i.e.*, all patients studied, all patients with root canal treatment). It gets even more complicated, if the complete dentition is handled as an entity: When median-or mean values are used, the calculation base has to be clear. For the first: including the third molars to the calculation, or not? For the second: how to handle missing or supernumerary teeth? For the third: are edentulous patients excluded[17,40], or included to the calculation-or have there been other selection criteria like "at least 15 remaining own teeth"[9]?

Unfortunately this was not clear for 9 out of the 37 studied papers. Twenty-three included, 4 excluded, the third molars for evaluation. Two articles presented both approaches. Due to the variety of third molars dental history (retention, extraction) it make sense-similar to DMFT Index-to exclude these, if these are not primary focus of a study. Please follow the subheading "report of values" below, where more inherent details are addressed.

Against the backdrop of costly dental implants as a routine therapy after about 40 years now, their presence in oral status should be reported. Their number can give not only important dental input, but also ideas towards the financial background of an individual patient, a group, a whole cohort or even the social system.

Carious lesions, fillings and restorations

The detection of carious lesions within radiographs is discussed and researched by operative dentistry, foremost. Searching "detecting caries and X-ray" *via* Pubmed/Medline results around 100 findings. The definitions used by the authors studied herein are inconsistent. This is why

a clear statement which definition can be used as a gold standard to assess a tooth as affected by caries, would be favorable. We found the approach of Pelton and Bethart the most reproducible[20].

As fillings are made from radiopaque resin, cement, compomer, or metal, these can be easily seen on radiographs. If a restoration material is only slightly radiopaque, like silicate ceramic, the used adhesive composite or luting cements is clearly visible. However, the size of restorations can only be guessed, due to the 2-dimensional projection. But, the amount of decay could be derived from the ratio of filling and remaining coronal tooth substance.

These remarks are valid for fixed restorations (crowns, pontics) too. For all of these 3 findings, the mode of report as a comparable number and the report of missing values has to be standardized.

Root canal fillings

Root canal fillings can be recognized just as easily as a tooth or restoration itself can be, because radiopaque materials are used around the world very commonly. Two authors judged the quality of root canal fillings[3,30]. If the quality or length of root canal fillings should be regarded or not, remains to be discussed by endodontologist. Works about the potential already exist[41]. Furthermore the existence of root canal posts has to be taken into account. Some of these are either not radiolucent (Fiberposts) or radiopaque and due to their form not possible to distinct from a perfect root canal filling.

Regarding the reporting mode as frequency or percentage is same as discussed for missing/remaining teeth. Furthermore reporting authors should care about the problem that the number of teeth is easier to compare than the number of roots or even root canals. Moreover the values of root canal treatments should be reported separately from apical affection(s) of a tooth or root.

Apical health

Beside the controversy of detection capability with periapical and panoramic radiographs (augmented with the problem: digital *vs* analog), the key point is to diagnose the affection in awareness of healthy variations-without a clinical examination. This is analog to the detection of caries. The method of the PAI by Orstavik *et al*[29] is a good example for standardization and should be used more often. This 5-grade assessment tool is based on standardized pictures. It might be most reliable if used with a cut-off at Grade 3.

Confusing is the usage of "lesion" or "finding" in contrast to "affected tooth", because *i.e.*, a lower first molar may have 2 apical or carious lesions (mesial and distal), but is only 1 affected tooth. As for the above-mentioned root-canal fillings, at this point of time no consensus could be found. But, we found one possibility for clarification: "For multi-rooted teeth, the root presenting the highest PAI-score and the quality of the corresponding root filling was used"[30].

Alveolar bone loss

The "radiographic alveolar bone loss" is one classical research dimension of periodontology and implantology. Thereby it has been of interest for ages-expressed in hundreds of publications. Thus radiographic assessment of this entity is just as many-faceted. Two general approaches could be identified: metric measuring and proportions of bone height towards root length. The latter might be the better choice due to the variety of root length by anatomy and radiographic projection. Moreover, approaches including the age dependence of bone loss are described[42].

Beside bone level, furcation and vertical defects might be taken into account, too. The authors do not want to judge, which way is the best. But, even if a standard can be found in the future, also the cut off values for healthy and affected shall be defined by the authorities (see caption "grading and cut-offs"). Until then, the authors find the relative approach coping with the "first third of the root", described by Nyman *et al*[35], the most reliable.

Missing values/misinterpretation

Depiction problems of X-rays may lead to missing values, because it is not always possible to state a finding (*i.e.*, the vertical alveolar bone height by overlapped projection of two teeth, carious lesion at a filling by a "burn out" artifact). Only 5 papers mentioned depiction problems right in their material and methods section as follows: "If the image of the permanent teeth was blurred, supplementary digital intraoral radiographs were taken of these teeth"[28], "For areas poorly visible in the panoramic radiograph, intraoral radiographs were made"[6,26,37], "A tooth was judged as non-measurable if the CEJ or bone crest could not be identified properly because of overlapping caries or restorations. In cases where any one of the dental or bony landmarks could not be identified on one aspect (mesial or distal), the tooth was excluded"[11]. Projection artifacts may also lead to misinterpretation, which is mostly ruled out by the use of 2 examiners and/or reliability assurance. Such problems were solved differently: "In case of disagreement between the observers, their mean is used in the calculation"[43].

"Only panoramic radiographs that displayed the whole dentition without asymmetry, distortion or error in patient positioning were included"[2], "The radiographs were assessed twice, the first time by each dentist separately and next time by all in cooperation"[10].

One article announced within materials and method section: "Missing values were registered with suitable so-called 'missing values"[9], but-it was true for all articles above mentioned, these values were not reported.

One of the articles revealed depiction problems while studying the X-rays and stated: "A total of 54 teeth, most often maxillary pre-molars, were excluded"[11].

Discussions about sensitivity and specifity of panoramic radiographs were only anecdotal, not concrete. Montebugnoli *et al*[44] dropped an important sentence, which was unfortunately not discussed further or towards their findings: "Other factors that could affect the outcomes include differences in the way of measuring … dental status (the measures used to assess the oral status seem to be related to the strength and significance of the

associations reported)"[44].

Beside this, Langland *et al*[16] mentioned within their comparative study in 1980: "Discrepancies in the percentages of periodontal disease may be attributed to variance in the classification of each disease entity each year …."[16] and also Grover *et al*[7] did so in 1982: "Several discrepancies in findings … explained by variance … in diagnostic methods". One author explicitly complained about the absence of guidelines and stated: "We found it difficult to clearly define what a short root was and how to define early obliteration of the pulp. There are no guidelines in the literature, which defined what is a short root, and what is obliteration. For that reason it was difficult to compare our data with earlier studies"[10].

In summary, it has to be pointed out again, that panoramic radiographs can be regarded as sufficient diagnosis instrument. During the past 5 years digital imaging made great strides. But, sufficient comprehensive data about quality progress is not published yet. Nonetheless, the assessment of dental findings within a radiograph is restricted by anatomical deviations of oral structures, such as dislocation or rotation of teeth. That implies missing data are common in radiographic based studies-especially for alveolar bone loss, apical health and caries. The option of an "indiscernible/unclear" criteria will reduce bias since firstly, no accidental attribution as "affected" or "healthy" have to take place, secondly an idea about overall image quality is given.

Such missing values may be handled statistically, but have to be reported and how these were regarded in calculation.

Report of values: Mean and median, absolute frequencies and percentages

The number of remaining and missing teeth is reported most frequently (see caption "missing/remaining teeth and implants"). But even in this case, comparability is difficult due to the different modes of reporting. 4 authors decided for the report of median-number, 16 for mean, 6 for absolute frequencies. The same utilization can be found across the other studied entities: caries, root-canal-filled teeth, apical lesions and even alveolar bone level.

For the report of frequencies the use of median values can be assigned as the better choice due to its lower susceptibility towards extreme single values and the non-normal distribution of remaining and missing teeth in patients. To clarify the distribution of data we recommend the report of both: mean and medium value, augmented with SD, range and quartiles.

Dichotomization, groups, grades and cut-offs

A grouping of age, findings, measures are often necessary for further analyses, especially to calculate odd-ratios or only to compare such "self-made" groups. Grouping with a cut-off allows additionally to report absolute and relative frequencies of teeth or patients, instead of mean or median values. Examples for the last mentioned would be "1-10 missing teeth" or "< 20 remaining teeth". Especially the rationales behind the cut-offs points are questionable. Sometimes these are set following previous analysis of the same sample, such as: "Each group comprised one-third of the dentate subjects in the baseline study"[6], or "Each dental index was dichotomized at the mean value"[44]. It can also be empirical reasons as: "The cut-off point (< 45 and > 45 years) was selected in accordance with the introduction of a new social-security law"[21]. However, cut-off points for "healthy" and "diseased" varied, especially if diagnosis of alveolar bone height and apical lesions are dichotomized for analyses, graphic art and report.

With such intervention to data, these are not universally valid anymore. Further comparability is hindered, if the crude data are not available from the paper.

The DMFT and other sum scores

Three authors reported DMFT-values[11-13]. One team reported only the number of patients (one time as percentage, one time as an absolute frequency) with a DMFT value of zero[19,31]. The DMFT would be helpful for a comparison with existing epidemiological data, but it hinders to extract missing/remaining teeth if only given as a sum score. If not separated by the author, no more information can be extracted from the DMFT; the DMFS is even worse. Furthermore alveolar bone level and apical health are not covered within this (exclusively) clinical index.

Within our review other indices could be found: six authors cited Mattila *et al*[45]: "Association between dental health and acute myocardial infarction" and their sum score of a "Total Dental Index" or "Pantomographic Index"[6,12,18,46]. This is also cited as panoramic tomography score, which is "the sum of radiolucent periapical lesions, third-degree caries lesions, vertical bone pockets, radiolucent lesions in furcation areas[47]" and was applied by Montebugnoli *et al*[44]. Even if published and cited in high-ranked journals, we found this system neither comprehensible in development nor validated for multipurpose application. Its focus is both: infective oral lesions in a combination of oral and radiographic evaluation as well as from radiographic assessment itself. Furthermore the description of index does not contain either methods of oral nor radiographic assessment for its entities. Despite of this fact, the sum of total dental index (TDI) can reach values "between zero and 10"[45]. Nevertheless, the scale of this cited index varies between publication due to modification by the authors: "0-14"[48], "0-8"[49], "0-10"[18,50], 0-15[6]. Seppänen *et al*[18] used a classification of the sum scores "good, moderate and poor" which was not established by Mattila *et al*[45] 1989 as cited in this very article. Montebugnoli *et al*[44] decided to dicromize "each dental index … at the mean value". Buhlin *et al*[49] separated the index according to the statement "TDI of 0 or 1 are considered to have good oral health and those with TDI 4-8 have poor". Especially these inconstancies left this tool highly questionable. However, further investigation is needed for a concluding evaluation of this approach. Beside, and discussed for the DMFT, a sum score-with such complexity of terms-might not be

useful for report. Foremost because, the values of each contained entity are not given to the reader and for future comparison.

Limitations of this report

This report is only based on articles indexed at PubMed/Medline. The variety of applied approaches was expected to grow if further databases (*i.e.*, EMBASE or MEDPILOT) are searched. Although this might harden the presented conclusion, it would not rise the informative content of this report.

Detailed information about type of X-ray and films used as well as acts of calibration of examiners was not included to this review. We took into account, that journal reviewers have already checked the applied intervention and found these appropriate. Furthermore, the widespread use of dental radiographs implies standardization on a reasonable level and quality. Findings in adults were favored, due to the variety of radiographic studies and dentition in children and adolescents. The variety of the mixed dentition is in fact a problem of standardization. The authors are aware that for every entity studied within this review, hundreds of other articles exist and there might be even standards scientists agree on. But, this can only be figured out by further systematic reviews-one for each entity and a final harmonization in a reporting guideline. Such a general guideline would support the authors preparing their studies and manuscripts as well as the scientists to compare data.

Only one article covered all entities studied in this review[26]. Nevertheless, all researches would have been enabled to report all these entities. Evidently it is often not of interest to report about *i.e.*, alveolar bone loss while presenting results about the prevalence of apical lesions. Nonetheless, such data would contrast and illustrate findings by thorough information about the studied cohort. More accompanied information could be conveyed about dental status of studied subjects. Thus, comparability and multi-variate analyses would be simplified generally. The authors think it would be worthwhile to have an easy reporting system of all entities. Today's possibilities to provide such data digital *via* online publication would enable authors and publishers to share data without expensive printed pages.

There are established but not generally accepted and enforced standards to assess and report findings from radiographic surveys. Thereby comparability of published findings is only possible with chief limitations. There is need to agree on standardized assessment and diagnosis first, and about the mode of report secondly. An easy and validated multi-term report-system of dental status would allow a widespread application, especially for dental public health and epidemiology. In consequence: there is need for a reporting guideline.

COMMENTS

Background

Reporting standards are necessary to compare research outcomes especially in medical science. Full-mouth radiographic surveys allow information about the dental status. These are: number of teeth, caries, fillings/restorations, root canal treatments/filling, apical health and alveolar bone loss. But findings have to be evaluated and reported in such a way, that a comparison between published results is possible. There is no reporting guideline, yet. Which mode of report could be proper is neither finally discussed nor published. The paper shows shortcommings in current acquisition and presentation of data, hereinafter it recommends suitable methodical approaches.

Research frontiers

Dental radiology, epidemiology, research methodology in dentistry and medical statistics for oral health variables.

Innovations and breakthroughs

Only 8 out of 37 scientifically papers are at the maximum comparable towards 3 out of 7 entities of dental status. Evaluation of radiographs differ is widely. Reporting with statistical tools like mean and median or grouping and dichotomization did not allow further comparison, due to a lack of raw data. Also sum scores or indices like Decayed, Missing and Filled Teeth (DMFT) impede comparability of data. Thus no standard could be identified. Besides, missing values are underreported.

Applications

A guideline of standards for evaluation, report and cut-off points is needed. So far it can be advised, that: (1) depicting problems and resulting missing values are reported; (2) it must be stated, if third molars are included or not when reporting the number of missing or remaining teeth; (3) implants should be taken into account; (4) sum scores are only present with crude data of the study. In case of DMFT the decayed teeth, missing teeth, filled teeth and decayed and filled teeth should be given separately, too; (5) apical health should be evaluated with a validated tool preferably the Peri-Apical-Index; (6) alveolar bone loss should be evaluated and reported in exact percentage or "in thirds" (Lindhe) not in absolute millimeters; (7) all distributions of data are presented with mean and medium value, augmented with SD, range and quartiles; and (8) the reader is given the rational for grouping or a cut-off point if data is dichotomized.

Terminology

"Full-arch radiographs" are radiographs taken mostly in dental office and depicting all teeth (including the complete root) of a human dentition. Mostly a so called "panoramic radiograph" is taken; but also a survey with intraoral radiographs can be applied. "Apical health" describes the situation around the tip of the tooth root inside the bone of the jaw. This area might be retreat for bacteria causing a painless infection, which is relevant for systemic health and inflammation parameters. Such infections can be detected by radiographs. "Alveolar bone loss" describes the loss of jaw bone around teeth. The amout of lost bone correlates with the infection of tissues around teeth, which is a multifactorial disease promoted by bacteria. As seen in the radiograph the occurrence of a a so called "periodontitis" (inflammation of the gums) can be anticipated by the loss of bone. "DMFT" is the World Health Organization-standard to report a clinically assessed dental status. It is namely the sum of Decayed, Missing and Filled Teeth in a dentition. "Reporting guideline" is a standardization for scientific reporting of findings. Today many such guideline exists in Medicine (www.equator-network.com).

Peer review

It is a well organized and written paper.

REFERENCES

1 **Choi JW**. Assessment of panoramic radiography as a national oral examination tool: review of the literature. *Imaging Sci Dent* 2011; **41**: 1-6 [PMID: 21977466 DOI: 10.5624/isd.2011.41.1.1]

2 **Ma EC**, Mok WH, Islam MS, Li TK, MacDonald-Jankowski DS. Patterns of tooth loss in young adult Hong Kong Chinese patients in 1983 and 1998. *J Can Dent Assoc* 2005; **71**: 473 [PMID: 16026633]

3 **Huumonen S**, Sipilä K, Zitting P, Raustia AM. Panoramic findings in 34-year-old subjects with facial pain and pain-free controls. *J Oral Rehabil* 2007; **34**: 456-462 [PMID: 17518981 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2842.2007.01739.x]

4 **Cabrera C**, Hakeberg M, Ahlqwist M, Wedel H, Björkelund C, Bengtsson C, Lissner L. Can the relation between tooth loss and chronic disease be explained by socio-economic status? A 24-year follow-up from the population study of

women in Gothenburg, Sweden. *Eur J Epidemiol* 2005; **20**: 229-236 [PMID: 15921040]

5 **Rosenquist K**. Risk factors in oral and oropharyngeal squamous cell carcinoma: a population-based case-control study in southern Sweden. *Swed Dent J Suppl* 2005; (**179**): 1-66 [PMID: 16335030]

6 **Närhi TO**, Leinonen K, Wolf J, Ainamo A. Longitudinal radiological study of the oral health parameters in an elderly Finnish population. *Acta Odontol Scand* 2000; **58**: 119-124 [PMID: 10933560]

7 **Grover PS**, Carpenter WM, Allen GW. Panographic survey of US Army recruits: analysis of dental health status. *Mil Med* 1982; **147**: 1059-1061 [PMID: 6817201]

8 **Lilly GE**, Steiner M, Alling CC, Tiecke RW. Oral health of dentists: analysis of panoramic radiographs. *J Oral Med* 1967; **22**: 23-29 [PMID: 5230961]

9 **Willershausen B**, Witzel S, Schuster S, Kasaj A. Influence of gender and social factors on oral health, treatment degree and choice of dental restorative materials in patients from a dental school. *Int J Dent Hyg* 2010; **8**: 116-120 [PMID: 20522134 DOI: 10.1111/j.1601-5037.2009.00401.x]

10 **Saeves R**, Lande Wekre L, Ambjørnsen E, Axelsson S, Nordgarden H, Storhaug K. Oral findings in adults with osteogenesis imperfecta. *Spec Care Dentist* 2009; **29**: 102-108 [PMID: 19284510 DOI: 10.1111/j.1754-4505.2008.00070.x]

11 **Tabrizi F**, Buhlin K, Gustafsson A, Klinge B. Oral health of monozygotic twins with and without coronary heart disease: a pilot study. *J Clin Periodontol* 2007; **34**: 220-225 [PMID: 17257161 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-051X.2006.01041.x]

12 **Buhlin K**, Bárány P, Heimbürger O, Stenvinkel P, Gustafsson A. Oral health and pro-inflammatory status in end-stage renal disease patients. *Oral Health Prev Dent* 2007; **5**: 235-244 [PMID: 17977296]

13 **Tarkkila L**, Furuholm J, Tiitinen A, Meurman JH. Oral health in perimenopausal and early postmenopausal women from baseline to 2 years of follow-up with reference to hormone replacement therapy. *Clin Oral Investig* 2008; **12**: 271-277 [PMID: 18299902 DOI: 10.1007/s00784-008-0190-z]

14 **Olze A**, Mahlow A, Schmidt S, Wernecke KD, Geserick G, Schmeling A. Combined determination of selected radiological and morphological variables relevant for dental age estimation of young adults. *Homo* 2005; **56**: 133-140 [PMID: 16130836]

15 **Lindqvist C**, Söderholm AL, Slätis P. Dental X-ray status of patients admitted for total hip replacement. *Proc Finn Dent Soc* 1989; **85**: 211-215 [PMID: 2594748]

16 **Langland OE**, Langlais RP, Morris CR, Preece JW. Panoramic radiographic survey of dentists participating in ADA health screening programs: 1976, 1977, and 1978. *J Am Dent Assoc* 1980; **101**: 279-282 [PMID: 6931166]

17 **Helenius-Hietala J**, Meurman JH, Höckerstedt K, Lindqvist C, Isoniemi H. Effect of the aetiology and severity of liver disease on oral health and dental treatment prior to transplantation. *Transpl Int* 2012; **25**: 158-165 [PMID: 22054477 DOI: 10.1111/j.1432-2277.2011.01381.x]

18 **Seppänen L**, Lemberg KK, Lauhio A, Lindqvist C, Rautemaa R. Is dental treatment of an infected tooth a risk factor for locally invasive spread of infection? *J Oral Maxillofac Surg* 2011; **69**: 986-993 [PMID: 20950917 DOI: 10.1016/j.joms.2010.05.015]

19 **Peltola JS**. A panoramatomographic study of the teeth and jaws of Finnish university students. *Community Dent Oral Epidemiol* 1993; **21**: 36-39 [PMID: 8432103]

20 **Pelton WJ**, Bethart H. Student dental health program of the University of Alabama in Birmingham. X. The value of panoramic radiographs. *Ala J Med Sci* 1973; **10**: 21-25 [PMID: 4703032]

21 **Enberg N**, Wolf J, Ainamo A, Alho H, Heinälä P, Lenander-Lumikari M. Dental diseases and loss of teeth in a group of Finnish alcoholics: a radiological study. *Acta Odontol Scand* 2001; **59**: 341-347 [PMID: 11831482]

22 **Kirkevang LL**, Vaeth M, Wenzel A. Prevalence and incidence of caries lesions in relation to placement and replacement of fillings: a longitudinal observational radiographic study of an adult Danish population. *Caries Res* 2009; **43**: 286-293 [PMID: 19439950 DOI: 10.1159/000217861]

23 **Wenzel A.** Dental caries. In White SC, Pharoah MJ (eds): Oral Radiology. Principles and Interpretation, 6th ed. St Louis: Mosby, 2009: 270-281

24 **Corbet EF**, Holmgren CJ, Pang SK. Use of shell crowns in Hong Kong dental hospital attenders. *J Oral Rehabil* 1992; **19**: 137-143 [PMID: 1517875]

25 **Meister F**, Simpson J, Davies EE. Oral health of airmen: analysis of panoramic radiographic and Polaroid photographic survey. *J Am Dent Assoc* 1977; **94**: 335-339 [PMID: 264490]

26 **Nalçaci R**, Erdemir EO, Baran I. Evaluation of the oral health status of the people aged 65 years and over living in near rural district of Middle Anatolia, Turkey. *Arch Gerontol Geriatr* 2007; **45**: 55-64 [PMID: 17097161 DOI: 10.1016/j.archger.2006.09.002]

27 **Christen AG**, Meffert RM, Cornyn J, Tiecke RW. Oral health of dentists: analysis of panoramic radiographic survey. *J Am Dent Assoc* 1967; **75**: 1167-1168 [PMID: 5233332]

28 **Andersen MG**, Beck-Nielsen SS, Haubek D, Hintze H, Gjørup H, Poulsen S. Periapical and endodontic status of permanent teeth in patients with hypophosphatemic rickets. *J Oral Rehabil* 2012; **39**: 144-150 [PMID: 21902707 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2842.2011.02250.x]

29 **Orstavik D**, Kerekes K, Eriksen HM. The periapical index: a scoring system for radiographic assessment of apical periodontitis. *Endod Dent Traumatol* 1986; **2**: 20-34 [PMID: 3457698 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-9657.1986.tb00119.x]

30 **Skudutyte-Rysstad R**, Eriksen HM. Endodontic status amongst 35-year-old Oslo citizens and changes over a 30-year period. *Int Endod J* 2006; **39**: 637-642 [PMID: 16872458 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2591.2006.01129.x]

31 **Peltola JS**, Ventä I, Haahtela S, Lakoma A, Ylipaavalniemi P, Turtola L. Dental and oral radiographic findings in first-year university students in 1982 and 2002 in Helsinki, Finland. *Acta Odontol Scand* 2006; **64**: 42-46 [PMID: 16428182 DOI: 10.1080/00016350500419800]

32 **Soikkonen K**, Ainamo A, Wolf J, Xie Q, Tilvis R, Valvanne J, Erkinjuntti T. Radiographic findings in the jaws of clinically edentulous old people living at home in Helsinki, Finland. *Acta Odontol Scand* 1994; **52**: 229-233 [PMID: 7985508 DOI: 10.3109/00016359409029051]

33 **Hakeberg M**, Berggren U, Gröndahl HG. A radiographic study of dental health in adult patients with dental anxiety. *Community Dent Oral Epidemiol* 1993; **21**: 27-30 [PMID: 8432101 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-0528.1993.tb00714.x]

34 **Lindhe J**. Clinical Periodontology and Implant Dentistry. Copenhagen: Munksgaard, 1998

35 **Nyman S**, Lindhe J. Examination of patients with periodontal disease. In: Lindhe J, Karring T, Lang NP, editors. Clinical Periodontology and Implant Dentistry. Copenhagen: Munksgaard, 2003: 403-413

36 **Jansson H**, Lindholm E, Lindh C, Groop L, Bratthall G. Type 2 diabetes and risk for periodontal disease: a role for dental health awareness. *J Clin Periodontol* 2006; **33**: 408-414 [PMID: 16677329 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-051X.2006.00929.x]

37 **Stermer Beyer-Olsen EM**, Bjertness E, Eriksen HM, Hansen BF. Comparison of oral radiographic findings among 35-year-old Oslo citizens in 1973 and 1984. *Community Dent Oral Epidemiol* 1989; **17**: 68-70 [PMID: 2920542 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-0528.1989.tb00590.x]

38 **Taylor GW**, Burt BA, Becker MP, Genco RJ, Shlossman M, Knowler WC, Pettitt DJ. Non-insulin dependent diabetes mellitus and alveolar bone loss progression over 2 years. *J Periodontol* 1998; **69**: 76-83 [PMID: 9527565 DOI: 10.1902/jop.1998.69.1.76]

39 **Schei O**, Waerhaug J, Lövdal A, Arno A. Alveolar bone loss

as related to oral hygiene and age. *J Periodontol* 1959; **30**: 7-16
40 **Yoshihara A**, Deguchi T, Miyazaki H. Relationship between bone fragility of the mandibular inferior cortex and tooth loss related to periodontal disease in older people. *Community Dent Health* 2011; **28**: 165-169 [PMID: 21780357]
41 **Eriksen HM**, Berset GP, Hansen BF, Bjertness E. Changes in endodontic status 1973-1993 among 35-year-olds in Oslo, Norway. *Int Endod J* 1995; **28**: 129-132 [PMID: 8626195 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2591.1995.tb00286.x]
42 **Hardt CR**, Gröndahl K, Lekholm U, Wennström JL. Outcome of implant therapy in relation to experienced loss of periodontal bone support: a retrospective 5- year study. *Clin Oral Implants Res* 2002; **13**: 488-494 [PMID: 12453125 DOI: 10.1034/j.1600-0501.2002.130507.x]
43 **Aartman IH**, de Jongh A, Makkes PC, Hoogstraten J. Treatment modalities in a dental fear clinic and the relation with general psychopathology and oral health variables. *Br Dent J* 1999; **186**: 467-471 [PMID: 10365496 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bdj.4800142]
44 **Montebugnoli L**, Servidio D, Miaton RA, Prati C, Tricoci P, Melloni C. Poor oral health is associated with coronary heart disease and elevated systemic inflammatory and haemostatic factors. *J Clin Periodontol* 2004; **31**: 25-29 [PMID: 15058371 DOI: 10.1111/j.0303-6979.2004.00432.x]
45 **Mattila KJ**, Nieminen MS, Valtonen VV, Rasi VP, Kesäniemi YA, Syrjälä SL, Jungell PS, Isoluoma M, Hietaniemi K, Jokinen MJ. Association between dental health and acute myocardial infarction. *BMJ* 1989; **298**: 779-781 [PMID: 2496855 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.298.6676.779]
46 **Abou-Raya S**, Naeem A, Abou-El KH, El BS. Coronary artery disease and periodontal disease: is there a link? *Angiology* 2002; **53**: 141-148 [PMID: 11952103 DOI: 10.1177/000331970205300203]
47 **Mattila KJ**, Asikainen S, Wolf J, Jousimies-Somer H, Valtonen V, Nieminen M. Age, dental infections, and coronary heart disease. *J Dent Res* 2000; **79**: 756-760 [PMID: 10728977 DOI: 10.1177/00220345000790020901]
48 **Grau AJ**, Buggle F, Ziegler C, Schwarz W, Meuser J, Tasman AJ, Bühler A, Benesch C, Becher H, Hacke W. Association between acute cerebrovascular ischemia and chronic and recurrent infection. *Stroke* 1997; **28**: 1724-1729 [PMID: 9303015 DOI: 10.1161/01.STR.28.9.1724]
49 **Buhlin K**, Gustafsson A, Ahnve S, Janszky I, Tabrizi F, Klinge B. Oral health in women with coronary heart disease. *J Periodontol* 2005; **76**: 544-550 [PMID: 15857094 DOI: 10.1902/jop.2005.76.4.544]
50 **Abou-Raya S**, Abou-Raya A, Naim A, Abuelkheir H. Rheumatoid arthritis, periodontal disease and coronary artery disease. *Clin Rheumatol* 2008; **27**: 421-427 [PMID: 17763921 DOI: 10.1007/s10067-007-0714-y]

P- Reviewer: Arısan V, Kamburoglu K **S- Editor**: Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Clinical Cases

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.12998/wjcc.v2.i10.565

World J Clin Cases 2014 October 16; 2(10): 565-568
ISSN 2307-8960 (online)

CASE REPORT

Chemotherapy induced Takotsubo cardiomyopathy

Sunny Goel, Abhishek Sharma, Aakash Garg, Abhinav Chandra, Vijay Shetty

Sunny Goel, Abhishek Sharma, Abhinav Chandra, Vijay Shetty, Department of Medicine, Maimonides Medical Center, Brooklyn, NY 11219, United States
Aakash Garg, Department of Internal Medicine, James J. Peters VA Medical Center, Mount Sinai School of Medicine, Bronx, NY 10468, United States
Author contributions: All the authors contributed to this work.
Correspondence to: Abhishek Sharma, MD, Department of Medicine, Maimonides Medical Center, 4802 Tenth Avenue, Brooklyn, NY 11219,
United States. abhishekssharma4mamc@gmail.com
Telephone: +1-201-8926548
Received: May 24, 2014 Revised: June 23, 2014
Accepted: July 18, 2014
Published online: October 16, 2014

Abstract

Chemotherapy has been linked with Takotsubo cardiomyopathy. Most of the literature on chemotherapy associated Takotsubo cardiomyopathy is on the drug 5-fluorouracil. In this report, we describe the case of a 55-year-old Asian male who developed Takotsubo cardiomyopathy while receiving dual chemotherapy with cytarabine and daunorubicin for acute myeloid leukemia. To our knowledge, it is the first case of Takotsubo cardiomyopathy associated with daunorubicin and/or cytarabine.

Key words: Takotsubo cardiomyopathy; Chemotherapy; Cytarabine; Daunorubicin

Core tip: In this case report, we describe first case of Takotsubo cardiomyopathy associated with daunorubicin and/or cytarabine.

Goel S, Sharma A, Garg A, Chandra A, Shetty V. Chemotherapy induced Takotsubo cardiomyopathy. *World J Clin Cases* 2014; 2(10): 565-568 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2307-8960/full/v2/i10/565.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.12998/wjcc.v2.i10.565

INTRODUCTION

Chemotherapeutic drugs have a wide range of cardiotoxic effects. Recently, there have been case reports of chemotherapy [namely 5-fluorouracil (5-FU)] induced Takotsubo cardiomyopathy (TC)[1-5]. However, to the best of our knowledge, there has been no published literature on cytarabine and/or daunorubicin causing TC. In this report, we describe the case of a 55-year-old Chinese male who developed TC while receiving dual chemotherapy with cytarabine and daunorubicin for non M3 acute myeloid leukemia.

CASE REPORT

A 55-year-old male with past medical history of diabetes mellitus (type Ⅱ) presented to our hospital with complaints of pleuritic chest pain with non-productive cough and fever (Tmax 101.2 °F) for 3 d. Chest X-ray showed right-sided lung infiltrates. Patient was admitted to the medical floor with the diagnosis of community-acquired pneumonia and was started on moxifloxacin. The patient's blood work showed an incidental finding of 12% blast cells with a total white cell count of 9.9. Electrocardiogram performed on the day of admission revealed sinus tachycardia with abnormal R wave progression. Echocardiogram showed ejection fraction (EF) of 60%-65%, with normal chamber size and mild diastolic dysfunction. Three sets of cardiac enzymes including cardiac Troponin I and creatine kinase-MB were negative. Patient was evaluated by the hematology and oncology team for the incidental finding of blast cells on peripheral blood smear. The next day, as per the hematologist's recommendation, the patient underwent a bone marrow biopsy which showed the presence of pro-myelocytes, suggestive of M3 acute myeloid leukemia. The patient was started on All Trans-Retinoic Acid induction chemotherapy regimen. Prophylactic valacyclovir, omeprazole and intrave-

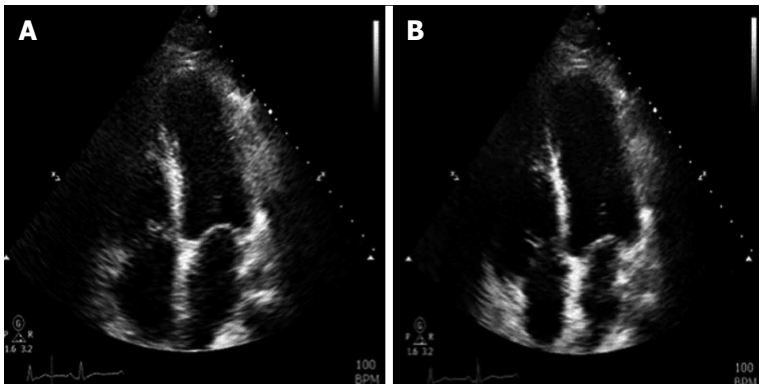


Figure 1 Echocardiogram showing ballooning of the apex with hyper contracted basal segment at end systole (A) end diastolic phase (B).

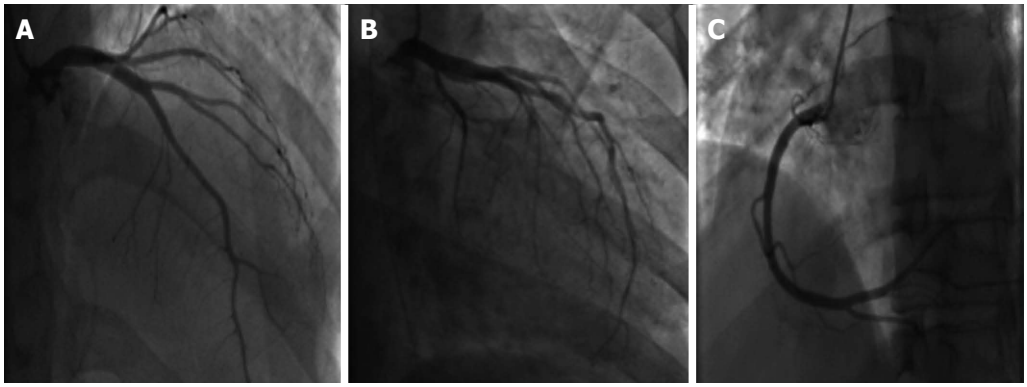


Figure 2 Coronary angiogram showing clean coronaries with thrombolysis in myocardial infarction 3 blood flow left main and left anterior descending (A), left circumflex (B) and right coronary artery(C).

nous (*iv*) fluids were also started.

Two days after the initiation of chemotherapy, fluorescent *in situ* hybridization results demonstrated a negative translocation of chromosomes 15, 17, thus confirming the diagnosis of non-M3. As a result, the chemotherapy regimen was changed to cytarabine 100 mg/m^2 and daunorubicin 60 mg/m^2. On day 6 of chemotherapy with cytarabine and daunorubicin, the patient began to experience non-radiating sub sternal chest pain associated with palpitations. Electrocardiogram obtained at that time showed sinus tachycardia of 170 bpm with ST segment elevation in leads I, aVL, V5, V6; consistent with anterolateral wall ST elevation myocardial infarction (STEMI). The patient was transferred to the cardiac intensive care unit (CCU) with a diagnosis of STEMI. Cardiac enzymes were obtained which showed Cardiac Troponin I of 8.54 upon initial transfer to the CCU, reaching a maximum of 38.64 after 18 h (normal values 0-0.1 ng/mL). Given the patient's immunocompromised state, cardiac catheterization was deferred and he was managed medically with aspirin, clopidogrel, rosuvastatin, and aggressive *iv* hydration. Echocardiogram done on day 6 of chemotherapy showed an EF of 30%-35% with segmental wall motion abnormalities: mild anterior, septal, apical, inferior and lateral wall hypokinesia, with normal diastolic function consistent with mid-left anterior descending artery occlusion (Figure 1). On day 20 of admission, patient underwent an elective cardiac angiogram, which showed non-obstructive coronary vasculature, mildly decreased left ventricular systolic function, EF of 50% with mild anterolateral and anterobasal hypokinesia (Figure 2).

DISCUSSION

This case report demonstrates a strong causal relationship between chemotherapy and the development of TC as evidenced in the patient's presentation on day 6 of chemotherapy induction. Symptomatic recovery of the patient after supportive medical management, with the concomitant discontinuation of the chemotherapeutic agent, also strengthens this causal relationship. The patient's repeat echocardiogram (performed 2 wk after discontinuation of the chemotherapeutic agents) showed a complete recovery of the EF with no wall motion abnormalities. In addition, a coronary angiogram demonstrated non-obstructed coronary vasculature. Given the patient's clinical presentation and the diagnostic evidence obtained, there is no alternative justification for the clinical course observed other than Takotsubo cardiomyopathy. This is the first case report of daunorubicin and/or cytarabine induced TC.

Most of the literature on chemotherapy associated TC is published on the drug 5-FU, a widely used chemotherapeutic agent for solid tumors. One case report from

Japan described daunorubicin-induced TC in a patient with refractory multiple myeloma[6]. However, to our knowledge, this is the first case report of daunorubicin and/or cytarabine induced TC in the United States.

Chemotherapy induces increased sympathetic tone with resulting elevation of cytokine, free radical, prostaglandin, catecholamine and growth factor levels. The excess of these modulators can potentiate worsening adrenoreceptor sensitivity, and can contribute to the clinical presentation of TC[1-5]. Daunorubicin belongs to the anthracycline class of chemotherapeutic agents, which remains among the most active anti-cancer drugs for solid tumor and hematologic malignancies. The exact pathogenic mechanisms responsible for the underlying cardiotoxic effects of anthracycline agents has yet to be elucidated. The current postulated mechanism supports the role of free radical induced cardiac damage (known to be caused by the excessive production of hydrogen peroxide, hydroxyl radicals and reactive oxygen species)[6-10]. These free radicals promote lipid peroxidation which contributes to cell membrane damage, and thus results in the activation of pro-apoptotic enzymes, such as Bax, Cytochrome-c and caspase-3, in myocyte mitochondria, triggering apoptosis and resulting in cardiac myocyte cell death[6-10]. Cardiac myocytes are more susceptible to lipid peroxidation due the presence of a high mitochondrial density with resultant high-energy requirements and the lack of anti-oxidant enzymes, which are required for the detoxification of superoxide anions and hydrogen peroxide. As a result of this cardiac myocyte susceptibility, a dose-related and irreversible loss of cardiac myocytes occurs, resulting in cardiomyopathy[11]. Though the exact mechanism of cardiotoxicity caused by cytarabine has yet to be elucidated, it is postulated that this drug can result in a hypersensitivity reaction or possible immune-mediated damage of cardiac myocyte[12].

In conclusion, we suggest that physicians be vigilant when treating patients with daunorubicin and/or cytarabine and should be aware of a possible association of these chemotherapeutic agents with TC.

COMMENTS

Case characteristics

A 55-year-old male receiving treatment with Daunorubicin and Cytarabine for non M3 acute myeloid leukemia (AML) experience non-radiating sub sternal chest pain associated with palpitations on 6th day after chemotherapy.

Clinical diagnosis

Acute coronary syndrome.

Differential diagnosis

ST segment elevation myocardial infarction (STEMI), non-STEMI, Unstable Angina, Aortic Dissection, Pulmonary embolism, cardiomyopathy, Ventricular wall rupture.

Laboratory diagnosis

Cardiac troponin I and creatine kinase-MB elevation with continued uptrend, consistent with myocardial ischemia.

Imaging diagnosis

Electrocardiogram-anterolateral STEMI; Echocardiogram (ECHO) at day 6 of therapy-ejection fraction (EF) of 30%-35% with segmental wall motion abnormalities; repeat ECHO (two weeks later)-Normalization of EF and no wall motion abnormalities; cardiac catheterization (two weeks later)-clean coronaries. Pt diagnosed with Takotsubo cardiomyopathy.

Treatment

Due to patient's immunocompromised state, he was medically managed with aspirin, clopidogrel, rosuvastatin, and aggressive intravenous hydration in cardiac intensive care unit.

Related reports

Patient initially thought to have acute coronary syndrome but was eventually found to have Takotsubo cardiomyopathy. Patient had clean coronaries on Cardiac catheterization and on repeat ECHO, his EF normalized and wall motion abnormalities resolved.

Term explanation

Non M3 AML-According to French-American-British classification acute myeloid leukemia are sub grouped in to 8 categories M0-M7. This classification guides the therapy and prognosis in patients diagnosed with AML.

Experiences and lessons

Vigilance should be observed while treating patients with daunorubicin and/or cytarabine.

Peer review

This is first case report of takotsubo cardiomyopathy associated with daunorubicin and/or cytarabine.

REFERENCES

1 **Pai VB**, Nahata MC. Cardiotoxicity of chemotherapeutic agents: incidence, treatment and prevention. *Drug Saf* 2000; **22**: 263-302 [PMID: 10789823 DOI: 10.2165/00002018-200022040-00002]

2 **Smith SA**, Auseon AJ. Chemotherapy-induced takotsubo cardiomyopathy. *Heart Fail Clin* 2013; **9**: 233-242, x [PMID: 23562124 DOI: 10.1016/j.hfc.2012.12.009]

3 **Y-Hassan S**, Tornvall P, Törnerud M, Henareh L. Capecitabine caused cardiogenic shock through induction of global Takotsubo syndrome. *Cardiovasc Revasc Med* 2013; **14**: 57-61 [PMID: 23218901 DOI: 10.1016/j.carrev.2012.10.001]

4 **Grunwald MR**, Howie L, Diaz LA. Takotsubo cardiomyopathy and Fluorouracil: case report and review of the literature. *J Clin Oncol* 2012; **30**: e11-e14 [PMID: 22147738 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2011.38.5278]

5 **Stewart T**, Pavlakis N, Ward M. Cardiotoxicity with 5-fluorouracil and capecitabine: more than just vasospastic angina. *Intern Med J* 2010; **40**: 303-307 [PMID: 20529041 DOI: 10.1111/j.1445-5994.2009.02144.x]

6 **Mitsumori T**, Nakajima K, Nozaki Y, Hamanaka S, Nagashima T, Kirito K, Iwao N, Komatsu N. [Multiple myeloma complicated with Takotsubo cardiomyopathy]. *Rinsho Ketsueki* 2010; **51**: 291-296 [PMID: 20467228]

7 **Gewirtz DA**. A critical evaluation of the mechanisms of action proposed for the antitumor effects of the anthracycline antibiotics adriamycin and daunorubicin. *Biochem Pharmacol* 1999; **57**: 727-741 [PMID: 10075079 DOI: 10.1016/S0006-2952(98)00307-4]

8 **Chua CC**, Liu X, Gao J, Hamdy RC, Chua BH. Multiple actions of pifithrin-alpha on doxorubicin-induced apoptosis in rat myoblastic H9c2 cells. *Am J Physiol Heart Circ Physiol* 2006; **290**: H2606-H2613 [PMID: 16687611 DOI: 10.1152/ajpheart.01138.2005]

9 **Childs AC**, Phaneuf SL, Dirks AJ, Phillips T, Leeuwenburgh C. Doxorubicin treatment in vivo causes cytochrome C release and cardiomyocyte apoptosis, as well as increased mitochondrial efficiency, superoxide dismutase activity, and Bcl-2: Bax ratio. *Cancer Res* 2002; **62**: 4592-4598 [PMID: 12183413]

10 **Wang GW**, Klein JB, Kang YJ. Metallothionein inhibits doxorubicin-induced mitochondrial cytochrome c release and caspase-3 activation in cardiomyocytes. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther* 2001; **298**: 461-468 [PMID: 11454906]

11 **Goormaghtigh E**, Huart P, Praet M, Brasseur R, Ruysschaert

JM. Structure of the adriamycin-cardiolipin complex. Role in mitochondrial toxicity. *Biophys Chem* 1990; **35**: 247-257 [PMID: 2204444 DOI: 10.1016/0301-4622(90)80012-V]

12 **Williams SF**, Larson RA. Hypersensitivity reaction to high-dose cytarabine. *Br J Haematol* 1989; **73**: 274-275 [PMID: 2530999 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2141.1989.tb00267.x]

P- Reviewer: de Botton S, Kurpisz MK, Tobita K
S- Editor: Song XX **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Clinical Cases

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.12998/wjcc.v2.i10.569

World J Clin Cases 2014 October 16; 2(10): 569-577
ISSN 2307-8960 (online)

CASE REPORT

Intensive outpatient comprehensive behavioral intervention for tics: A case series

Tabatha H Blount, Ann-Louise T Lockhart, Rocio V Garcia, Jeslina J Raj, Alan L Peterson

Tabatha H Blount, Jeslina J Raj, Alan L Peterson, Department of Psychiatry, The University of Texas Health Science Center at San Antonio, San Antonio, TX 78229, United States
Ann-Louise T Lockhart, Rocio V Garcia, Child and Adolescent Psychology, San Antonio Military Medical Center, Joint Base San Antonio, Ft. Sam Houston, TX 78234, United States
Author contributions: Blount TH and Lockhart AT made equal contributions to the manuscript; Peterson AL designed the report; Blount TH collected patient data and wrote Introduction, Patient A, and assisted with overall editing; Lockhart AT and Garcia RV collected clinical data and wrote Patient B and Discussion; Raj JJ helped write introduction and methods for Patient A.
Correspondence to: Alan L Peterson, Professor, Department of Psychiatry, The University of Texas Health Science Center at San Antonio, 7550 IH-10 West, Suite 1325, San Antonio, TX 78229, United States. petersona3@uthscsa.edu
Telephone: +1-210-5677000
Received: April 22, 2014 Revised: May 29, 2014
Accepted: August 27, 2014
Published online: October 16, 2014

Abstract

Recent randomized clinical trials have established the efficacy of Comprehensive Behavioral Intervention for Tics (CBIT) in treating children and adults with Tourette syndrome and persistent tic disorders. However, the standard CBIT protocol uses a weekly outpatient treatment format (*i.e.*, 8 sessions over 10 wk), which may be inconvenient or impractical for some patients, particularly patients, who are required to travel long distances in order to receive care. In contrast, an intensive outpatient program may increase accessibility to evidence-based behavioral treatments for Tourette syndrome and other persistent tic disorders by eliminating the necessity of repeated travel. This case series evaluated the use of an intensive outpatient program CBIT (IOP CBIT) for the treatment of 2 preadolescent males (ages 10 and 14 years) with Tourette syndrome. The IOP CBIT treatment protocol included several hours of daily treatment over a 4-d period. Both children evidenced notable reductions in their tics and maintained treatment gains at follow-up. Moreover, both patients and their parents expressed treatment satisfaction with the IOP CBIT format. This case series addresses an important research gap in the behavioral treatment of tic disorders literature. The patients' treatment outcomes indicate that IOP CBIT is a promising treatment that warrants more systematic investigation.

Key words: Tourette syndrome; Tics; Habit reversal; Intensive outpatient; Behavior therapy

Core tip: Comprehensive Behavioral Intervention for Tics (CBIT) is an empirically supported treatment for individuals with Tourette syndrome. However, the standard, weekly outpatient format of CBIT may preclude some from receiving care. This is the first case series to examine the treatment outcomes of intensive outpatient CBIT (Intensive Outpatient Program CBIT) in children. Despite marked differences between the two boy's presentations, outcomes for both cases were positive.

Blount TH, Lockhart AT, Garcia RV, Raj JJ, Peterson AL. Intensive outpatient comprehensive behavioral intervention for tics: A case series. *World J Clin Cases* 2014; 2(10): 569-577 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2307-8960/full/v2/i10/569.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.12998/wjcc.v2.i10.569

INTRODUCTION

Tourette syndrome (TS) is a disorder characterized by multiple motor tics and at least one vocal tic that occur regularly and are present for at least 12 mo[1]. On average, tics emerge between the ages of 3 and 8 years, peak between 10 and 12 years, and decrease in adulthood[2,3]. An estimated 60% of children with Tourette syndrome also

meet diagnostic criteria for at least one psychological disorder, with attention deficit hyperactive disorder (ADHD) being the most common comorbid condition[4], followed by obsessive compulsive disorder (OCD), social anxiety, depression, and externalizing behaviors[4-6].

Standard treatments for tourette syndrome and persistent tics

Historically, pharmacologic interventions have been used as the first-line treatment for symptom management in Tourette syndrome patients[7]. However, medications require long-term continuous use and are associated with negative side effects that frequently lead to discontinuation of treatment (for review, see[7-9]). Alternatively, behavioral interventions reduce concerns regarding negative side effects and potential long-term consequences of prolonged medication use. A number of behavioral interventions have been examined (for review, see[10]) with habit reversal therapy[11] garnering the most support (for review, see[12]). Habit reversal consists of awareness training, contingency management, relaxation training, competing response training, social support, and generalization training.

Comprehensive Behavioral Intervention for Tics (CBIT)[13] is a multiple-component behavioral treatment for Tourette syndrome and persistent tic disorders that expands on the original habit reversal therapy protocol and includes additional emphasis on psychoeducation, functional interventions, and relapse prevention. Recently, two large randomized controlled trials examined the efficacy of CBIT compared to supportive therapy in adults and children diagnosed with Tourette syndrome and persistent tic disorders. The child study (n = 126; mean age 11.7 years) found that CBIT was superior to a psychoeducation and supportive therapy comparison condition in reducing tics (52.5% *vs* 18.5%, respectively)[14]. The adult study (n = 122; 16-69 years) also found superior results for CBIT, with 38.1% of the participants who received CBIT *vs* 6.4% in the psychoeducation and supportive therapy condition experiencing a significant improvement in their tics symptoms at post-treatment[15]. Importantly, both adults and children in the CBIT condition maintained treatment gains and reported decreased psychological symptoms at the six-month follow-up.

Taken together, these findings indicate that CBIT produces similar outcomes as medication without the side effects and that patients continue to experience benefits after treatment is completed[14]. In response to mounting evidence, CBIT is now considered a first-line treatment for persistent tic disorders in Europe[12] and Canada[16].

Rationale for intensive outpatient CBIT

The standard outpatient CBIT protocol is comprised of eight sessions that are completed over 10 wk, followed by three monthly booster sessions. However, weekly sessions may be inconvenient or impractical for some patients depending on the complexity of their symptoms or their accessibility to care. Instead, these patients may benefit from an intensive outpatient program (IOP) that compresses CBIT into a week-long protocol. An IOP can help extend treatment catchment areas and compensate for the current lack of CBIT providers. Importantly, IOP also allows for patients to practice CBIT without the distraction of school or work. This is particularly relevant to the use of the competing response procedure, which is to be implemented upon the detection of a premonitory urge to tic or the actual occurrence of a tic. The IOP CBIT allows patients to dedicate time specifically to detecting urges and tics and implementing the competing responses without the distractions of day-to-day life. To date, no studies have been published evaluating the effectiveness of an IOP CBIT. However, Flancbuam *et al*[17] presented a case study detailing the outcome of a 25-year-old male diagnosed with TS who traveled to the United States in order to receive seven sessions of adapted CBIT over two weeks[13]. The patient reported notable decreases in tic frequency and subjective distress and high treatment satisfaction at posttreatment, although he also reported a lapse in his tic symptoms when he returned home.

Little is known about the benefits of IOP CBIT, but there is precedence for treating children with an IOP behavioral program. For example, Whiteside and colleagues[18] present a case series of three adolescents who received 10 sessions of exposure and response prevention for OCD over five days. Each of the three adolescents experienced a decrease in OCD symptoms at posttreatment, and two maintained gains after three months. Moreover, an IOP (one session) protocol has been used to treat specific phobia in children and has demonstrated efficacy in three randomized controlled trials (for review, see[19]).

Goals of the case series

The current case series addresses an important limitation in the literature by examining whether IOP CBIT can help quickly reduce tic severity in two youth diagnosed with TS. Although the boys in the case series differed markedly by age, ethnicity, psychological symptoms, behavioral distress, and tic severity, and although they were treated by different treatment teams (see Table 1), both evidenced a notable reduction in tics and maintained their treatment gains. The patients and their parents provided written informed consent for this case series.

CASE REPORT

Patient A

Patient A (see Table 1) was a 10-year-old Asian-American male in the fourth grade. He was placed in the gifted-and-talented program and advanced mathematics. He maintained good grades but had occasional behavioral problems at school. He had several friends and was involved in piano, karate, and chess.

Patient A's tics were first noticed by his second grade teacher when he was 7 years old. He was evaluated by a neurologist and a psychologist a year prior to receiving IOP CBIT. Both diagnosed him with Tourette syndrome.

Table 1 Summary of patient information

	Patient A	Patient B
Age (yr)	10	14
Ethnicity	Asian-American	African-American
Academic history	4th grade Gifted and talented	9th grade Dysgraphia, low-intellectual functioning, and disorder of written expression
Psychological history	Tourette syndrome	Tourette syndrome, ADHD, specific phobia, anxiety, insomnia, and stuttering
Tic interference	Minimal	Significant
Type (number) of tics	Motor (5)	Motor (6) and vocal (4)
Treatment teams	Psychologist, psychology postdoctoral fellow, and psychology intern	Psychologist and two psychology postdoctoral fellows
Length of treatment	4 d, 8 treatment sessions	4 d, 3 treatment sessions

ADHD: Attention deficit hyperactive disorder.

Table 2 Patient A and B's outcome assessment scores

Measures	Baseline	1 wk posttreatment	1 mo follow-up	7 mo follow-up	Baseline		1 wk posttreatment		1 mo follow-up		6 mo follow-up	
	Patient A				Patient B							
	M	M	M	M	M	P	M	P	M	P	M	P
YGTSS												
Total	15	9	6	5	21	18	15	13	11	12	14	13
Number	2	1	1	2	5	4	4	4	2	2	2	2
Frequency	4	4	2	2	3	3	3	3	2	2	2	3
Intensity	4	3	2	1	4	4	2	2	3	4	2	4
Complexity	3	0	0	0	4	3	2	2	2	3	4	3
Interference	2	1	1	0	5	4	4	2	2	1	4	1
CGI-SI	4	3	2	2	5		3-4		3		4	
CGI-I		1	1	1	-		2		2		3	

M: Motor tic; P: Phonic tic; YGTSS: Yale Global Tic Severity Scale (Clinical Cut-off: 14), YGTSS subscales are out 5, with 0: None, 5: Severe; CGI-SI: Clinical Global Impressions-Severity of Illness (0: Not assessed; 1: Normal; 2: Borderline; 3: Mild; 4: Moderate; 5: Mark; 6: Severe; 7: Extreme); CGI-I: Clinical Global Impression-Improvement (0: Not assessed; 1: Very much improved; 2: Much improved; 3: Improved; 4:Minimal improvement; 5: No change; 6: Minimal worse; 7: Much worse; 8: Very much worse).

The neurologist recommended medication, which his parents decided against, and the psychologist recommended yoga and family therapy. They attended two sessions of family therapy but discontinued treatment after deciding that it was not helpful. After researching behavioral treatments on the Internet, Patient A's mother contacted one of the authors (ALP) to inquire about receiving CBIT for her son. Since the family would be required to travel to another city to receive CBIT, the staff and his mother agreed to use an IOP CBIT protocol. The patient presented for care in March 2013. At baseline, he and his mother reported that he experienced frequent facial tics that interfered with piano practice and chess competitions, but the tics did not interfere with his academic or social functioning. However, his mother was concerned that he would have tic-related social difficulties when he started middle school the following year.

Baseline assessment

A baseline assessment was conducted by a master's level independent evaluator (IE), who was not involved in the patient's treatment. The Yale Global Tic Severity Scale (YGTSS)[20] and the Clinical Global Impression Scale (CGI)[21] were administered at baseline, posttreatment, and follow-up and were the main outcome measures for treatment (see Table 2). The YGTSS, a semi-structured clinical interview, is routinely used in the TS literature and has well established psychometric properties (*e.g.*,[14, 20, 22,23]). It provides a Total Motor Tic Score (range: 0-25), Total Phonic Tic Score (range: 0-25), Total Tic Score (range: 0-50); past studies have used YGTSS Total Scores greater than 13 as a cut-off for clinically significant tics (> 9 if patient has only motor or vocal tics; *e.g.*,[14]). A decrease of 4 points on the YGTSS is considered clinically meaningful in children[14]. The YGTSS was conducted by the IE and was completed by the patient with the help of his mother. The CGI-S and CGI-I scales are well-established rating tools applicable to all psychiatric disorders[21]. The CGI-S scale is used to assess treatment response in patients. The CGI-S requires the clinician to rate the severity of the patient's illness at the time of the assessment, relative to the clinician's past experience with patients who have the same diagnosis. The CGI-I requires the clinician to rate how much the patient's illness has improved or worsened relative to a baseline state.

The IE also administered the Kiddie Schedule for Affective Disorders and Schizophrenia-Present and Lifetime Version[24], a semi-structured clinical interview designed to determine present episode and lifetime history of psychiatric illness based on the diagnostic criteria of the

Table 3 Overview of Patient A's treatment schedule

	Day 1	Day 2	Day 3	Day 4
Session	1:90 min	3:60 min	5:60 min	7:60 min
Number	Review history	Review OOSAs	Review OOSAs	Review OOSAs
	Treatment rational	Inconvenience review	Inconvenience review	Inconvenience review
	Psychoeducation	Review treatment tic 1	Review treatment tic 1-3	Review treatment tic 1-3
	Tic hierarchy	Functional intervention	Functional intervention	Functional intervention
	Introduce function-based interventions	Competing response tic 2	Competing response tic 2	Competing response tic 2 Review relaxation
	Introduce reward program	Reward review	PMR	Relapse prevention
	Teach tic monitoring		Reward review	Reward review
Lunch (2 h)	Monitor tic 1	Monitor tics 1, 2	Monitor tics 1-3	Monitor tics 1-3
	Functional assessment	Practice CRs 1, 2	Practice CRs 1-3	Practice CRs 1-3
Session	2:90 min	4:60 min	6:60 min	8:60 min
Number	Review OOSAs	Review OOSAs	Review OOSAs	Review OOSAs
	Inconvenience review	Inconvenience review	Inconvenience review	Inconvenience review
	Functional assessment and treatment tic 1	Review treatment tic 1 and 2	Review treatment tic 1-3	Review treatment tic 1-3
	Competing response tic 1	Functional intervention tic 3	Functional intervention tic 2	Functional intervention
	Reward review	Competing response tic 3	Competing response tic 2	Competing response tic 2
		Introduce relaxation	Review relaxation	Review relaxation
		Diaphragmatic breathing	Reward review	Relapse prevention
		Reward review		Reward review
OOSAs	Practice CR for tic 1	Practice CRs tics 1-3	Practice CRs tics 1-3	Posttreatment assessment
	Monitor 30 min	Monitor 30 min	Monitor 30 min	
		Relaxed breathing	Relaxation	

CR: Competing response; OOSA: Out of session assignment; PMR: Progressive muscle relaxation.

Table 4 Patient's A tic symptom hierarchy tracker ratings

	S1	S3	S4	S5	S6	S7	S8	1 mo	6 mo
Eye Blink	6	6	4	4	3	1	2	0	1
Upper Lip	4	4	4	1	1	0	1	0	0
Facial Grimace	6	6	0	1	1	0	0	0	0
Neck Jerk	9	3	2	1	1	0	1	1	0
Nose Flair	4	4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Session 2 (S2) scores were not recorded; Subjective Unit of Distress Scale range from 0 to 10, with 0: No Distress; 10: Extreme distress.

Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, fourth edition, text revision[25]. In addition, the patient completed the Premonitory Urge Scale[26], the Child Yale-Brown Obsessive Compulsive Scale[27,28], and the ADHD Interview[29] at baseline. These commonly used measures were selected to provide a comprehensive evaluation of the patient's tic-related symptoms and psychiatric functioning.

The assessment confirmed a diagnosis of Tourette syndrome with evidence of clinically meaningful motor tics. He had a history of vocal tics but was not experiencing them at the time of the assessment. He did not endorse OCD symptoms and reported only minimal ADHD symptoms. Patient did not meet diagnostic criteria for other Axis I diagnoses.

Formulation, rationale, and treatment plan

Environmental and social factors are believed to play a significant role in tic manifestation[22]. CBIT is an evidence-based behavioral treatment that recognizes and targets these factors. The patient completed eight sessions (60 to 90 min each) of CBIT over four consecutive days (see Table 3). The protocol was administered by a treatment team, including two licensed psychologists and a pre-doctoral psychology intern.

Course of treatment

Psychosocial and tic history were gathered and treatment rationale was provided in Session 1. Consistent with the CBIT manual, Session 1 focused on information gathering and providing a treatment overview and rationale. Patient A's mother was already well versed on TS. Patient A and his mother identified five current motor tics (neck jerk, eye blink, upper lip tic, facial grimace, and nose flair) that occurred in isolation and as a single complex tic (see Table 4). Tic monitoring and the role of social support to encourage skill use were introduced and a reward program was established to reinforce treatment compliance.

The Tic Hassle worksheet[30], the functional assessment procedure, and the competing response procedure were introduced in Session 2 and were conducted each session for the remainder of treatment. The Tic Hassle worksheet uses a Subjective Units of Distress Scale (SUDS), in which patients verbally rate their level of distress on an 11-point scale, with 0 representing minimal distress and 10 representing extreme distress. In Session 2, Patient A identified neck pain (SUDS = 9), people noticing (SUDS = 3), his grandfather staring at him (SUDS = 4), interruption of piano practice (SUDS = 6), and increasing the time it takes to complete school work (SUDS = 5) as tic hassles. By the end of the eighth session, he no longer experienced distress from these hassles. Patient A and his mother had difficulty completing the functional

assessment for the individual tics throughout treatment. They reported that the tics occurred with equal frequency across all settings and denied consequences following tic occurrence. Moreover, due to the format of treatment, they had little to no opportunity to implement relevant function-based interventions at home.

Competing response training focused on one tic at a time, starting with his most distressing tic (*i.e.*, neck jerk tic). This component of treatment requires that patients become more aware of their tics and premonitory urges. Consequently, Patient A was asked to describe his tic and its corresponding premonitory urge, identify each time he engaged in the tic during the training, and then identify each time he experienced the premonitory urge. Next, the patient and the provider collaboratively selected an appropriate competing response. Effective competing responses are physically incompatible with and less conspicuous than the tic, can be performed for at least 60 s, and do not disrupt normal activity[13]. For example, the competing response for the patient's neck jerk tic involved having him gently move his chin forward and focusing on one spot each time he experience the tic or the premonitory urge. Self-monitoring indicated that his neck jerk tic occurred frequently (30 times in 5 min). By Session 4, he described decreased neck pain, and his mother reported a notable decrease in the neck jerk tic. The competing response training was implemented for his eye-blink and lip tics in Sessions 3 and 4, respectively. His competing responses included slow, rhythmic blinking for the eye tic and pursing his lips gently together for the lip tic. He demonstrated quick mastery over the lip tic but continued to have difficulty with his eye-blink tic. Consequently, the eye-blink tic remained the focus of CBIT for Sessions 5 to 8. By Session 8, both he and his mother reported improvement in his eye-blink tic, although his mother still occasionally had to prompt him to engage in his competing response.

Relaxation training was initiated in Session 4, and relapse prevention was discussed in Sessions 7 and 8. Since they had previously disagreed about what constituted a tic, both the patient and his mother were asked to discuss how they would handle new tics should they emerge. Ways to communicate about potential tics were explored, and a plan for this type of conversation was developed. At the end of treatment, both Patient A and his mother expressed high treatment satisfaction.

Patient B

Patient B (see Table 1) was a 14-year-old African-American male. He participated in a home school program in which he attended classes several times per week outside his home and was also involved in track and field. At the time of the intervention, Patient B had not shared information about his diagnosis with peers. As a result, he often suppressed his vocal and motor tics when around peers and then released his urges to tic at home. At intake, Patient B's vocal and motor tics had occurred for approximately six months. He had already been evaluated by pediatric neurology and developmental pediatrics and was prescribed methylphenidate for ADHD, clonidine for tics, and melatonin for sleep. Patient B completed an magnetic resonance imaging and electroencephalography with pediatric neurology, and it was determined that he did not present with epilepsy or other neurological concerns. When the tics were unresponsive to medication intervention, Patient B and his family were referred for behavioral treatment. Patient B's psychological history was positive for developmental delays, ADHD, and learning difficulties, with no prior history of tics. He had previously undergone treatment for specific phobia and stuttering.

Patient B presented for behavioral treatment in Spring 2012. Given the severity of his behaviors at his initial appointment (*i.e.*, grabbing his mother's arm, punching the floor, and difficulty starting and stopping movements), consultation with ALP was sought regarding the appropriateness of outpatient services. It was determined that he might benefit from an intensive outpatient treatment protocol, which started in Summer 2012.

Baseline assessment

A baseline assessment of Patient B's current functioning was conducted by a master's level IE, who was not involved in the treatment delivery, and included the YGTSS[20] and the clinician-rated CGI[21] and the Hopkins Motor/Vocal Tic Scale (HMVTS)[31]. Only the YGTSS and CGI were used as outcome assessments, and additional information about their psychometric properties can be found under Patient A's baseline assessment section. The assessment confirmed the diagnosis of TS and indicated that Patient B was experiencing clinically significant vocal and motor tics (as defined[14]). Specifically, Patient B and his parents reported six motor and four vocal tics, which significantly interfered with family interactions and had begun to interfere with his peer relationships.

Formulation, rationale, and treatment plan

The treatment team met with Patient B and his family to discuss treatment options including IOP CBIT. The family had already exhausted many other options in the community with little to no success, and his parents were hopeful that this alternative approach would alleviate his symptoms. Given the severity of his symptoms, Patient B continued to take clonidine during his participation in IOP CBIT.

Patient B and his parents attended one baseline assessment session and three IOP CBIT sessions over the course of four consecutive days. Although only three IOP CBIT sessions were conducted, the total amount of time spent for the intervention was comparable to that of the standard eight session CBIT protocol. During the course of treatment, Patient B's parents observed through a one-way mirror. Treatment was administered by a team consisting of a board certified child and adolescent psychologist and two child and adolescent postdoctoral fellows (see Table 5 for a summary of the specific treatment schedule).

Table 5 Overview of Patient B's treatment schedule

	Day 1	Day 2	Day 3	Day 4
Session Number	S1: (1.5 h) Baseline assessment Meet therapists Introductions Treatment overview	S2: (3.5 h) Psychoeducation Introduce relaxation Stress *vs* relaxation Relaxation postures PMR + 12 Diaphragmatic breathing Visual imagery Awareness training Psychoeducation about tics Rationale for treatment Tic Sx hierarchy Feedback about assessment	S3: (3.5 h) Review relaxation OOSAs Tic hassles form Competing responses Inconvenience review Review tic 1 and 2 Competing responses 1, 2 Review treatment tic 1 Practice relaxation Competing response 1 and 2 Assign homework	S4: (3.5 h) Competing response Inconvenience review Relaxation practice Review OOSAs Review CR for all tics Summarize progress Emphasize social support Reward review
OOSAs		Practice relaxation Practice PRM + 12 Practice visual imagery	CR tics 1-2 Monitor 15 min, 3-4x F(x) based interventions Relaxed breathing	F(x) based interventions Relaxation Family and social support

PMR: Progressive muscle relaxation; Sx: Symptoms; CR: Competing response; OOSA: Out of session assignment; F(x) = Function.

Course of treatment

During the baseline assessment, Patient B and his parents identified six current motor tics (grabbing/touching, putting napkins in mouth, full-body twitches, open mouth with head nodding, "closing" self into small spaces, tapping surfaces) and four vocal tics (screaming, humming, repeating self, and "Aahh" sounds). The treatment agenda, rationale, tic monitoring, and family support were discussed with Patient B and his parents.

CBIT was initiated in Session 2. The treatment team provided psychoeducation about tic disorders, the rationale for competing response training, awareness training, and the stress and relaxation responses. The team also engaged the patient in several relaxation strategies and progressive muscle relaxation, which yielded a notable decrease in his tics. A hierarchy of the patient's current tics was developed. Patient B was assigned relaxation and tic monitoring homework, which was reviewed at the start of the next session (see Table 5).

The following day, Patient B reported some benefit with homework while his mother reported a reduction in the severity and intensity of the grabbing tic in public places. Session 3 focused on completing the tic hassles worksheet[30], in which Patient B described the grabbing tic and vocal tic as most bothersome. He identified arm pain (SUDS = 9), parental dependence (SUDS = 11), and annoying others (SUDS = 7) as tic hassles. Patient B reported that his vocal tic was embarrassing (SUDS = 10). Competing response training was implemented with one tic at a time, starting with the most distressing tic (grabbing), followed by the vocal tic. For the grabbing tic, Patient B was asked to practice squeezing his hands together and pushing them down as a competing response. For the vocal tic, Patient B was instructed to clench his teeth and push his tongue against the roof of his mouth as his competing response.

On Day 4, the treatment team reviewed the homework, in which the patient's mother observed only one vocal tic during several discrete tic observation periods. Patient B reported not having any tics or urges while at a friend's house, and he stated that he did not feel as though he was suppressing his tics. Because Patient B was still reporting some difficulty identifying premonitory urges, a token economy was also implemented during the session whereby Patient B earned points towards a desirable reward for detecting a premonitory urge by notifying the provider (*i.e.*, raising his finger) and engaging in the appropriate competing response. Patient B responded positively to the token economy and was motivated to identify premonitory urges. He was also able to resist the urge to tic or engaged in the tic for markedly less time compared to pretreatment. At the end of the session, Patient B and his mother reported improvement in the awareness of his tics and premonitory urges. The treatment team also practiced relaxation strategies, summarized treatment progress, and discussed relapse prevention during the last part of the session. Providers emphasized the importance of ongoing social and family support.

Over four days of assessment and treatment, behavioral improvement was observed and noted by all three providers, Patient B, and his parents. Patient B reported feeling skeptical at the beginning of the week about whether this treatment would be effective, but at the last session he stated, "I stand corrected." Patient B was able to control his tics by either stopping them from occurring, notifying providers when he was about to have one, and/or decreasing the length of time spent engaging in specific tic behaviors. Overall, Patient B and his parents verbally reported high treatment satisfaction.

Results

Patient A: By the end of treatment, Patient A and his mother reported a clinically meaningful decrease in his tic severity as assessed by the YGTSS and the CGI. Importantly, his tic severity scores had decreased further by the

one-month follow-up (see Table 2). Following their one-month follow-up assessment, Patient A and his mother attended a 60-min booster session, in which his mother reported that she only occasionally noticed a slight eye-blink tic. Patient A disagreed with his mother that this was a tic. He also reported that although he still experienced an urge to tic, the urge was less severe and occurred less frequently. Both Patient A and his mother reported continued treatment satisfaction with IOP CBIT at follow-up. Patient A and his mother reported continued treatment gains at the seven-month follow-up and high treatment satisfaction. More specifically, he reported that he continued to occasionally experience a slight eye tic. However, both he and his mother agreed that the tic was not noticeable to others and did not cause him interference. No new tics emerged from the time of treatment completion through the seven-month follow-up period.

Patient B: The YGTSS (see Table 5) and HMVTS were administered by the same IE and completed by Patient B with the help of his parents at one week, one month, and six months. Overall, the assessments revealed clinically meaningful improvement in Patient B's functioning (see Table 2). At the one-week follow up, there was an overall reduction in number of tics (10 *vs* 2). The parents reported that Patient B had not engaged in the grabbing tic in the previous week, that he was more aware of the urge to grab, and that he was able to apply a more appropriate competing response (*i.e.*, walking away, distraction, breathing). During follow-up interviews, Patient B was observed using several appropriate competing responses (*i.e.*, crossing his arms, sitting on his hands) in reaction to the urge to grab others. Patient B also reported feeling "a lot better," stating, "I don't really tic as much." He also reported that the duration of his tics had decreased, that he was less bothered by his tics, and that the tics were less noticeable to others in public. The parents confirmed his impressions. Patient B was also provided with additional suggestions on competing responses to use for the remaining tics. The treatment team reviewed the follow-up plan with parents, which included booster sessions.

At the one-month follow-up, the YGTSS revealed that treatment gains had been maintained, and Patient B demonstrated a reduction in tic number, frequency, and interference of both motor and vocal tics. By the six-month follow-up, Patient B was exhibiting a slight increase in the frequency of vocal tics and an increase in the complexity and interference of motor tics (see Table 2); however, Patient B admitted to not practicing the breathing and relaxation strategies. Therefore, booster sessions were scheduled to review IOP CBIT components.

Although Patient B's presentation at six months post-treatment revealed some regression (as seen in Table 2), the family expressed their appreciation for Patient B's progress and his ability to function better at home and at school. The family also stated that the tics had become "so subtle" that he was no longer concerned or upset by them.

DISCUSSION

The current case series describes the implementation of an intensive outpatient behavioral treatment with two preadolescents who presented with Tourette syndrome. Despite their different presentations, both patients demonstrated treatment gains following the IOP CBIT intervention. The generalizability of the current case series is unknown at this time. However, IOP CBIT may be appropriate for individuals who present with moderate to severe tics, those who are experiencing clinically significant impairment in daily academic and social functioning, and for individuals and their families who desire to experience a quick reduction in motor and/or vocal tics. On the other hand, individuals who might not be good candidates for CBIT include those with oppositional and/or defiant behaviors, since adherence to the treatment protocol would likely prove to be a challenge. In addition, because it is important for individuals with Tourette's to receive adequate psychosocial support in monitoring and reducing their tics, those with chaotic or limited family and social support systems may find this protocol challenging.

It should be noted that many individuals with Tourette syndrome experience a waxing and waning of symptoms over time and that many tics resolve on their own[2,3]. Although CBIT is not a cure for Tourette syndrome, based on the current case series, individuals who follow the treatment protocol can expect to learn tools and skills to better manage their tics, understand their premonitory urges, reduce the negative impact of the tics on their lives, and experience improvement in their overall academic and social functioning[14].

Limitations and future directions

Despite addressing an important gap in the literature pertaining to the use of an intensive outpatient CBIT approach with children and adolescents, there are several limitations to the current case series that should be noted. First, an intensive treatment approach requires a time commitment from parents and patients that would likely require a parent to request time away from work and/or a child to be absent from school. This might present a financial challenge for some parents and possibly create academic stressors for some children. It also raises the question about the most convenient time to deliver an intensive outpatient intervention for children and adolescents. That is, Patient A received his treatment during a planned school break, while Patient B was seen during the summer. Clinicians should consider and discuss the time commitment it takes for families to participate in this type of intensive treatment approach.

Second, both patients received treatment at academic medical centers without individual fee-for-service costs as a part of psychology internship and postdoctoral training programs. It is possible that many families might find paying out-of-pocket for an intensive outpatient treatment to be a financial burden. Moreover, with the increased limitations placed on behavioral health services by managed

care organizations, insurance companies might be unable or unwilling to pay for an intensive outpatient program. Future research should examine the generalizability of a comprehensive behavioral intervention for TS in the community at large. Third, receiving treatment as part of a research study or through a military treatment facility would also facilitate access to services for this population. While members of the current treatment teams received training, consultation, and/or supervision from one of the leading researchers (ALP) in the field of TS, accessibility of behavioral health providers who are trained in CBIT might be more limited in other geographical areas. Both families reported feeling grateful that they had access to the current treatment teams. Agencies and educational institutions would greatly benefit the community by offering more training opportunities for behavioral health providers in the treatment of TS. The Tourette Syndrome Association has sponsored many CBIT training programs.

Finally, the intensive outpatient program implemented in the current treatment protocol might compromise the external validity of the intervention. Both patients received the intensive treatment at a much faster pace compared to traditional therapy, creating an artificial environment in which to practice the skills learned. This limited both patients' ability to practice the functional based interventions in their everyday environments at a more natural pace. Future research should continue to examine the generalizability and long-term benefits of IOP CBIT. Future research should also consider a single subject research design or an experimental research design to include a control group receiving traditional weekly CBIT with the experimental group receiving IOP CBIT over 3-4 d.

The current case series adds an important piece to the scientific literature on the behavioral treatment of Tourette syndrome and persistent tic disorders by demonstrating that Cognitive Behavioral Intervention for Tics employed as part of an intensive outpatient program can reduce tic severity. The use of an intensive outpatient program incorporating Comprehensive Behavioral Intervention for Tics appears to offer several benefits. First, the patients in this case study were able to make notable progress over the span of 1 wk *vs* 10 wk. Additionally, IOP CBIT allows patients to focus almost exclusively on developing and practicing their competing responses without the interference of work or school. IOP CBIT also expands the potential treatment catchment areas, which would make CBIT more accessible to a wider range of patients who would otherwise be limited by geography or expense. Importantly, an IOP CBIT has the potential to help compensate for the current lack of CBIT providers.

COMMENTS

Case characteristics

Both Patients A (10-year-old male) and B (14-year-old male) experienced multiple tics that were consistent with Tourette syndrome.

Clinical diagnosis

Patients A and B both met diagnostic criteria for Tourette syndrome.

Differential diagnosis

Patients A and B were both assessed for attention deficit hyperactive disorder and obsessive compulsive disorder.

Treatment

Patients completed intensive outpatient Comprehensive Behavioral Interventions for Tics (CBIT).

Related reports

Although previous studies support the use of CBIT, when delivered in eight weekly sessions, more research is needed to determine whether an intensive outpatient format can improve tic management in children with a persistent tic disorders; however, the treatment outcome of these two cases are promising.

Experiences and lessons

This case series represents the first report of treatment outcomes following an intensive outpatient CBIT protocol for children. Although future research is required before more definitive conclusions can be reached, the findings of this case series suggest that Intensive Outpatient Program CBIT may reduce tic symptoms in children with Tourette syndrome.

Peer review

This is a template for a valuable modification of CBIT for those who desire thorough management in a short period of time. This represents a promising approach that merits confirmation by other investigators in other settings.

REFERENCES

1 **American Psychiatric Association**. Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders, Fifth edition. Arlington, VA: American Psychiatric Association, 2013
2 **Jankovic J**. Tourette's syndrome. *N Engl J Med* 2001; **345**: 1184-1192 [PMID: 11642235 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMra010032]
3 **Leckman JF**, Zhang H, Vitale A, Lahnin F, Lynch K, Bondi C, Kim YS, Peterson BS. Course of tic severity in Tourette syndrome: the first two decades. *Pediatrics* 1998; **102**: 14-19 [PMID: 9651407 DOI: 10.1542/peds.102.1.14]
4 **Specht M**, Woods D, Piacentini J, Scahill L, Wilhelm S, Peterson A, Walkup J. Clinical characteristics of children and adolescents with a primary tic disorder. *J Dev Phys Disabil* 2011; **23**: 15-31 [DOI: 10.1007/s10882-010-9223-z]
5 **Bloch MH**, Leckman JF. Clinical course of Tourette syndrome. *J Psychosom Res* 2009; **67**: 497-501 [PMID: 19913654 DOI: 10.1016/j.jpsychores.2009.09.002]
6 **Rizzo R**, Gulisano M, Calì PV, Curatolo P. Long term clinical course of Tourette syndrome. *Brain Dev* 2012; **34**: 667-673 [PMID: 22178151 DOI: 10.1016/j.braindev.2011.11.006]
7 **Scahill L**, Erenberg G, Berlin CM, Budman C, Coffey BJ, Jankovic J, Kiessling L, King RA, Kurlan R, Lang A, Mink J, Murphy T, Zinner S, Walkup J. Contemporary assessment and pharmacotherapy of Tourette syndrome. *NeuroRx* 2006; **3**: 192-206 [PMID: 16554257 DOI: 10.1016/j.nurx.2006.01.009]
8 **Peterson AL**, Azrin NH. Behavioral and pharmacological treatments for Tourette syndrome: A review. *Appl Prev Psychol* 1993; **2**: 231-242 [DOI: 10.1016/S0962-1849(05)80093-9]
9 **Peterson AL**, Campise RL, Azrin NH. Behavioral and pharmacological treatments for tic and habit disorders: a review. *J Dev Behav Pediatr* 1994; **15**: 430-441 [PMID: 7884015 DOI: 10.1097/00004703-199412000-00007]
10 **Peterson AL**. Psychosocial management of tics and intentional repetitive behaviors associated with Tourette syndome. In Woods DW, Piacentini JC, Walkup JT (Eds), Treating Tourette syndrome and tic disorders: A guide for practitioners (pp. 154-184). New York: Guildford Press, 2007
11 **Azrin NH**, Nunn RG. Habit reversal: A method of eliminating nervous habits and tics. *Behav Res Ther* 1973; **11**: 619-628 [DOI: 10.1016/0005-7967(73)90119-8]
12 **Verdellen C**, van de Griendt J, Hartmann A, Murphy T. European clinical guidelines for Tourette syndrome and other tic disorders. Part III: behavioural and psychosocial interven-

tions. *Eur Child Adolesc Psychiatry* 2011; **20**: 197-207 [PMID: 21445725 DOI: 10.1007/s00787-011-0167-3]
13 **Woods DW**, Piacentini JC, Chang SW, Deckerbach T, Ginsburg GS, Peterson AL, Wilhelm S. Managing Tourette syndrome: A behavioral intervention for children and adults. Therapist guide. New York: Oxford University Press, 2008
14 **Piacentini J**, Woods DW, Scahill L, Wilhelm S, Peterson AL, Chang S, Ginsburg GS, Deckersbach T, Dziura J, Levi-Pearl S, Walkup JT. Behavior therapy for children with Tourette disorder: a randomized controlled trial. *JAMA* 2010; **303**: 1929-1937 [PMID: 20483969 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2010.607]
15 **Wilhelm S**, Peterson AL, Piacentini J, Woods DW, Deckersbach T, Sukhodolsky DG, Chang S, Liu H, Dziura J, Walkup JT, Scahill L. Randomized trial of behavior therapy for adults with Tourette syndrome. *Arch Gen Psychiatry* 2012; **69**: 795-803 [PMID: 22868933 DOI: 10.1001/archgenpsychiatry.]
16 **Steeves T**, McKinlay BD, Gorman D, Billinghurst L, Day L, Carroll A, Dion Y, Doja A, Luscombe S, Sandor P, Pringsheim T. Canadian guidelines for the evidence-based treatment of tic disorders: behavioural therapy, deep brain stimulation, and transcranial magnetic stimulation. *Can J Psychiatry* 2012; **57**: 144-151 [PMID: 22398000]
17 **Flancbaum M**, Rockmore L, Franklin ME. Intensive behavior therapy for tics: Implications for clinical practice and overcoming barriers to treatment. *J Dev Phys Disabil* 2011; **23**: 61-69 [DOI: 10.1007/s10882-010-9222-0]
18 **Whiteside SP**, Brown AM, Abramowitz JS. Five-day intensive treatment for adolescent OCD: a case series. *J Anxiety Disord* 2008; **22**: 495-504 [PMID: 17543497 DOI: 10.1016/j.janxdis.2007.05.001]
19 **Davis TE 3rd**, Ollendick TH, Ost LG. Intensive Treatment of Specific Phobias in Children and Adolescents. *Cogn Behav Pract* 2009; **16**: 294-303 [PMID: 20161063 DOI: 10.1016/j.cbpra.2008.12.008]
20 **Leckman JF**, Riddle MA, Hardin MT, Ort SI, Swartz KL, Stevenson J, Cohen DJ. The Yale Global Tic Severity Scale: initial testing of a clinician-rated scale of tic severity. *J Am Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry* 1989; **28**: 566-573 [PMID: 2768151 DOI: 10.1097/00004583-198907000-00015]
21 **Guy W**, Bonato R. Manual for the ECDEU Assessment Battery (2nd ed.). Chevy Chase, MD: U.S. Department of Health, Education, and Welfare, National Institute of Mental Health, 1970
22 **Caurín B**, Serrano M, Fernández-Alvarez E, Campistol J, Pérez-Dueñas B. Environmental circumstances influencing tic expression in children. *Eur J Paediatr Neurol* 2014; **18**: 157-162 [PMID: 24210363 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejpn.2013.10.002]
23 **Storch EA**, Murphy TK, Geffken GR, Sajid M, Allen P, Roberti JW, Goodman WK. Reliability and validity of the Yale Global Tic Severity Scale. *Psychol Assess* 2005; **17**: 486-491 [PMID: 16393016 DOI: 10.1037/1040-3590.17.4.486.]
24 **Kaufman J**, Birmaher B, Brent D, Rao U, Flynn C, Moreci P, Williamson D, Ryan N. Schedule for Affective Disorders and Schizophrenia for School-Age Children-Present and Lifetime Version (K-SADS-PL): initial reliability and validity data. *J Am Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry* 1997; **36**: 980-988 [PMID: 9204677 DOI: 10.1097/00004583-199707000-00021]
25 **American Psychiatric Association**. Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders (4th ed., text rev.). Washington, DC: Author, 2000
26 **Woods DW**, Piacentini J, Himle MB, Chang S. Premonitory Urge for Tics Scale (PUTS): initial psychometric results and examination of the premonitory urge phenomenon in youths with Tic disorders. *J Dev Behav Pediatr* 2005; **26**: 397-403 [PMID: 16344654 DOI: 10.1097/00004703-200512000-00001]
27 **Goodman WK**, Price LH, Rasmussen SA, Mazure C, Fleischmann RL, Hill CL, Heninger GR, Charney DS. The Yale-Brown Obsessive Compulsive Scale. I. Development, use, and reliability. *Arch Gen Psychiatry* 1989; **46**: 1006-1011 [PMID: 2684084 DOI: 10.1001/archpsyc.1989.01810110048007]
28 **Goodman WK**, Price LH, Rasmussen SA, Mazure C, Delgado P, Heninger GR, Charney DS. The Yale-Brown Obsessive Compulsive Scale. II. Validity. *Arch Gen Psychiatry* 1989; **46**: 1012-1016 [PMID: 2510699 DOI: 10.1001/archpsyc]
29 **Scahill L**, Chappell PB, Kim YS, Schultz RT, Katsovich L, Shepherd E, Arnsten AF, Cohen DJ, Leckman JF. A placebo-controlled study of guanfacine in the treatment of children with tic disorders and attention deficit hyperactivity disorder. *Am J Psychiatry* 2001; **158**: 1067-1074 [PMID: 11431228 DOI: 10.1176/appi.ajp.158.7.1067]
30 **Woods D**, Piacentini J, Chang S, Deckersbach T, Ginsburg GS, Peterson A, Wilhelm S. Managing Tourette Syndrome: A Behavioral Intervention. Parent Workbook. New York: Oxford University Press, 2008
31 **Walkup JT**, Rosenberg LA, Brown J, Singer HS. The validity of instruments measuring tic severity in Tourette's syndrome. *J Am Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry* 1992; **31**: 472-477 [PMID: 1592779 DOI: 10.1097/00004583-199205000-00013]

P- Reviewer: Brasic JR **S- Editor**: Wen LL
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Clinical Cases

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.12998/wjcc.v2.i10.578

World J Clin Cases 2014 October 16; 2(10): 578-580
ISSN 2307-8960 (online)

CASE REPORT

Challenging rescue of a 4 years old boy with H1N1 infection by extracorporeal membrane oxygenator: A case report

Nestoras Papadopoulos, Sven Martens, Harald Keller, Ali El-Sayed Ahmad, Anton Moritz, Andreas Zierer

Nestoras Papadopoulos, Harald Keller, Ali El-Sayed Ahmad, Anton Moritz, Andreas Zierer, Division of Thoracic and Cardiovascular Surgery, Johann-Wolfgang-Goethe University, 60590 Frankfurt/Main, Germany
Sven Martens, Division of Thoracic and Cardiovascular Surgery, University Hospital Muenster, 48419 Muenster, Germany
Author contributions: Martens S performed the ECMO implantation; Keller H was the perfusionist; El-Sayed Ahmad A performed data analysis; Papadopoulos N, Moritz A and Zierer A were the major contributors in writing the manuscript; all authors read and approved the final manuscript.
Correspondence to: Nestoras Papadopoulos, MD, Division of Thoracic and Cardiovascular Surgery, Johann-Wolfgang-Goethe University, Theodor Stern Kai 7, 60590 Frankfurt/Main, Germany. nestoras.papadopoulos@gmail.com
Telephone: + 49-69-630183601 Fax: + 49-69-63017582
Received: April 4, 2014 Revised: June 23, 2014
Accepted: July 27, 2014
Published online: October 16, 2014

Abstract

Introduction: World Health Organization announced on April 2009 a public health emergency of international concern caused by swine-origin influenza A (H1N1) virus. Acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) has been reported to be the most devastating complications of this pathogen. Extracorporeal membrane oxygenator (ECMO) therapy for patients with H1N1 related ARDS has been described once all other therapeutic options have been exhausted. Here, we report the case of a child (German, male) with H1N1-associated fulminate respiratory and secondary hemodynamic deterioration who was rescued by initial emergent ECMO established through a dialysis catheter and subsequent switch to central cannulation following median sternotomy. This report highlights several important issues. First, it describes a successful use of a dialysis catheter for the establishment of a veno-venous ECMO in an emergency case by child. Second, it highlights the importance of a closely monitoring of clotting parameters during ECMO therapy and third, if severe respiratory failure is complicated by cardiogenic shock, veno-atrial ECMO support *via* median sternotomy should be considered as a viable treatment option without further delay.

Key words: Airway; Circulatory temporary support; Coagulants; Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation; Infection

Core tip: Here, we report the case of a child with swine-origin influenza A-associated fulminate respiratory and secondary hemodynamic deterioration, who was rescued by initial emergent extracorporeal membrane oxygenator (ECMO) established through a dialysis catheter and subsequent switch to veno-atrial ECMO (VA-ECMO) *via* central cannulation. This report highlights several important issues. First, it describes a successful use of a dialysis catheter for the veno-venous ECMO-establishment in an emergency case by child. Second, it highlights the importance of a closely monitoring of clotting parameters and third, if severe respiratory failure is complicated by cardiogenic shock, VA-ECMO support *via* median sternotomy should be considered as a viable treatment option without further delay.

Papadopoulos N, Martens S, Keller H, El-Sayed Ahmad A, Moritz A, Zierer A. Challenging rescue of a 4 years old boy with H1N1 infection by extracorporeal membrane oxygenator: A case report. *World J Clin Cases* 2014; 2(10): 578-580 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2307-8960/full/v2/i10/578.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.12998/wjcc.v2.i10.578

INTRODUCTION

Establishment of extracorporal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) through percutaneous placement of cannulas in

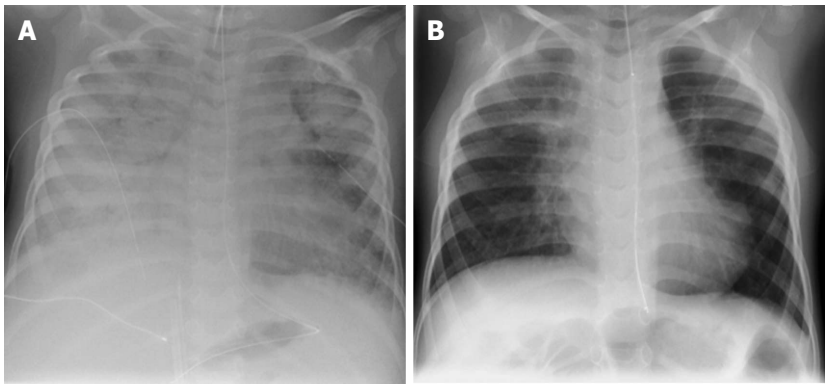


Figure 1 Anterior-posterior chest radiograph. A: Postintubation anterior-posterior chest radiograph of a 4 years old boy before Extracorporeal membrane oxygenator (ECMO) support with acute respiratory distress syndrome caused by proven novel 2009 H1N1 influenza virus; B: Anterior-posterior chest radiograph of the same patients after successful veno-atrial ECMO weaning and successful decanulation.

children can be difficult because of the small vessel size[1]. Median sternotomy may be necessary in selected cases to cannulate the ascending aorta and right atrium for sufficient ECMO flow[1,2].

CASE REPORT

A 4 years old German boy presented in our emergency room with a 24 h history of shortness of breathe following several days of an influenza-like illness. At presentation, he suffered from respiratory failure requiring urgent intubation and mechanical ventilation. After his admission to our intensive care unit the initial chest radiograph revealed bilateral patchy infiltrates (Figure 1A). H1N1 influenza virus was confirmed by the reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction assay of respiratory secretions. Bacterial cultures were negative. He was treated empirically with Oseltamivir. Within 24 h after hospital admission the patient had severely impaired gas exchange despite maximum respiratory support on the ventilator. For this reason high frequency oscillation ventilation (HFOV) was initiated. Since there was no improvement of the respiratory situation within 4 d of HFOV-treatment, veno-venous ECMO (VV-ECMO) had to be established.

Because of the small vessel size of the child, save cannulation sites for percutaneous placement of the ECMO cannulas were limited and included the internal jugular veins and the femoral veins. Placement of a cannula through the jugular vein was not successful. The child was in critical clinical condition and we decided to start VV-ECMO support *via* an 11 Fr dialysis catheter (Dolphin Protect, Gambo, Hechingen, Germany) placed into the left femoral vein. We established ECMO outflow of oxygenated blood *via* the arterial lumen and inflow of deoxygenated blood *via* the venous lumen of the dialysis catheter. We connected ECMO-tubes with the dialysis catheter *via* a connector (1/4 × LLm, Maquet GETINGE GROUP, Hirrlingen, Germany). ECMO circuit consisted of a Quadrox id pediatric (Maquet Cardiovascular, Wayne, NJ, United States) polymethylpentene oxygenator and a Rotaflow (Maquet Cardiovascular) centrifugal pump. This setting allowed for a flow of 400-milliliter per min. Despite the rather low circuit flow, the combination of VV-ECMO and HFOV allowed for an immediate improvement of oxygenation and weaning of vasopressor support.

Three days later, following an initial course of stabilization a sudden exchange of the VV-ECMO-system had to be performed due to massive clot-formations in the oxygenator. Notably there was an exponential elevation of fibrinogen and D-Dimer, as a result of disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC), which could be detected from the establishment of the VV-ECMO support on until the system change. In order to avoid further clotting formations continuous application of heparin directly in the venous cannula of the new ECMO circuit has been established.

One day after the system change a sudden hemodynamic instability required high inotropic and vasopressor support. Therefore we decided to switch the VV-ECMO to veno-atrial ECMO (VA-ECMO). In order to reliably maintain adequate flow in this critical situation we performed a median sternotomy and established VA-ECMO support *via* the right atrial appendage and the ascending aorta. A Bio-Medicus (Medtronic, Inc., Minneapolis, MI, United States) arteria cannula was used as the return cannula for oxygenated blood. For venous drainage a multiport Bio-Medicus (Medtronic, Inc.) cannula was used. Circuit flow of 1.2 liters min^{-1} led to a stabilization of the hemodynamic situation with immediate weaning from the vasopressor and intotropic support.

VA-ECMO was provided for a total of 10 d and could afterwards be successfully explanted. The patient could be successfully decannulated and control chest radiograph showed normal lung morphology (Figure 1B). The 4-year-old boy could be discharged from the hospital after a total of 38 d with full resolution of symptoms.

DISCUSSION

This report highlights several important issues. First, it describes a successful use of a dialysis catheter for the establishment of a VV-ECMO in an emergency case, in which, due to the small vessel size of the child, the

percutaneous placement of routine ECMO cannulas was not possible. Second, as clotting formations in the ECMO-oxygenator is a possible and devastating complication especially in critically ill patients with H1N1 infection suffering a DIC, it is vital that clotting parameters, especially fibrinogen and D-Dimer, of such patients are closely monitored. Third, if severe respiratory failure is complicated by cardiogenic shock, VA-ECMO support *via* median sternotomy should be considered as a viable treatment option without further delay[3-9].

COMMENTS

Case characteristics

The 4 years old patient presented in the emergency room with the main symptom of dyspnoea.

Clinical diagnosis

Clinical diagnosis of acute respiratory failure leads to an urgent intubation and mechanical ventilation of the young boy.

Differential diagnosis

Bacterial infection could be excluded once the bacterial cultures were negative.

Laboratory diagnosis

Swine-origin influenza A (H1N1) influenza virus was confirmed by the reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction assay of respiratory secretions.

Imaging diagnosis

After his admission to the authors intensive care unit the initial chest radiograph revealed bilateral patchy infiltrates.

Pathological diagnosis

Within 24 h after hospital admission the patient had severely impaired gas exchange despite maximum respiratory support on the ventilator.

Treatment

For this reason high frequency oscillation ventilation (HFOV) was initiated. Due to the fulminate respiratory and secondary hemodynamic deterioration, initial emergent veno-venous extracorporeal membrane oxygenator (VV-ECMO) (extracorporeal membrane oxygenator) established through a dialysis catheter and subsequent switches to veno-atrial ECMO (VA-ECMO) through central cannulation following median sternotomy, has to be performed.

Term explanation

ECMO therapy for patients with H1N1 related acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) has been described once all other therapeutic options have been exhausted. This report highlights several important issues. First, it describes a successful use of a dialysis catheter for the establishment of a VV-ECMO in an emergency case by child. Second, it highlights the importance of a closely monitoring of clotting parameters during ECMO therapy and third, if severe respiratory failure is complicated by cardiogenic shock, VA-ECMO support *via* median sternotomy should be considered as a viable treatment option without further delay.

Peer review

This manuscript lights on the problem of the ECMO cannulation in emergency and in the pediatric patient, and indicate as a solution the use of the dialysis catheter instead of the double lumen pediatric ECMO's cannula.

REFERENCES

1 **Shuhaiber J**, Thiagarajan RR, Laussen PC, Fynn-Thompson F, del Nido P, Pigula F. Survival of children requiring repeat extracorporeal membrane oxygenation after congenital heart surgery. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2011; **91**: 1949-1955 [PMID: 21514563 DOI: 10.1016/j.athoracsur.2011.01.078]

2 **Alsoufi B**, Al-Radi OO, Gruenwald C, Lean L, Williams WG, McCrindle BW, Caldarone CA, Van Arsdell GS. Extracorporeal life support following cardiac surgery in children: analysis of risk factors and survival in a single institution. *Eur J Cardiothorac Surg* 2009; **35**: 1004-1011; discussion 1011 [PMID: 19356943 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejcts.2009.02.015]

3 New influenza A (H1N1) virus: global epidemiological situation, June 2009. *Wkly Epidemiol Rec* 2009; **84**: 249-257 [PMID: 19537358]

4 **Novel influenza A(H1N1) investigation team**. Description of the early stage of pandemic (H1N1) 2009 in Germany, 27 April-16 June 2009. *Euro Surveill* 2009; **14**: pii: 19295 [PMID: 19660249]

5 **Poggensee G**, Gilsdorf A, Buda S, Eckmanns T, Claus H, Altmann D, Krause G, Haas W. The first wave of pandemic influenza (H1N1) 2009 in Germany: from initiation to acceleration. *BMC Infect Dis* 2010; **10**: 155 [PMID: 20525408 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2334-10-155]

6 **Sihler KC**, Park PK. Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation in the context of the 2009 H1N1 influenza A pandemic. *Surg Infect* (Larchmt) 2011; **12**: 151-158 [PMID: 21545282 DOI: 10.1089/sur.2010.082]

7 **Papadopoulos N**, Ahmad Ael-S, Marinos S, Moritz A, Zierer A. Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation for influenza-associated acute respiratory distress syndrome. *Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 2013; **61**: 516-521 [PMID: 23225509 DOI: 10.1055/s-0032-1330923]

8 **Extracorporeal Life Support Organization (ELSO)**. H1N1 Specific Supplements to the ELSO General Guidelines (Extracorporeal Life Support Organization). 2009: 1-4

9 **Riscili BP**, Anderson TB, Prescott HC, Exline MC, Sopirala MM, Phillips GS, Ali NA. An assessment of H1N1 influenza-associated acute respiratory distress syndrome severity after adjustment for treatment characteristics. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e18166 [PMID: 21464952 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0018166]

P- Reviewer: Belliato M, Guo YZ, Pocar M **S- Editor**: Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Clinical Cases

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.12998/wjcc.v2.i10.581

World J Clin Cases 2014 October 16; 2(10): 581-586
ISSN 2307-8960 (online)

CASE REPORT

Left ventricular pseudoaneurysm formation: Two cases and review of the literature

Emmanouil Petrou, Vasiliki Vartela, Anna Kostopoulou, Panagiota Georgiadou, Irene Mastorakou, Nektarios Kogerakis, Petros Sfyrakis, George Athanassopoulos, George Karatasakis

Emmanouil Petrou, Vasiliki Vartela, Anna Kostopoulou, Panagiota Georgiadou, George Athanassopoulos, George Karatasakis, Division of Cardiology, Onassis Cardiac Surgery Center, GR-17674 Athens, Greece
Irene Mastorakou, Imaging Department, Onassis Cardiac Surgery Center, GR-17674 Athens, Greece
Nektarios Kogerakis, Petros Sfyrakis, Third Department of Cardiac Surgery and Transplantation Services, Onassis Cardiac Surgery Center, GR-17674 Athens, Greece
Author contributions: Petrou E and Vartela V designed and wrote the paper; Kostopoulou A designed the paper; Georgiadou P collected the patients' clinical data; Mastorakou I performed and assessed the computed tomography images; Kogerakis N and Sfirakis P operated the one of the two patients described; Athanassopoulos G and Karatasakis G first diagnosed the nosological entity described and drafted the manuscript and revised it critically for important intellectual content.
Correspondence to: Emmanouil Petrou, MD, Division of Cardiology, Onassis Cardiac Surgery Center, 356 Sygrou Ave., Kallithea, GR-17674 Athens, Greece. emmgpetrou@hotmail.com
Telephone: +30-21-09493000 Fax: +30-21-02751028
Received: April 17, 2014 Revised: June 21, 2014
Accepted: July 25, 2014
Published online: October 16, 2014

Abstract

Left ventricular wall rupture (LVWR) comprises a complication of acute myocardial infarction (AMI). Acute LVWR is a fatal condition, unless the formation of a pseudoaneurysm occurs. Several risk factors have been described, predisposing to LVWR. High index of suspicion and imaging techniques, namely echocardiography and computed tomography, are the cornerstones of timely diagnosis of the condition. As LVWR usually leads to death, emergency surgery is the treatment of choice, resulting in significant reduction in mortality and providing favorable short-term outcomes and adequate prognosis during late follow-up. Herein, we present two patients who were diagnosed with LVWR following AMI, and subsequent pseudoaneurysm formation. In parallel, we review the aforementioned condition.

Key words: Pseudoaneurysm; Left ventricle rupture; Myocardial infarction

Core tip: Ventricular wall rupture (LVWR) comprises a complication of acute myocardial infarction. Acute LVWR is a fatal condition, unless the formation of a pseudoaneurysm occurs.

Petrou E, Vartela V, Kostopoulou A, Georgiadou P, Mastorakou I, Kogerakis N, Sfyrakis P, Athanassopoulos G, Karatasakis G. Left ventricular pseudoaneurysm formation: Two cases and review of the literature. *World J Clin Cases* 2014; 2(10): 581-586 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2307-8960/full/v2/i10/581.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.12998/wjcc.v2.i10.581

INTRODUCTION

Cardiac rupture as a pathophysiological entity was first described by Harvey[1] in 1647. It is a complication of acute acute myocardial infarction (AMI) with an overall incidence of 6.2%[2,3]. It represents the second cause of death after cardiogenic shock, and accounts for as much as 15% of in-hospital mortality[4-6]. Rupture may involve any cardiac structure, *i.e.*, atria, ventricles, interatrial or interventricular septum, papillary muscles or chordae tendineae, or one of the heart valves. Left ventricular wall rupture (LVWR) occurs up to 10 times more frequently than septal rupture, affecting up to 11% of patients after AMI and is almost invariably fatal, with death occurring within minutes after the development of chest pain[6]. In contrast, subacute LVWR and containment by false aneu-

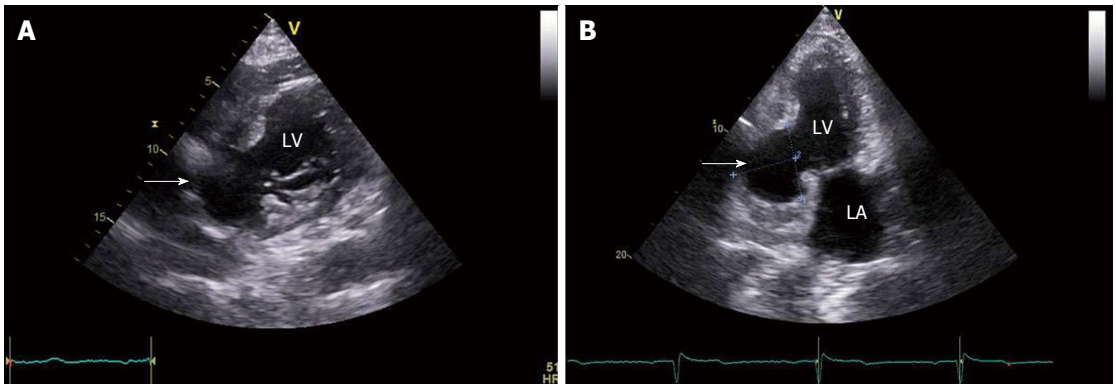


Figure 1 Echocardiography: Parasternal short axis and 2-Chamber view of the left ventricle posterior wall pseudoaneurysm (A and B, arrows). LA: Left atrium; LV: Left ventricle.

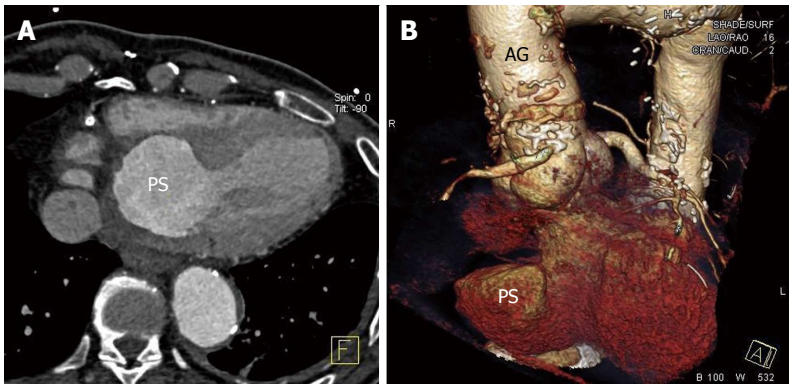


Figure 2 Cardiac computed tomographic angiography (A) and volume rendering (B): Left ventricle posterior wall pseudoaneurysm. PS: Pseudoaneurysm; AG: Aortic graft.

rysm formation of the pericardial layers may lead to patient's survival for hours or even days, but rarely weeks[7-9].

CASE REPORT

Case 1

A 62-year-old man was referred for echocardiographic evaluation. Two weeks ago, he had been admitted to another hospital for a non-ST segment elevation myocardial infarction for which he had undergone coronary arteriography. Coronary angiography revealed a 60% occlusion of the left anterior descending artery (LAD), a totally occluded right coronary artery (RCA), and a totally occluded left internal mammary artery (LIMA) graft to the LAD. The patient's history included coronary artery bypass grafting operation, with a LIMA graft to the LAD, and an ascending aorta replacement with an aortic graft (Hemashield straight tube, Boston Scientific) due to aneurysm, twelve years earlier. Moreover, nine years ago, he had undergone percutaneous coronary angioplasty and had received a drug-eluting stent to the RCA. Echocardiography revealed rupture of the left ventricular posterior wall which was contained by pericardium, thus forming a sizeable pseudoaneurysm (Figure 1). There was no significant pericardial effusion and the overall systolic function of both ventricles was found within normal limits. Based on the echocardiographic diagnosis the patient was admitted to our hospital for further investigation and treatment. The patient's admission 12-lead surface electrocardiogram (ECG) showed ischemic changes in the inferior leads (Ⅱ, Ⅲ, aVF). Cardiac computed tomographic angiography (Figure 2A) and volume rendering technique (Figure 2B) confirmed the presence of a pseudoaneurysm, with 50 mm × 50 mm dimensions, at the posterior wall of the left ventricle. The patient was referred to Surgery and a surgical repair of the defect with application of a Dacron patch with continuous suture was performed. Repeat echocardiography demonstrated a well-placed patch at the site of the rupture, enforcing the walls of the pseudoaneurysm. The patient had an uneventful postoperative recovery and was discharged on day 6 with explicit instructions and medication.

Case 2

An 86-year-old man presented with exertional dyspnea of five months duration. He had a history consistent with chronic atrial fibrillation under acenocoumarol and atenolol, and dyslipidemia under simvastatin. He had no history of documented coronary artery disease the 12-lead ECG showed Q waves in leads Ⅲ and aVF. He was hemodynamically stable with normal vital signs. The echocardiographic study demonstrated a pseudoaneu-

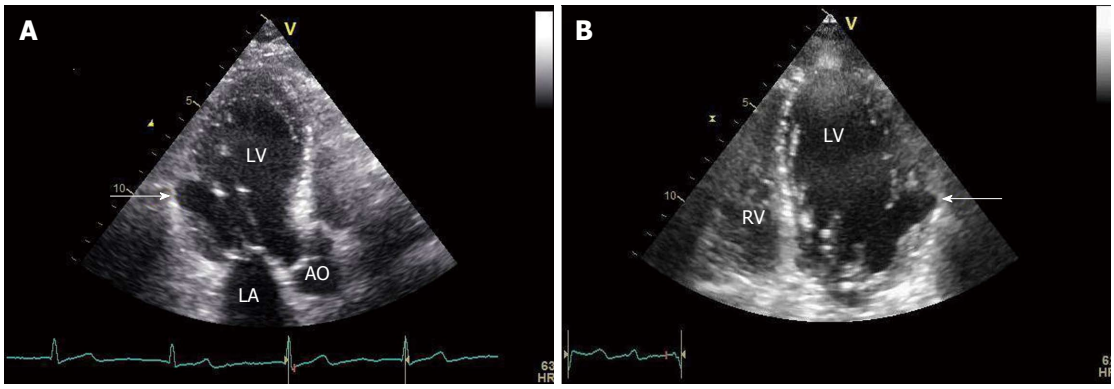


Figure 3 Echocardiography: Modified 4- and 3-Chamber view of the left ventricle lateral wall pseudoaneurysm (A and B, arrows). RV: Right ventricle; LA: Left atrium; AO: Ascending aorta; LV: Left ventricle.

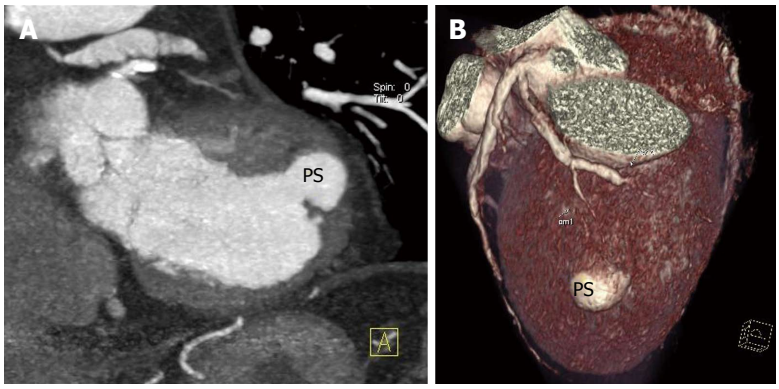


Figure 4 Cardiac computed tomographic angiography and volume rendering: Left ventricle lateral wall pseudoaneurysm (A and B). PS: Pseudoaneurysm.

rysm at the akinetic basal inferior lateral wall of the left ventricle, close to the base of the anterolateral papillary muscle (Figure 3). The overall function of the left ventricle was preserved. Cardiac computed tomographic angiography and volume rendering technique revealed significant atherosclerosis and coronary arteries narrowing. The echocardiographic findings were confirmed; a circular opacified 19 mm × 16 mm protrusion originating from the lateral wall of the left ventricle was observed (Figure 4). The patient's clinical condition and echocardiographic findings remained stable over his 3 years follow-up.

DISCUSSION

Time of occurrence and factors related to LVWR in AMI

The traditional risk factors for LVWR include older age (> 60 years), female sex, first lateral or anterior wall AMI, severe one-vessel coronary artery disease with lack of collateral circulation, and absence of previous angina[4,10,11]. On the contrary, the presence of multivessel disease may exert a protective effect, probably linked to development of greater collateral circulation[12]. Furthermore, it has been reported that the majority of patients with LVWR had suffered ST segment elevation AMI, with positive cardiac biomarkers, and a higher heart rate, lower blood pressure, and higher GRACE risk score at admission than patients without LVWR[13-15]. Chronic hypertension and diabetes mellitus do not seem to modify the incidence of LVWR[16], and contrary to a previous report[17], steroid use and late thrombolysis do not appear to increase the risk of LVWR[18,19]. Concerning thrombolysis, three mechanisms have been proposed as been responsible for occurrence of LVWR: hemorrhage to the ischemic zone resulting in loss of muscular tissue strength[20,21], increased collagen degradation and synthesis restrain by thrombolytic agents[22], lymphocytic migration to the infarct zone initiating absorption of collagen and proteolysis[21]. Depending on the time of its occurrence, LVWR may be classified as early, when it develops within the first 48 h post-AMI, or late, when it occurs beyond 48 h post-AMI. The early form represents 40%-50% of cases[23], however it is generally accepted that the true proportion is likely to be higher when including patients who die suddenly from LVWR before reaching hospital[24].

Differentiating true aneurysm from pseudoaneurysm

Rarely, LVWR is contained by an adherent pericardium, creating a pseudoaneurysm. Differentiation between left ventricular aneurysm and pseudoaneurysm is difficult, yet it is the most important task to carry out in order to facilitate therapeutic decision making. Pericardial friction rub, decreased heart sounds, sinus bradycardia or junctional rhythm, are all signs of pseudoaneurysm[25]. However, chest pain, dyspnea and hypotension, as well as persistent

ST segment elevation in the area of AMI on the surface ECG, are common for both true aneurysm and pseudoaneurysm[26]. Thus, distinguishing between these two entities is very difficult merely on a clinical basis, because many characteristics are common. Especially concerning electrocardiographic predictors of LVWR and aneurysm or pseudoaneurysm formation, a deviation of the ST segment or T wave, or both, from the usual evolutionary pattern after AMI has been observed[27]. Furthermore, differing opinions exist concerning the most common site of LVWR. Some reports indicate the anterior wall as the most frequent site of aneurysm and pseudoaneurysm formation, where areas more recent series have observed a predominance of lateral and posterior wall ruptures[27].

Imaging modalities in the diagnosis of LVWR in AMI

The most available and sensitive diagnostic tool to establish the different types of cardiac rupture is echocardiography[28]. In patients with LVWR the most frequent echocardiographic finding is pericardial effusion; in fact, the absence of pericardial effusion has a high negative predictive value and excludes cardiac rupture in patients with AMI[29]. However, in our cases no pericardial effusion was found. The presence of pericardial effusion has a low positive predictive value for LVWR as it may be present in 28% of patients with AMI without cardiac rupture[30]. The absence of pericardial effusion in our patients could be due to the lack of rupture of the left ventricular wall. The presence of echogenic masses in the effusion fluid is a relevant sign, particularly in patients with subacute LVWR, since these signs may be found in fibrinous pericarditis associated with AMI[31]. Direct visualization of the myocardial tear, true aneurysm or pseudoaneurysm is diagnostic, however, it is possible in only one third of LVWR cases[32]. Recently, cardiac magnetic resonance (CMR) imaging, especially with contrast enhancement, has emerged as a valuable diagnostic tool providing visualization of the entire heart, and clear differentiation of structures such as the pericardium, myocardium, thrombus and epicardial fat[33], as well as the pathological scar tissue substrates for life-threatening ventricular arrhythmias in AMI patients[34]. CMR can provide morphological definition of LVWR and pseudoaneurysm location, extension and relation to adjacent structures. Furthermore, CMR has an enormous value in differentiating between left ventricular aneurysms and pseudoaneurysms, in stable patients, with the ability to obtain cross sectional views in any plane[35].

We presented two patients who survived LVWR following an AMI. The patients' survival was clearly due to the containment of the rupture by the pericardial sac and the formation of the pseudoaneurysm. As LVWR usually leads to death, emergency surgery is the treatment of choice regardless the patient's condition. Surgical repair, enforcing the pericardial layers at the ventricular locus resistentiae minoris, results in significant reduction in mortality and provides favorable short-term outcomes and adequate prognosis during late follow-up[36]. Interestingly, our second patient survives for 3 years after diagnosis without surgery. Early diagnosis of LVWR is based on clinical suspicion. Echocardiography is of paramount importance, while computed tomography and CMR can be used to confirm diagnosis in stable patients.

COMMENTS

Case characteristics

Two patients who were diagnosed with left ventricular wall rupture (LVMR) following acute myocardial infarction (AMI), and subsequent pseudoaneurysm formation.

Clinical diagnosis

Variable clinical presentation, ranging from asymptomatic forms of the condition to more typical angina pectoris or dyspnea.

Differential diagnosis

Cardiac ischemia, pulmonary disease and heart failure are the main differential diagnoses.

Laboratory diagnosis

There are no specific laboratory findings in the condition described. However, negative cardiac enzymes could exclude novel myocardial infarction.

Imaging diagnosis

Echocardiography is the most useful and available imaging method in the diagnosis of left ventricular aneurysm and pseudoaneurysm formation. Computed tomography and cardiac magnetic resonance are complementary modalities, however of paramount importance in differentiating between the two aforementioned entities.

Treatment

Surgery is the treatment of choice for post-myocardial infarction left ventricular pseudoaneurysms.

Related reports

Left ventricular rupture and pseudoaneurysm formation have been described in the literature. However, long-term follow-up in an untreated patient (the authors' second case) is quite rare.

Term explanation

LVWR following an AMI and containment by false aneurysm formation of the pericardial layers may lead to patient's survival for hours or even days, but rarely weeks.

Experience and lessons

LVWR may be a rare condition in the era of primary percutaneous interventions, however it should always be a consideration in post-myocardial infarction patients.

Peer review

This is an interesting manuscript.

REFERENCES

1 **Harvey W**. Cited by Morgagni JB: The Seats and Causes of Disease (translated by B. Alexander). London, Millar A, Cadell T, 1769; letter 27, vol 1 (book 2): 830

2 **Becker RC**, Gore JM, Lambrew C, Weaver WD, Rubison RM, French WJ, Tiefenbrunn AJ, Bowlby LJ, Rogers WJ. A composite view of cardiac rupture in the United States National Registry of Myocardial Infarction. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 1996; **27**: 1321-1326 [PMID: 8626938 DOI: 10.1016/0735-1097(96)00008-3]

3 **Blinc A**, Noc M, Pohar B, Cernic N, Horvat M. Subacute rupture of the left ventricular free wall after acute myocardial infarction. Three cases of long-term survival without emergency surgical repair. *Chest* 1996; **109**: 565-567 [PMID: 8620740 DOI: 10.1378/chest.109.2.565]

4 **Sobkowicz B**, Lenartowska L, Nowak M, Hirnle T, Borys D, Kosicki M, Prajs P, Wrabec K. Trends in the incidence of the free wall cardiac rupture in acute myocardial infarction. observational study: experience of a single center. *Rocz Akad Med Bialymst* 2005; **50**: 161-165 [PMID: 16358958]

5 **Purcaro A**, Costantini C, Ciampani N, Mazzanti M, Silenzi C, Gili A, Belardinelli R, Astolfi D. Diagnostic criteria and management of subacute ventricular free wall rupture complicating acute myocardial infarction. *Am J Cardiol* 1997; **80**: 397-405 [PMID: 9285648 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9149(97)00385-8]

6 **Reddy SG**, Roberts WC. Frequency of rupture of the left ventricular free wall or ventricular septum among necropsy cases of fatal acute myocardial infarction since introduction of coronary care units. *Am J Cardiol* 1989; **63**: 906-911 [PMID: 2929464 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9149(89)90137-9]

7 **Shirani J**, Berezowski K, Roberts WC. Out-of-hospital sudden death from left ventricular free wall rupture during acute myocardial infarction as the first and only manifestation of atherosclerotic coronary artery disease. *Am J Cardiol* 1994; **73**: 88-92 [PMID: 8279385 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9149(94)90733-1]

8 **O'Rourke MF**. Subacute heart rupture following myocardial infarction. Clinical features of a correctable condition. *Lancet* 1973; **2**: 124-126 [PMID: 4124045 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(73)93065-1]

9 **Pollak H**, Diez W, Spiel R, Enenkel W, Mlczoch J. Early diagnosis of subacute free wall rupture complicating acute myocardial infarction. *Eur Heart J* 1993; **14**: 640-648 [PMID: 8508857 DOI: 10.1093/eurheartj/14.5.640]

10 **Lateef F**, Nimbkar N. Ventricular free wall rupture after myocardial infarction. *Hong Kong J Emerg Med* 2003; **10**: 238-246

11 **López-Sendón J**, Gurfinkel EP, Lopez de Sa E, Agnelli G, Gore JM, Steg PG, Eagle KA, Cantador JR, Fitzgerald G, Granger CB. Factors related to heart rupture in acute coronary syndromes in the Global Registry of Acute Coronary Events. *Eur Heart J* 2010; **31**: 1449-1456 [PMID: 20231153 DOI: 10.1093/eurheartj/ehq061]

12 **Slater J**, Brown RJ, Antonelli TA, Menon V, Boland J, Col J, Dzavik V, Greenberg M, Menegus M, Connery C, Hochman JS. Cardiogenic shock due to cardiac free-wall rupture or tamponade after acute myocardial infarction: a report from the SHOCK Trial Registry. Should we emergently revascularize occluded coronaries for cardiogenic shock? *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2000; **36**: 1117-1122 [PMID: 10985714 DOI: 10.1016/S0735-1097(00)00845-7]

13 **Figueras J**, Alcalde O, Barrabés JA, Serra V, Alguersuari J, Cortadellas J, Lidón RM. Changes in hospital mortality rates in 425 patients with acute ST-elevation myocardial infarction and cardiac rupture over a 30-year period. *Circulation* 2008; **118**: 2783-2789 [PMID: 19064683 DOI: 10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.108.776690]

14 **Nakatani D**, Sato H, Kinjo K, Mizuno H, Hishida E, Hirayama A, Mishima M, Ito H, Matsumura Y, Hori M. Effect of successful late reperfusion by primary coronary angioplasty on mechanical complications of acute myocardial infarction. *Am J Cardiol* 2003; **92**: 785-788 [PMID: 14516876 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9149(03)00883-X]

15 **Yamaguchi J**, Kawaguchi M, Kawana M, Asano R, Sumiyoshi T, Kasanuki H. [Risk factors and effect of reperfusion therapy on left ventricular free wall rupture following acute myocardial infarction]. *J Cardiol* 2000; **35**: 257-265 [PMID: 10791269]

16 **Melchior T**, Hildebrant P, Køber L, Jensen G, Torp-Pedersen C. Do diabetes mellitus and systemic hypertension predispose to left ventricular free wall rupture in acute myocardial infarction? *Am J Cardiol* 1997; **80**: 1224-1225 [PMID: 9359558 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9149(97)00646-2]

17 **Nakano T**, Konishi T, Takezawa H. Potential prevention of myocardial rupture resulting from acute myocardial infarction. *Clin Cardiol* 1985; **8**: 199-204 [PMID: 3987108 DOI: 10.1002/clc.4960080403]

18 **Silverman HS**, Pfeifer MP. Relation between use of anti-inflammatory agents and left ventricular free wall rupture during acute myocardial infarction. *Am J Cardiol* 1987; **59**: 363-364 [PMID: 3812291 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9149(87)90817-4]

19 **Honan MB**, Harrell FE, Reimer KA, Califf RM, Mark DB, Pryor DB, Hlatky MA. Cardiac rupture, mortality and the timing of thrombolytic therapy: a meta-analysis. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 1990; **16**: 359-367 [PMID: 2142705 DOI: 10.1016/0735-1097(90)90586-E]

20 **Becker RC**, Charlesworth A, Wilcox RG, Hampton J, Skene A, Gore JM, Topol EJ. Cardiac rupture associated with thrombolytic therapy: impact of time to treatment in the Late Assessment of Thrombolytic Efficacy (LATE) study. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 1995; **25**: 1063-1068 [PMID: 7897117 DOI: 10.1016/0735-1097(94)00524-T]

21 **Kawano H**, Miyauchi K, Okada R, Daida H, Yokoi H, Miyano H, Takaya J, Satoh H, Yamaguchi H, Suda K. Histopathological study of cardiac rupture following myocardial infarction with and without thrombolytic therapy. *J Cardiol* 1994; **24**: 249-255 [PMID: 8057236]

22 **Peuhkurinen K**, Risteli L, Jounela A, Risteli J. Changes in interstitial collagen metabolism during acute myocardial infarction treated with streptokinase or tissue plasminogen activator. *Am Heart J* 1996; **131**: 7-13 [PMID: 8554022 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-8703(96)90044-7]

23 **Dellborg M**, Held P, Swedberg K, Vedin A. Rupture of the myocardium. Occurrence and risk factors. *Br Heart J* 1985; **54**: 11-16 [PMID: 4015910 DOI: 10.1136/hrt.54.1.11]

24 **Batts KP**, Ackermann DM, Edwards WD. Postinfarction rupture of the left ventricular free wall: clinicopathologic correlates in 100 consecutive autopsy cases. *Hum Pathol* 1990; **21**: 530-535 [PMID: 2338333 DOI: 10.1016/0046-8177(90)90010-3]

25 **Balakumaran K**, Verbaan CJ, Essed CE, Nauta J, Bos E, Haalebos MM, Penn O, Simoons ML, Hugenholtz PG. Ventricular free wall rupture: sudden, subacute, slow, sealed and stabilized varieties. *Eur Heart J* 1984; **5**: 282-288 [PMID: 6734637]

26 **Zoffoli G**, Mangino D, Venturini A, Terrini A, Asta A, Zanchettin C, Polesel E. Diagnosing left ventricular aneurysm from pseudo-aneurysm: a case report and a review in literature. *J Cardiothorac Surg* 2009; **4**: 11 [PMID: 19239694 DOI: 10.1186/1749-8090-4-11]

27 **Oliva PB**, Hammill SC, Edwards WD. Cardiac rupture, a clinically predictable complication of acute myocardial infarction: report of 70 cases with clinicopathologic correlations. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 1993; **22**: 720-726 [PMID: 8354804 DOI: 10.1016/0735-1097(93)90182-Z]

28 **Sutherland FW**, Guell FJ, Pathi VL, Naik SK. Postinfarction ventricular free wall rupture: strategies for diagnosis and treatment. *Ann Thorac Surg* 1996; **61**: 1281-1285 [PMID: 8607710 DOI: 10.1016/0003-4975(95)01160-9]

29 **López-Sendón J**, González A, López de Sá E, Coma-Canella I, Roldán I, Domínguez F, Maqueda I, Martín Jadraque L. Diagnosis of subacute ventricular wall rupture after acute myocardial infarction: sensitivity and specificity of clinical, hemodynamic and echocardiographic criteria. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 1992; **19**: 1145-1153 [PMID: 1564213 DOI: 10.1016/0735-1097(92)90315-E]

30 **Galve E**, Garcia-Del-Castillo H, Evangelista A, Batlle J, Permanyer-Miralda G, Soler-Soler J. Pericardial effusion in the course of myocardial infarction: incidence, natural history, and clinical relevance. *Circulation* 1986; **73**: 294-299 [PMID: 3943164 DOI: 10.1161/01.CIR.73.2.294]

31 **Carey JS**, Cukingnan RA, Eugene J. Myocardial rupture in expanded infarcts: repair using pericardial patch. *Clin Cardiol* 1989; **12**: 157-160 [PMID: 2647328 DOI: 10.1002/clc.4960120309]

32 **Figueras J**, Cortadellas J, Evangelista A, Soler-Soler J. Medical management of selected patients with left ventricular free wall rupture during acute myocardial infarction. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 1997; **29**: 512-518 [PMID: 9060886 DOI: 10.1016/S0735-1097(96)00542-6]

33 **Mavrogeni S**, Rademakers F, Cokkinos DV. Clinical application of cardiovascular magnetic resonance. *Hellenic J Cardiol*

2004; **45**: 401-405
34 **Mavrogeni S**, Petrou E, Kolovou G, Theodorakis G, Iliodromitis E. Prediction of ventricular arrhythmias using cardiovascular magnetic resonance. *Eur Heart J Cardiovasc Imaging* 2013; **14**: 518-525 [PMID: 23324829 DOI: 10.1093/ehjci/jes302]
35 **Alapati L**, Chitwood WR, Cahill J, Mehra S, Movahed A. Left ventricular pseudoaneurysm: A case report and review of the literature. *World J Clin Cases* 2014; **2**: 90-93 [PMID: 24749118 DOI: 10.12998/wjcc.v2.i4.90]
36 **Solís C**, Pujol D, Mauro V. Left ventricular free wall rupture after acute myocardial infarction. *Rev Argent Cardiol* 2009; **77:** 395-404

P- Reviewer: Gao XM, Palmucci S, Schoenhagen P
S- Editor: Ji FF **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Clinical Cases

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.12998/wjcc.v2.i10.587

World J Clin Cases 2014 October 16; 2(10): 587-590
ISSN 2307-8960 (online)

CASE REPORT

Importance of defining the best treatment of a genital gunshot wound: A case report

Herney Andrés García-Perdomo

Herney Andrés García-Perdomo, School of Medicine, Faculty of Health, University of Valle, 25360 Cali, Colombia
Author contributions: García-Perdomo HA contributed to this paper.
Correspondence to: Herney Andrés García-Perdomo, MD, MSc, EdDc, PhDc, Professor, School of Medicine, Faculty of Health, University of Valle, Cll 4B #36-00, 25360 Cali, Colombia. herney.garcia@correounivalle.edu.co
Telephone: +57-321-2195102 Fax: +57-251-85686
Received: May 3, 2014 Revised: June 30, 2014
Accepted: August 27, 2014
Published online: October 16, 2014

Abstract

Twenty percent of genital traumas are caused by penetrating injuries; accordingly gunshot and stab wounds have increased in the last couple of years around the globe, even in Colombia. A 67-year-old male patient was admitted to the emergency room because he received multiple gunshot wounds. On physical examination, multiple wounds on his penis with loss of tissue in the foreskin, glans, anterior urethra (distal third) and cavernous corpora were found. The urologist performed a partial penectomy with a penis reconstruction, he debrided the cutaneous flap of the dorsal foreskin and its glans, sutured the distal cavernous corpora and dissected the urethra. Penetrating genital injuries are extremely important due to their impact on the functional, psychological and the aesthetic consequences. It is necessary to define the best possible treatment to minimize the damage.

Key words: Genital; Penile; Injuries; Trauma; Amputation

Core tip: Genital injuries are a common problem in civil war. For example, in developing countries its incidence is increasing, so it is of vital importance to notice how to focus the clinical case and how to treat patients with this condition. The impact on functional and aesthetic aspects calls our attention to treat these patients correctly.

García-Perdomo HA. Importance of defining the best treatment of a genital gunshot wound: A case report. *World J Clin Cases* 2014; 2(10): 587-590 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2307-8960/full/v2/i10/587.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.12998/wjcc.v2.i10.587

INTRODUCTION

Twenty percent of genital traumas are caused by penetrating injuries[1-3]; with traumatic amputations-as part of genital traumas-usually happening in acute psychotic events[4-6]. In only a small percentage they are caused by agricultural and industrial accidents or even by gunshot or stab wounds[4-6]. Due to a raise of civil war conflicts, gunshot and stab wounds have increased in the last couple of years, especially in Columbia[7], making this type of injuries prevalently seen at Hospital Universitario del Valle (Cali, Colombia). In both males and females, the penetrating genital injuries occur with other associated injuries in 70% of cases[8,9].

It is therefore important to know that the injured persons will have a different degree of damage and that the urologists will have to determine the probability of reattaching the part of the amputated or reconstructing the injured penis[4].

The purpose of this report is to describe an interesting case of a genital gunshot wound associated with a literature review to support the case and treatment, according to CARE guidelines for Case Reports.

CASE REPORT

A 67-year-old male patient was admitted to the emergen-

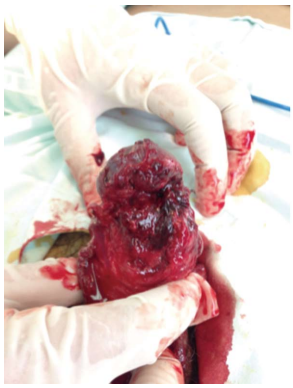


Figure 1 Glans and cavernous corpora injured.

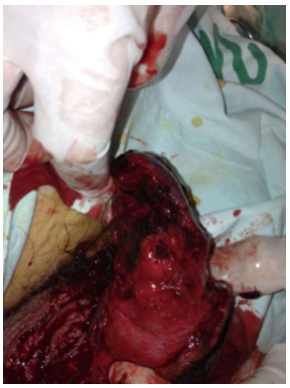


Figure 2 Injured urethra.

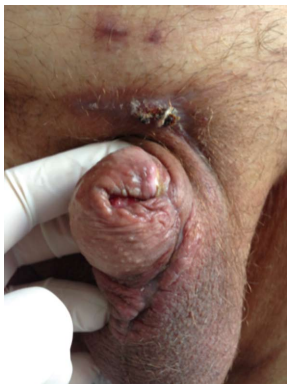


Figure 3 Left sided retraction.

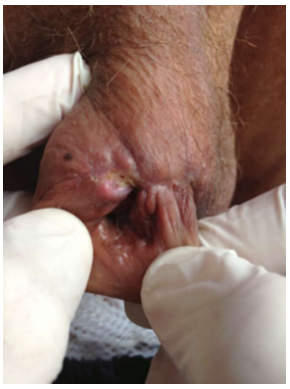


Figure 4 Mild meatus stenosis.

cy room because he received multiple gunshot wounds. On physical examination, a suprapubic and multiple wounds on his penis were found, with loss of tissue in the foreskin, glans, anterior urethra (distal third) and cavernous corpora on the left side (Figures 1 and 2). Because of the extent of injuries and the inability to have a permeable urinary tract, a suprapubic tube (cystostomy) was placed and a surgical cleansing and debridement were performed.

On the next hospitalization day, he was taken to the operating room, where following conditions were found: devitalized glans with some necrosis areas, loss of the pendulous urethra up to its middle third, and a partial loss of its foreskin, but with some good cutaneous flap remaining. The urologist decided to perform a partial penectomy with a penis reconstruction, he debrided the cutaneous flap of the dorsal foreskin and its glans, sutured the distal cavernous corpora and dissected the urethra. Following the reconstruction a urethral Foley catheter was placed.

Three days after his admission, on his second postop day, he was managed as an outpatient due to good clinical status.

As an outpatient, two months later, he showed up with good clinical status, the surgical wound was healed but some left-sided retraction of the neomeatus was found (Figures 3 and 4).

DISCUSSION

In an emergency room, a patient with multiple injuries or even with isolated genital damage requires prompt assessment and course of action[3]. Sometimes it is important to assess the range, caliber and type of weapon to evaluate the amount of the damage, before the treatment can be initiated[1]. Primarily physicians should focus on life threatening conditions and their treatment; and only then focus on genital and associated trauma. The surgical approach will depend on the site of the damage but a lateral or a sub-coronal degloving should supply a good exposure[3].

The first principles of caring of genitalia are debridement of devitalized tissue, preservation of as much viable tissue as possible, diversion of urine, hemostasis and removal of foreign bodies if necessary[3]; the conservative management is election for most cases[10]. If some tissue is not completely viable, the conservative management is encouraged for a delayed penile repair, perhaps 4 wk after trauma[3]. A tunica albuginea defect could be repaired easily but if bigger damage is found, the surgeon should use an autologous or xenograft[3].

When loss of genital skin is mild to moderate, reconstruction with the same skin is preferable but when an extensive injury is encountered, a full-thickness skin graft should be established for reconstruction[10,11]. This could

be taken from the abdomen, buttock, thigh or axilla, depends of the preference of the surgeon[11].

According to the grade of damage, there are a variety of treatments, for example: closure of residual stump, surgical reanastomosis or total phallic substitution with reconstruction[4,12].

The penis and the amputated part should be washed out and debrided with saline or ringer solution[3,13] in every case. If replantation is attempted, it should be done within 24 h with proper maneuvers and conservation of the amputated part (usually the glans) because success has been reported within this time[14] and this could be performed in a micro or non-microvascular approach with better results in the first one[3].

Particularly in this case, the patient had a genital gunshot wound with loss and devitalized tissue: the glans, the urethra and the cavernous corpora, so the replantation was not indicated, then the second choice of treatment was used as literature says: a closure of the penile stump was performed (cavernous corpora) and the urethra was spatulated as in a standard partial penectomy[4]. The phallic substitution with reconstruction is usually recommended for patients with a good mental status and after the episode has passed and the patient is stable[4], but this is not going to be discussed in this article.

The postoperative management should include: antibiotics for the risk of infection, a Foley catheter for the urethral reconstruction, and some dressings over the penis[4]. These recommendations are based on descriptive studies due to the lack of clinical trials to assess the best treatment possible.

Based on the aesthetic and functional results the patient could need a second or third surgery accompanied by the plastic surgeon[4,15], for example, this patient will need a reconstructive surgery to place the parts where they go and also perhaps an urethral reconstruction to assure the functional status.

It is important to recognize the need to interact with different specialists for example the plastic surgeon, the psychologist/psychiatrist, and the urologist for sure[4]. This is not something easy to treat, so the general physician, the urologist and every doctor involved in the treatment should recognize, diagnose and treat according to the damage to minimize the sequels.

This case allows us to recognize and to keep in mind how important and relevant these injuries are due to their impact on the functional, psychological and the aesthetic consequences. It is necessary to wash out and debride the injured tissue and consequently, defining the best possible treatment to minimize the damage.

COMMENTS

Case characteristics

A male patient received multiple gunshot wounds.

Clinical diagnosis

Multiple wounds caused tissue lost in the foreskin, glans, anterior urethra and cavernous corpora.

Differential diagnosis

There are not differential diagnosis, but according to the findings urologists need to check for damage to the urethra, glans and cavernous corpora.

Treatment

The treatment offered to this patient was a partial penectomy along with penis and urethral reconstruction.

Term explanation

Partial penectomy: to take a part of the penis off. Cystostomy: to put a suprapubic tube to permit drainage of urine from the badder.

Experiences and lessons

The author confirmed how important and relevant these injuries are due to their impact on the functional, psychological and the aesthetic consequences.

Peer review

This paper is well-written, and this case report is informative for readers.

REFERENCES

1 **Brandes SB**, Buckman RF, Chelsky MJ, Hanno PM. External genitalia gunshot wounds: a ten-year experience with fifty-six cases. *J Trauma* 1995; **39**: 266-271; discussion 271-272 [PMID: 7674395]

2 **Phonsombat S**, Master VA, McAninch JW. Penetrating external genital trauma: a 30-year single institution experience. *J Urol* 2008; **180**: 192-195; discussion 195-196 [PMID: 18499189 DOI: 10.1016/j.juro.2008.03.041]

3 **Summerton DJ**, Djakovic N, Kitrey ND, Kuehhas F, Lumen N, Serafetinidis E, Sharma DM. Guidelines on Urological Trauma. *Eur Urol* 2014. Available from: URL: http: //www.uroweb.org/gls/pdf/24Urological Trauma_LR.pdf

4 **Chang AJ**, Brandes SB. Advances in diagnosis and management of genital injuries. *Urol Clin North Am* 2013; **40**: 427-438 [PMID: 23905941 DOI: 10.1016/j.ucl.2013.04.013]

5 **Aboseif S**, Gomez R, McAninch JW. Genital self-mutilation. *J Urol* 1993; **150**: 1143-1146 [PMID: 8371374]

6 **Jezior JR**, Brady JD, Schlossberg SM. Management of penile amputation injuries. *World J Surg* 2001; **25**: 1602-1609 [PMID: 11775199 DOI: 10.1007/s00268-001-0157-6]

7 **Dogra PN**, Gautam G, Ansari MS. Penile amputation and emasculation: hazards of modern agricultural machinery. *Int Urol Nephrol* 2004; **36**: 379-380 [PMID: 15783110 DOI: 10.1007/s11255-004-0918-x]

8 **Tiguert R**, Harb JF, Hurley PM, Gomes De Oliveira J, Castillo-Frontera RJ, Triest JA, Gheiler EL. Management of shotgun injuries to the pelvis and lower genitourinary system. *Urology* 2000; **55**: 193-197 [PMID: 10688077 DOI: 10.1016/S0090-4295(99)00384-2]

9 **Jolly BB**, Sharma SK, Vaidyanathan S, Mandal AK. Gunshot wounds of the male external genitalia. *Urol Int* 1994; **53**: 92-96 [PMID: 7801424 DOI: 10.1159/000282643]

10 **McAninch JW**, Kahn RI, Jeffrey RB, Laing FC, Krieger MJ. Major traumatic and septic genital injuries. *J Trauma* 1984; **24**: 291-298 [PMID: 6368854 DOI: 10.1097/00005373-198404000-00002]

11 **Summerton DJ**, Campbell A, Minhas S, Ralph DJ. Reconstructive surgery in penile trauma and cancer. *Nat Clin Pract Urol* 2005; **2**: 391-397 [PMID: 16474736 DOI: 10.1038/ncpuro0261]

12 **Charlesworth P**, Campbell A, Kamaledeen S, Joshi A. Surgical repair of traumatic amputation of the glans. *Urology* 2011; **77**: 1472-1473 [PMID: 21256558 DOI: 10.1016/j.urology.2010.08.034]

13 **Jordan GH**. Initial management and reconstruction of male genital amputation injuries. In: McAninch JW, editor. Traumatic and reconstructive urology. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 1996: 673-681

14 **Roche NA**, Vermeulen BT, Blondeel PN, Stillaert FB. Techni-

cal recommendations for penile replantation based on lessons learned from penile reconstruction. *J Reconstr Microsurg* 2012; **28**: 247-250 [PMID: 22399258 DOI: 10.1055/s-0032-1306373]

15 **Garaffa G**, Raheem AA, Ralph DJ. An update on penile reconstruction. *Asian J Androl* 2011; **13**: 391-394 [PMID: 21540867 DOI: 10.1038/aja.2011.29]

P- Reviewer: Hori T **S- Editor**: Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Clinical Cases

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.12998/wjcc.v2.i10.591

World J Clin Cases 2014 October 16; 2(10): 591-595
ISSN 2307-8960 (online)

CASE REPORT

Bladder paraganglioma: A report of case series and critical review of current literature

Matheesha Ranaweera, Eric Chung

Matheesha Ranaweera, Eric Chung, Department of Urology, University of Queensland, Princess Alexandra Hospital, Brisbane QLD 4102, Australia
Eric Chung, St Andrew's Pelvic Medicine Centre, St Andrew's War Memorial Hospital, Wickham Tce, Brisbane QLD 4102, Australia
Author contributions: Ranaweera M and Chung E designed and wrote the report; Chung E was responsible for proof read and final approval of submission.
Correspondence to: Eric Chung, Professor, Department of Urology, University of Queensland, Princess Alexandra Hospital, Ipswich Rd, Brisbane QLD 4102, Australia. ericchg@hotmail.com
Telephone: +61-7-33242468 Fax: +61-7-33242546
Received: May 5, 2014 Revised: July 2, 2014
Accepted: July 25, 2014
Published online: October 16, 2014

Abstract

Extra-adrenal chromaffin cell-related tumours or paragangliomas are rare, especially in the bladder. In this article, we reported three different clinical cases of bladder paraganglioma, followed by a review of current literature on the pathophysiology and management of bladder paraganglioma. Case 1 involved a 23 years old female patient who complained of a 10-year history of micturition-related headaches, palpitations and diaphoresis; while in case 2, a 58 years old female patient presented with history of painless haematuria and an incidentally diagnosis of a functioning paraganglioma during endoscopic transurethral resection of bladder tumour; and lastly in case 3, a 54 years old male renal transplant recipient was referred to the urology outpatient with a suspicious bladder mass found incidentally on routine transplant workshop.

Key words: Bladder paraganglioma; Bladder mass; Catecholamine and its metabolites; Nuclear imaging

Core tip: Bladder paraganglioma is a rare condition and patients can present with various clinical presentations. Biochemical profiling and nuclear imaging study can assist in the identification of this lesion. Preoperative care with volume hydration and adrenergic blockade are often necessary and surgery remains the only cure for these patients.

Ranaweera M, Chung E. Bladder paraganglioma: A report of case series and critical review of current literature. *World J Clin Cases* 2014; 2(10): 591-595 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2307-8960/full/v2/i10/591.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.12998/wjcc.v2.i10.591

INTRODUCTION

Paragangliomas are rare tumours that arises from extra-adrenal paraganglia and consists of specialized neural crest-derived cells (catecholamine-secreting chromaffin cells)[1]. Of all chromaffin cell-related tumours, paraganglioma accounts for less than a quarter of cases[1,2]. The sympathetic paraganglia are symmetrically distributed along the paravertebral axis and small sympathetic paraganglia can also be found in other organs such as the bladder. Primary paraganglioma of the urinary bladder is very rare making up less than 0.05% of all bladder malignancy. Paragangliomas can present with clinical symptoms secondary to catecholamine hypersecretion or mass effect, incidental finding on radiographic imaging, and/or on routine family screening for hereditary paraganglioma. We explore three different clinical cases of bladder paraganglioma that were treated at our institution.

CASE REPORT

Case report 1

A 23 years old female was referred by her general practitioner with history of urinary urgency and an incidental finding of bladder mass on urinary tract ultrasound.

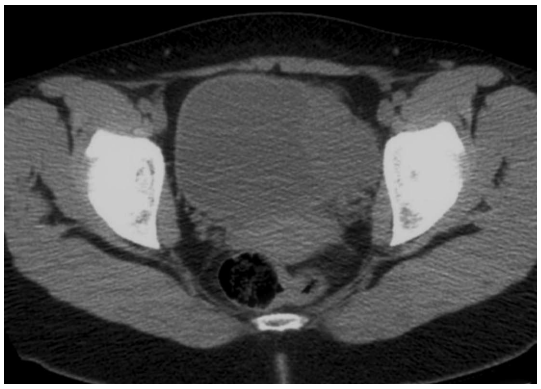


Figure 1 Computer tomography showing an avidly enhancing mass in the left urinary bladder wall.

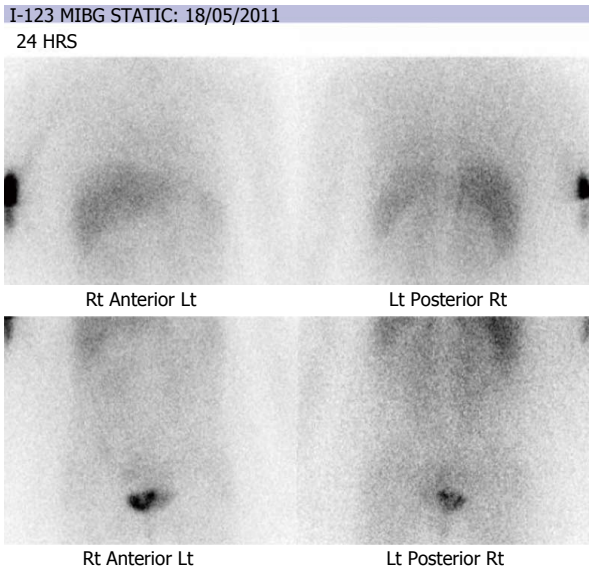


Figure 2 Iodine-123-meta-iodobenzylguanidine scintiscan showing intense tracer uptake in the left side of the bladder consistent with bladder paraganglioma as well as injection artefact in the right cubital fossa. I-123 MIBG: Iodine-123-meta-iodobenzylguanidine.

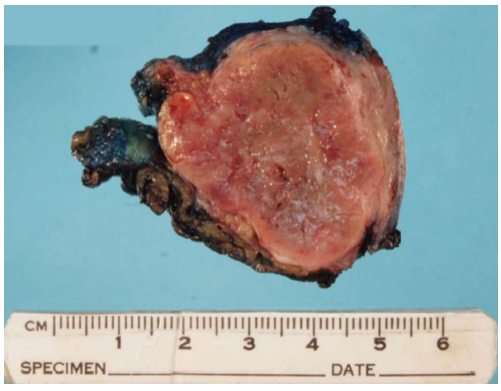


Figure 3 Macroscopic view of bladder paraganglioma. The tumour is red-brown in colour and well-circumscribed.

When enquired further, she described a long-standing history of episodic severe throbbing headaches lasting few minutes, dating back to as early as the age of 12 years. These paroxysmal attacks of headache coincided with her bladder emptying and over the last few years, she also experienced palpitations, nausea, sweat and facial pallor post-micturition. In addition, she recalled the presence of microscopic hematuria in her urine dipstick since the age of 12 years. She has been diagnosed with borderline hypertension in her late teens but is not on antihypertensive medication. There was no family history to suggest a hereditary endocrine disorder.

Urinary tract ultrasonography revealed a large vascular soft tissue mass on the left bladder wall and her urine cytology revealed mildly atypical urothelial cells in two out of three samples. There was a marked elevation of urinary noradrenaline (4748 nmol/dL, Reference: [50-600]) and its metabolites on 24 h urine collection. Plasma metanephrine was also significantly elevated (8500 pmol/L, reference < 900 pmol/L). Staging computed topography of the abdomen and pelvis showed a 6.2 cm × 4 cm × 4.9 cm solid and enhancing, loculated mass near to the left vesicoureteric junction (Figure 1). Following consultation with the endocrinologist, alpha (α)-adrenergic and beta (β)-adrenergic blockade was achieved with a combination of phenoxybenzamine and metoprolol for a minimum of 2 wk prior to surgery. During this time, further imaging with Iodine-123-meta-iodobenzylguanidine (I-123 MIBG) scintiscan confirmed the presence of bladder phaeochromocytoma without metastatic disease (Figure 2).

A formal rigid cystoscopy, left retrograde pyelogram and examination under anesthesia were performed and showed a firm, irregular, well circumscribed lesion in the left bladder that was not fixed to the pelvis and a normal distal left ureter configuration. She was hypertensive intraoperative and required α-adrenergic blockade with phentolamine. Discussion ensued about her condition and she underwent partial cystectomy 2 wk later with volume hydration and antihypertensive medication. A combination of adrenergic blockade with phentolamine, esmolol and metaraminol were utilised intraoperatively during her partial cystectomy.

The histopathology of the bladder wall specimen sections showed a 35 mm × 32 mm well-circumscribed, lobulated, red-brown tumour (Figure 3). Microscopically, the tumour was composed of nests of cells with eosinophilic cytoplasm and round nuclei with vesicular chromatin. It was encapsulated with no evidence of extracapsular invasion and surgical margins were clear (Figure 4). The tumour cells stained positive for chromogranin, patchy for S-100 and negative for cytokeratin consistent with urinary bladder paraganglioma.

Further immunohistochemistry on the tumour specimen revealed the tumour was negative for succinate dehydrogenase subunit B (SDHB). She was subsequently discharged and remained asymptomatic at 36 mo of follow up.

Case report 2

A 58 years old female underwent a routine uneventful resection of bladder mass found during investigation for

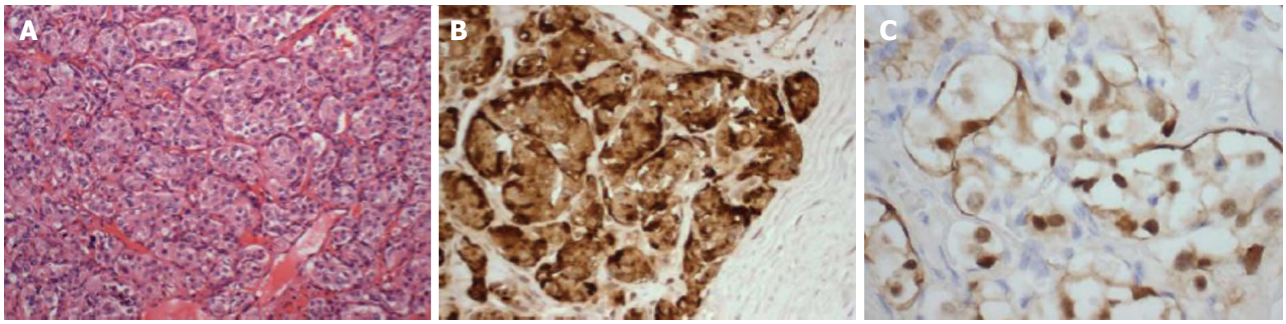


Figure 4 Haematoxylin and eosin staining of bladder paraganglioma tumour (A) showing characteristic nests of cells with eosinophilic cytoplasm and round nuclei. Chromogranin staining (B) was strongly positive, whilst S100 staining (C) was positive in patches.

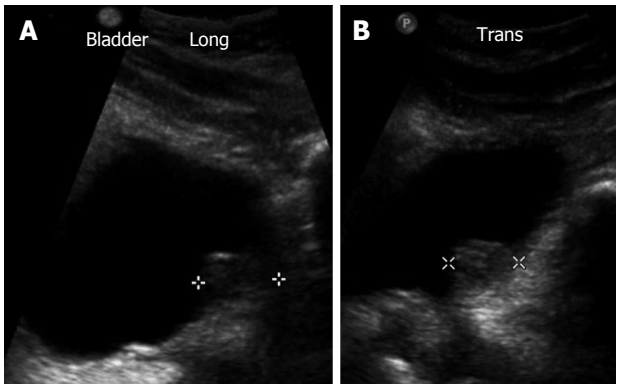


Figure 5 Longitudinal and transverse views of a paraganglioma protruding into the bladder.

painless macroscopic haematuria. The histopathology of this mass showed solid nests of plump epithelial cells with granular to foamy cytoplasm and enlarged, moderate pleomorphic nuclei. Immunohistochemical staining was strongly positive for chromogranin, neuron-specific enolase (NSE), synaptophysin and protein gene product 9.5, consistent with a neuroendocrine tumour. On retrospect history, she had been taking atenolol and oxazepam for her moderate hypertension and anxiety disorder. Given that the patient's younger sister had a history of poorly controlled hypertension, both sisters underwent genetic testing and von Hippel Lindau (VHL), SDHB and succinate dehydrogenase screening, but were negative.

Further investigations showed an elevated creatinine ratio of urinary normetanephrine (0.40 mmol/mmol creatinine) and metanephrine (0.13 mmol/mmol creatinine), and an increased 24-h excretion of normetanephrine (3.2 μmol/24 h). Nuclear imaging study with I-123 MIBG scan showed a discrete round focus on the left side of the bladder with no further evidence of metastases.

The patient was commenced on phenoxybenzamine and propranolol preoperatively for 2 wk and underwent open partial cystectomy and re-implantation of her left ureter. Intra-operatively the patient remained haemodynamically stable. Histopathology confirmed bladder paraganglioma with multiple nodules found predominately within the muscularis propria but not extending into the peri-vesicle soft tissue and a clear of the surgical margins. The tumour showed focal moderate nuclear pleomorphism with no lymphovascular invasion. She remained asymptomatic with normal imaging test at 60 m of follow up.

Case report 3

A 54 years old male renal transplant recipient for end-stage renal failure (secondary to Alport's syndrome) was referred for investigation of an asymptomatic bladder mass. After having undergone a left sided radical nephrectomy for papillary renal cell carcinoma 12 mo earlier, this bladder mass was discovered on surveillance urinary tract ultrasonography (Figure 5). He underwent routine cystoscopy which revealed a submucosal polyp at the anterior bladder suspicious for urothelial tumour and this bladder "tumour" was completely resected.

Histological examination revealed tumour cells arranged in nested architecture with circumscribed margin and focal areas of smooth muscle invasion. Interestingly the immunohistochemistry staining of the tumour cells were positive for synaptophysin and chromogranin but negative for cytokeratin.

The patient subsequently underwent an I-123 MIBG scan and metastatic disease was excluded. Serum and urinary catecholamines were negative too. Follow-up flexible cystoscopy at 1 year post-resection showed no evidence of disease recurrence.

DISCUSSION

Bladder paraganglioma is rare and accounts for less than 1% of all catecholamine secreting neoplasms and only 0.5% of all bladder tumours[3]. They are thought to arise from embryonic rests of chromaffin cells within the bladder wall and often occur in young women in their second to fourth decade of life[4]. Paragangliomas that secrete catecholamine may give rise to clinical presentation similar to a hyperfunctioning adrenal phaeochromocytoma. Episodic symptoms may occur in spells or paroxysms, and can be highly variable. The position of these tumours within the bladder results in characteristic symptom complex related to micturition or over-distension of the bladder with catecholamine release. The majority of patients will experience micturition related hypertension, cold

sweats, palpitations, headaches, dizziness and sweating much like the Case 1 in our series[5]. Systemic catecholamine secretion occurs with increased bladder pressure after bladder contraction, triggering these sympathomimetic attacks[6]. These symptoms may also be precipitated by defaecation, sexual activity, ejaculation or bladder instrumentation. Approximately 55%-60% of patients will also experience painless haematuria, although it is mostly microscopic in nature[7]. While hematuria is commonly reported in patient with bladder mass, this is not specific for paraganglioma. Only a minority of patients will experience weight loss, nausea, tremor, postural hypotension, syncope, chest pain, blurred vision, laryngismus, high blood sugar levels or symptoms associated with catecholamine cardiomyopathy[5].

Suspected cases of paragangliomas should first be investigated by measuring the level of catecholamine and its metabolites such as metanephrine and vanillylmandelic acid secretion in either the blood or urine. The measurement of serum adrenaline and noradrenaline can be costly and is usually unnecessary[8]. The majority of paragangliomas are not hormonally active, thus preoperative catecholamine levels maybe normal[1,8]. Bladder paraganglioma can often be difficult to distinguish radiologically from other bladder lesions[8]. The use of intravenous contrast may precipitates a hypertensive crisis although non-ionic contrast is reported to be safe[9]. In contrast to the hyperintense T2 signalling on magnetic resonance imaging with adrenal phaeochromocytoma, paraganglioma is likely to be homogenous on T2 signal[10]. Both I-131 MIBG and ^{18}F-fluorodeoxyglucose, positron emission tomography are useful for localization of potential metastatic disease. I-123 MIBG can be used as an alternative to I-131 MIBG for accurate preoperative localization of small lymph node[11].

As many as half of the cases of paraganglioma share a genetic basisa and can be related to a number of hereditary conditions including VHL, neurofibromatosis type 1, Carney triad, Multiple Endocrine Neoplasia types 2a and 2b and familial paraganglioma[1]. Therefore, genetic testing should be offered in cases of young patient (under 50 years old) with a positive family history or with history of bilateral, extra-adrenal or multifocal phaeochromocytoma, a positive genetic mutation as well as those tumours with negative SDHB staining[12].

Since paraganglia are distributed throughout the bladder wall, paraganglioma can be found in any part of the bladder. These tumours are mostly well circumscribed and usually form nodules or small mass. Placing the tumour in a Zenker's fixative will turn the tumour black; a positive chromaffin reaction. Histologically, paraganglioma is often misdiagnosed as urothelial carcinoma[13] and paraganglioma may mimic high grade urothelial carcinoma with a nest pattern. Features of paraganglioma include zellballen architecture where tumour cells are arranged into nests and lobules, a delicate fibrovascular stroma and eosinophilic cytoplasm. Immunohistochemistry is usually positive for NSE, chromogranin and synaptophysin and negative for cytokeratin. There are no definitive characteristics which reliably distinguish benign from malignant tumour, and desmoplastic reaction is often absent[12]. The distinction between benign and malignant paraganglioma has long been contentious, with the only widely accepted and definitive proof of malignancy being metastasis to other organs. Some histological features such as tumour necrosis, a mitotic rate greater than 3/30 high power field, capsular invasion, large nests with central degeneration, a lack of hyaline globules, a high nuclear/cytoplasmic ration, monotony of a cytological pattern and spindle cells patters are suggestive of increased malignant predilection[14]. Immunohistochemistry stains are often useful in helping to establish the diagnosis and those with SDHB negative-stain may indicate a succinate dehydrogenase subunit-mutated tumour. Urothelial carcinoma and carcinoid tumours are positive for cytokeratin, while melanoma cells show positivity for S100, HMB45 and Melan A stains.

Complete surgical removal of the tumour is the treatment of choice[1,4,6]. If the paraganglioma is a catecholamine secreting tumour, the effects of excess circulating catecholamines should be reversed prior to surgical extirpation. Combined preoperative α- and β-adrenergic blockade are required to control the blood pressure in order to prevent intra-operative hypertensive crisis. An α-adrenergic blockade should be commenced prior to β-adrenergic blockade, to allow for volume expansion of the contracted blood volume and a liberal salt diet and adequate hydration are also advised. Once adequate α-adrenergic blockade is achieved, β-adrenergic blockade can be initiated. Localised tumours can be removed in partial cystectomy while transurethral resection is adequate in superficial and small bladder lesion[8]. Postoperative 24 h urinary catecholamine and its metabolites should be conducted at week 2 and if the levels are normal, the resection of paraganglioma is considered complete.

As discussed earlier, malignant phaeochromocytoma remains a challenging entity to diagnose and treat. Up to 15% of bladder paraganglioma can become metastasis, and metastasis is the only reliable indicator of malignancy. Young age, extensive local disease and micturition attacks are risk factors for malignancy while features such as vascular invasion, a deeply invasive growth patterns and recurrence are often poor prognostic signs. Metastatic potential is often unclear and thus long-term annual follow up is suggested[15]. In patients with metastatic disease, complete cystectomy and pelvic lymph node dissection is the preferred option[16]. Nuclear imaging such as I-131 MIBG radiotherapy has also been shown to be useful for palliative control of tumour function in metastatic disease, but the current chemotherapy and radiotherapy treatment options are limited[17].

Bladder paraganglioma is a rare condition and patients can present with various clinical presentations. Biochemical profiling and nuclear imaging study can assist in the identification of this lesion. Preoperative care with volume hydration and adrenergic blockade are often nec-

essary to control the blood pressure and to prevent intra-operative hypertensive crisis. Surgical extirpation remains the only cure for these patients and further research into this rare condition is warranted.

COMMENTS

Case characteristic

All patients presented with bladder mass with various clinical symptoms.

Clinical diagnosis

Bladder paraganglioma is diagnosed through biochemical hormonal profiling and nuclear imaging study.

Differential diagnosis

Urothelial cancer, benign bladder lesion.

Laboratory diagnosis

Measurement of catecholamine and its metabolites levels such as metanephrine and vanillylmandelic acid secretion in either the blood or urine.

Imaging diagnosis

Nuclear imaging study using iodine-131-meta-iodobenzylguanidine and ^{18}F-fluorodeoxyglucose, positron emission tomography.

Pathological diagnosis

Features of paraganglioma include zellballen architecture where tumour cells are arranged into nests and lobules, a delicate fibrovascular stroma and eosinophilic cytoplasm. Immunohistochemistry is usually positive for neuron-specific enolase, chromogranin and synaptophysin and negative for cytokeratin.

Treatment

Preoperative care with volume hydration and adrenergic blockade are often necessary to control the blood pressure and to prevent intra-operative hypertensive crisis. Surgical extirpation remains the only cure.

Related reports

Bladder paraganglioma is a rare condition and patients can present with various clinical presentations. Malignant phaeochromocytoma remains a challenging entity to diagnose and treat, and further research into this rare condition is warranted.

Experiences and lessons

This case series highlights the various clinical presentation of bladder paraganglioma and provides a clinical review of the current literature on management of this rare condition.

Peer review

This is a well-written report of three cases of bladder paraganglioma. Bladder paraganglioma is very rare. Their pathological diagnosis is quite proper and clinical practice is also well-summarized.

REFERENCES

1 **Young WF**. Paragangliomas: clinical overview. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 2006; **1073**: 21-29 [PMID: 17102068 DOI: 10.1196/annals.1353.002]

2 **Whalen RK**, Althausen AF, Daniels GH. Extra-adrenal pheochromocytoma. *J Urol* 1992; **147**: 1-10 [PMID: 1729490]

3 **Siatelis A**, Konstantinidis C, Volanis D, Leontara V, Thoma-Tsagli E, Delakas D. Pheochromocytoma of the urinary bladder: report of 2 cases and review of literature. *Minerva Urol Nefrol* 2008; **60**: 137-140 [PMID: 18500228]

4 **Cheng L**, Leibovich BC, Cheville JC, Ramnani DM, Sebo TJ, Neumann RM, Nascimento AG, Zincke H, Bostwick DG. Paraganglioma of the urinary bladder: can biologic potential be predicted? *Cancer* 2000; **88**: 844-852 [PMID: 10679654]

5 **Deng JH**, Li HZ, Zhang YS, Liu GH. Functional paragangliomas of the urinary bladder: a report of 9 cases. *Chin J Cancer* 2010; **29**: 729-734 [PMID: 20663319 DOI: 10.5732/cjc.009.10703]

6 **Pastor-Guzmán JM**, López-García S, Giménez-Bachs JM, Ruíz-Mondejar R, Cañamares-Pabolaza L, Atiénzar-Tobarra M, Casado-Moragón L, Virseda-Rodriguez JA. Paraganglioma of the bladder: controversy regarding treatment. *Urol Int* 2004; **73**: 270-275 [PMID: 15539850]

7 **Tsai CC**, Wu WJ, Chueh KS, Li WM, Huang CH, Wu CC, Lee MH, Chen SM. Paraganglioma of the urinary bladder first presented by bladder bloody tamponade: two case reports and review of the literatures. *Kaohsiung J Med Sci* 2011; **27**: 108-113 [PMID: 21421199 DOI: 10.1016/j.kjms.2010.05.005]

8 **Bhalani SM**, Casalino DD, Manvar AM. Paraganglioma of the bladder. *J Urol* 2011; **186**: 279-280 [PMID: 21600612 DOI: 10.1016/j.juro.2011.04.032]

9 **Bessell-Browne R**, O'Malley ME. CT of pheochromocytoma and paraganglioma: risk of adverse events with i.v. administration of nonionic contrast material. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2007; **188**: 970-974 [PMID: 17377032 DOI: 10.2214/AJR.06.0827]

10 **Qiao HS**, Feng XL, Yong L, Yong Z, Lian ZJ, Ling LB. The MRI of extraadrenal pheochromocytoma in the abdominal cavity. *Eur J Radiol* 2007; **62**: 335-341 [PMID: 17408898 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejrad.2007.02.041]

11 **Furuta N**, Kiyota H, Yoshigoe F, Hasegawa N, Ohishi Y. Diagnosis of pheochromocytoma using [123I]-compared with [131I]-metaiodobenzylguanidine scintigraphy. *Int J Urol* 1999; **6**: 119-124 [PMID: 10226821 DOI: 10.1046/j.1442-2042.1999.06310.x]

12 **Huang KH**, Chung SD, Chen SC, Chueh SC, Pu YS, Lai MK, Lin WC. Clinical and pathological data of 10 malignant pheochromocytomas: long-term follow up in a single institute. *Int J Urol* 2007; **14**: 181-185 [PMID: 17430251 DOI: 10.1111/j.1442-2042.2007.01687.x]

13 **Zhou M**, Epstein JI, Young RH. Paraganglioma of the urinary bladder: a lesion that may be misdiagnosed as urothelial carcinoma in transurethral resection specimens. *Am J Surg Pathol* 2004; **28**: 94-100 [PMID: 14707870 DOI: 10.1097/00000478-200401000-00011]

14 **Eisenhofer G**, Bornstein SR, Brouwers FM, Cheung NK, Dahia PL, de Krijger RR, Giordano TJ, Greene LA, Goldstein DS, Lehnert H, Manger WM, Maris JM, Neumann HP, Pacak K, Shulkin BL, Smith DI, Tischler AS, Young WF. Malignant pheochromocytoma: current status and initiatives for future progress. *Endocr Relat Cancer* 2004; **11**: 423-436 [PMID: 15369446 DOI: 10.1677/erc.1.00829]

15 **Kappers MH**, van den Meiracker AH, Alwani RA, Kats E, Baggen MG. Paraganglioma of the urinary bladder. *Neth J Med* 2008; **66**: 163-165 [PMID: 18424864]

16 **Ansari MS**, Goel A, Goel S, Durairajan LN, Seth A. Malignant paraganglioma of the urinary bladder. A case report. *Int Urol Nephrol* 2001; **33**: 343-345 [PMID: 12092652 DOI: 10.1023/A:1015269830795]

17 **Gedik GK**, Hoefnagel CA, Bais E, Olmos RA. 131I-MIBG therapy in metastatic phaeochromocytoma and paraganglioma. *Eur J Nucl Med Mol Imaging* 2008; **35**: 725-733 [PMID: 18071700 DOI: 10.1007/s00259-007-0652-6]

P- Reviewer: El-Ghar MA, Kai K **S- Editor**: Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Clinical Cases

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.12998/wjcc.v2.i10.596

World J Clin Cases 2014 October 16; 2(10): 596-603
ISSN 2307-8960 (online)

CASE REPORT

Haemostatic management for aortic valve replacement in a patient with advanced liver disease

Laurence Weinberg, Irene Kearsey, Clarissa Tjoakarfa, George Matalanis, Sean Galvin, Scott Carson, Rinaldo Bellomo, Larry McNicol, Peter McCall

Laurence Weinberg, Irene Kearsey, Clarissa Tjoakarfa, Larry McNicol, Peter McCall, Department of Anaesthesia, Austin Hospital, Melbourne, Victoria 3084, Australia
George Matalanis, Sean Galvin, Scott Carson, Department of Cardiac Surgery, Austin Hospital, Melbourne, Victoria 3084, Australia
Rinaldo Bellomo, Department of Intensive Care, Austin Hospital, Melbourne, Victoria 3084, Australia
Author contributions: Weinberg L and McCall P were the principal anaesthetists who managed the case; both were responsible for the planning and writing of the case report; Kearsey I and Tjoakarfa C were responsible for all the data collection, collation of pictures and the writing of the case report; Matalanis G and Galvin S were the cardiac surgeons that performed the operation and were responsible for the writing of the case report; Carson S was the clinical perfusionist that managed the case and was responsible for the writing of the case report; McNicol L and Bellomo R were responsible for the co-management of the patient in the preoperative and postoperative period and were responsible for the writing of the manuscript.
Supported by Department of Anaesthesia Research Fund, Department of Anaesthesia, Austin Hospital, Melbourne, Victoria 3084, Australia
Correspondence to: Laurence Weinberg, MBBCH, BSc, MRCP, DipCritCareECho, FANZCA, Department of Anaesthesia, Austin Hospital, 145 Studley Rd, Melbourne, Victoria 3084, Australia. laurence.weinberg@austin.org.au
Telephone: +61-3-94965000 Fax: +61-3-94965000
Received: May 23, 2014 Revised: June 26, 2014
Accepted: July 25, 2014
Published online: October 16, 2014

Abstract

Redo-sternotomy and aortic valve replacement in patients with advanced liver disease is rare and associated with a prohibitive morbidity and mortality. Refractory coagulopathy is common and a consequence of intense activation of the coagulation system that can be triggered by contact of blood with the cardiopulmonary bypass circuitry, bypass-induced fibrinolysis, platelet activation and dysfunction, haemodilution, surgical trauma, hepatic decompensation and hypothermia. Management can be further complicated by right heart dysfunction, porto-pulmonary hypertension, poor myocardial protection, and hepato-renal syndrome. Complex interactions between coagulation/fibrinolysis and systemic inflammatory response syndrome reactions like "post-perfusion-syndrome" also compound haemostatic failure. Given the limited information available for the specific management and prevention of cardiopulmonary bypass-induced haemostatic failure, this report serves to guide the anaesthesia and medical management of future cases of a similar kind. We discuss our multimodal management of haemostatic failure using pharmacological strategies, thromboelastography, continuous cerebral and liver oximetry, and continuous cardiac output monitoring.

Key words: Cardiac surgery; Liver failure; Coagulopathy; Cardiopulmonary bypass

Core tip: Cardiac surgery in patients with advanced liver disease is associated with significant morbidity and mortality. Refractory coagulopathy is common and requires a proactive multidisciplinary haemostatic management strategy. Given the limited information available for the specific management and prevention of cardiopulmonary bypass induced haemostatic failure, this report serves to guide the anaesthesia and medical management of future cases of a similar kind. We discuss our multimodal management of haemostatic failure using pharmacological strategies, thromboelastography, continuous cerebral and liver oximetry, and continuous cardiac output monitoring.

Weinberg L, Kearsey I, Tjoakarfa C, Matalanis G, Galvin S, Carson S, Bellomo R, McNicol L, McCall P. Haemostatic man-

agement for aortic valve replacement in a patient with advanced liver disease. *World J Clin Cases* 2014; 2(10): 596-603 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2307-8960/full/v2/i10/596.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.12998/wjcc.v2.i10.596

INTRODUCTION

Redo-sternotomy and aortic valve replacement (AVR) in patients with advanced liver disease is rare and associated with a prohibitive morbidity and mortality. Refractory coagulopathy is common and a consequence of intense activation of the coagulation system that can be triggered by contact of blood with the cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB) circuitry, CPB-induced fibrinolysis, platelet activation and dysfunction, haemodilution, surgical trauma, hepatic decompensation and hypothermia. Management can be further complicated by right heart dysfunction, porto-pulmonary hypertension, poor myocardial protection, and hepato-renal syndrome. Complex interactions between coagulation/fibrinolysis and systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS) reactions like "post-perfusion-syndrome" also compound haemostatic failure.

We present a patient with critical aortic stenosis who underwent redo-sternotomy and AVR prior to being listed for orthotopic liver transplantation. In this context, there is little information on the specific management of CPB-induced haemostatic failure. Therefore, we discuss our multimodal management of haemostatic failure using pharmacological strategies, thromboelastography (TEG), continuous cerebral and liver oximetry, and continuous cardiac output monitoring.

CASE REPORT

A 46-year-old male (weight 68 kg, height 183 cm) presented to our institution with acute pulmonary oedema secondary to severe aortic stenosis. The patient consented for a redo-sternotomy and AVR, with an estimated perioperative mortality of 50%. Previous cardiac history included open valvotomy *via* median sternotomy for a congenital calcified bicuspid aortic valve at age 6. The patient had a 10-year history of chronic liver disease secondary to alcohol abuse, with a Child Pugh Score of 8 (Child Class B), and a Model for End-Stage Liver Disease (MELD) Score of 12. The liver disease was further complicated by severe portal hypertension with ascites, thrombocytopaenia, oesophageal varices and portal hypertensive gastropathy. Two years prior, he underwent an emergency laparotomy for bleeding umbilical varices, which required intensive care unit (ICU) admission and an 8-unit red blood cell transfusion for hemorrhagic shock.

On this admission a transthoracic echocardiogram revealed preserved systolic left and right ventricular function, a severely calcified bicuspid valve (aortic valve area: 0.7 cm^2; mean aortic valve pressure gradient of 60 mmHg), moderate aortic regurgitation, mild mitral regurgitation, moderate pulmonary hypertension and a dilated ascending aorta (5.4 cm). Other cardiovascular risk factors included IgA nephropathy (creatinine 110 μmol/L, estimated glomerular filtration rate 73 mL/min per 1.73 m^2). There was no history of smoking or diabetes. The pulmonary oedema settled with conservative medical therapy. A coronary angiogram and right heart catheter study revealed no occlusive coronary artery disease, with a cardiac index of 3.4 L/min per square meter and a pulmonary artery pressure of 71/30 mmHg (mean 33 mmHg). Preoperative investigations including TEG are summarised in Tables 1-3. A detailed perioperative haemostatic coagulation strategy was formulated by a team composed of anaesthetist, haematologist, cardiac surgeon and intensivist.

The day before surgery, terlipressin [1 mg intravenous (*iv*) every 6 h] was commenced. Prior to induction of anaesthesia, an 8-French Rapid Infuser Catheter (Arrow) was inserted into each arm. Invasive monitoring included a 20 Gauge arterial line, 4-lumen central venous catheter, continuous cardiac output and continuous mixed venous oximetry measured with a fiberoptic pulmonary artery catheter (Edwards Lifesciences, Irvine CA) (Figure 1). External defibrillator pads were applied as a safety precaution. Bispectral index monitoring and cerebral and hepatic tissue oxygenation (Invos, Somanetics®) were measured with a cerebral/somatic oximeter, by placing disposable transducers over the right and left forehead (Figure 1), and on the skin overlying the lower right costal margin (Figure 2). The oximeters provided real-time monitoring of brain and liver oxygen saturations, measuring oxygen consumption and delivery. This allowed for detection and correction of cerebral and hepatic oxygen desaturation to optimise haemodynamic intervention. Tranexamic acid (1 g *iv* load then 500 g/h infusion) was commenced to minimize fibrinolysis during and after CPB. Octreotide (100 mcg bolus, then 25 mcg/h) was commenced to control portal hypertension and minimise hepatic ischaemia reperfusion injury from CPB. Vancomycin (1 g *iv*) and ceftriaxone (1 g *iv*) were administered for antimicrobial prophylaxis.

Redo-sternotomy was performed using an oscillating saw while lifting up the sternal wires. Dense adhesions of the right ventricle and posterior table of the sternum precluded access to the heart for central venous cannulation. Consequently, the femoral artery and vein were cannulated and the venous cannula carefully positioned using transoesophageal echocardiography guidance in the right atrium. After careful dissection around the heart and full heparinisation, the standard on-pump AVR technique was applied. A second venous cannula was added *via* the superior vena cava to the venous circuit to allow venous drainage, further minimizing hepatic congestion. After aortic cross clamp, pulsatile CPB was established, complete with haemofiltration to prevent fluid overload and maintain electrolyte neutrality. During CPB the patient was severely vasoplegic requiring escalating doses of noradrenaline (20 μg/min *iv*) and vasopressin (0.4 IU/min *iv*) to maintain a mean arterial pressure of 50 mmHg. Optimal pump flow rates and vasopressor use were

Table 1 Perioperative laboratory values and heparinase thromboelastography results

	Ref. ranges	Pre-operative	Pre-CPB	Rewarming Haemostatic intervention: FFP 15 mg/kg	Immediately post separation from CPB Haemostatic intervention: Protamine 500 mg; DDAVP 0.3 mg/kg; Concentrated fibrinogen 4 g; Platelets 2 pooled doses; 2 units packed RBC	15 min post separation from CPB Haemostatic intervention: Prothrombine × 1000 IU; then continuous infusion at 100 IU /h	30-min post separation from CPB Haemostatic intervention: Nil	Arrival intensive care unit
R (min)	4-8	6.4	5.0	6.7	6.9	28.9	7.8	6.7
K (min)	0-4	2.0	1.8	1.8	1.8	4.9	1.5	1.6
Angle (deg)	47-74	62.7	63.5	65.6	65.2	49.6	68.5	65.5
MA (mm)	54-72	53.7	61.9	61.3	57.6	71.8	69.0	70.1
LY30 (%)	0-8	0.7	0.3	0.0	0.0	1.4	0.0	0.0
INR	-	1.3	1.2	1.4	1.7	1.5	1.4	1.4
PT	11-15 s	13 s	14 s	15 s	19 h	17 h	16 h	16 h
APPT	22-38 s	36 s	39 h	> 200 h	49 h	50 h	45 h	38 s
Fib clauss	2.0-4.0 g/L		2.3 g/L	1.3 L	2.6 g/L	2.0 g/L	1.6 L	1.8 g/L
D-dimer	< 0.23 mg/L	1.05 h	Not measured	0.94 h		1.15 mg/L	Not measured	Not measured
Hb	130-180/L	90 L	83 L	73 L	55 L	85 L	Not measured	71 L
WBC	4.0-11.0 × 10^9	3.9 L	4.2 × 10^9	10.8 × 10^9	8.2 × 10^9	11.7 h	Not measured	9.4 × 10^9
Platelets	150-400 × 10^9	76 L	64 L	57 L	140 L	120 L	Not measured	73 L

The thromboelastography was performed after each of haemostatic interventions described. CPB: Cardiopulmonary bypass; FFP: Fresh frozen plasma; DDAVP: Desmopressin acetate; INR: International normalised ratio; PT: Prothrombin time; APPT: Activated partial prothrombin time; WBC: White blood cells; RBC: Red blood cells; MA: Maximum amplitude; K: Clot formation time; R: Reaction time.

Table 2 Perioperative arterial blood gases

	Ref. ranges	Pre-operation	Pre-cardiopulmonary bypass	Rewarming	Post separation	Closure	Post-op day 1	Post-op day 2 (venous)
pH	7.35-7.45	7.34[1]	7.32[1]	7.37[1]	7.24[1]	7.34[1]	7.34[1]	7.33[1]
pCO_2 (mmHg)	35-45	37	38	35	50[2]	42	39	45
pO_2 (mmHg)	80-110	105	230[2]	388[2]	385[2]	404[2]	111[2]	33[1]
HCO_3^- (mmol/L)	-	19	19	20	20	22	20	23
Base excess (mmol/L)	-3/+3	-6[1]	-6[1]	-4[1]	-6[1]	-3	-5[1]	-2
O_2 sat (%)	> 94	98	100	100	100	100	100	56[1]
Na^+ (mmol/L)	135-148	132[1]	132[2]	136	138	138	138	130[1]
K^+ (mmol/L)	3.5-5.3	4.0	4.0	4.9	3.9	3.9	4.6	4.5
Cl^- (mmol/L)	95-106	107[1]	107[2]	106	108[2]	108[2]	106	99
Ionised Ca^{2+} (mmol/L)	1.13-1.32	1.16	1.07[1]	0.92[1]	0.83[1]	1.06[1]	1.10[1]	1.10[1]
Haemoglobin (g/L)	120-180	80[1]	78[1]	71[1]	77[1]	86[1]	71[1]	63[1]
Glucose (mmol/L)	0.0-5.0	5.9[2]	6.3[2]	8.3[2]	6.2[2]	3.8[1]	8.0[2]	8.9[2]
Lactate (mmol/L)	3.9-5.8	0.9	0.6	4.0[2]	2.9[2]	2.0[2]	1.5	1.3

[1]Value below reference range; [2]Value above reference range.

Table 3 Perioperative renal function and liver function tests

	Ref. ranges	Pre-op	Arrival in ICU	Day 1 post op
Urea (mmol/L)	3.2-7.3	8.7[2]	6.3	7.6[2]
Creatinine (μmol/L)	62-106	110[2]	91	125[2]
Albumin (g/L)	35-52	31	25[1]	36
Globulins (g/L)	25-35	46[2]	19[1]	20[1]
Bilirubin (μmol/L)	< 18	40	35[2]	47[2]
ALP (IU)	40-130	99	51	49
ALT (IU)	< 41	30	21	22
GGT (U/L)	< 60	100[2]	40	40

[1]Value below reference range; [2]Value above reference range. ICU: Intensive care unit; ALP: Alkaline phosphatase; ALT: Alanine aminotransferase; GGT: Gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase.

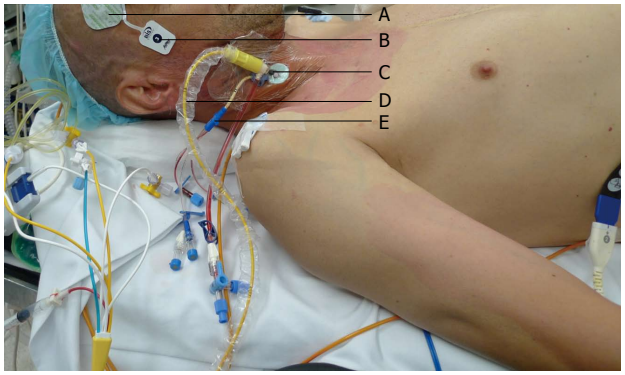


Figure 1 Monitoring used for redo-stenotomy and aortic valve replacement. A: Cerebral oximeter (Invos, Somanetics®); B: Bispectral index; C: 9 French Internal jugular sheath; D: Continuous cardiac output and mixed venous oximetry measured with a fiberoptic pulmonary artery catheter (Edwards Lifesciences, Irvine CA); E: 4-lumen central venous catheter.

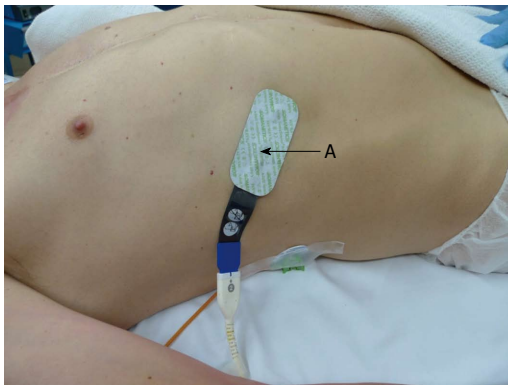


Figure 2 Hepatic tissue oxygenation measured by positioning an oximetry disposable transducer between the ribs and over the liver. A: Hepatic oximeter (Invos, Somanetics).

guided by cerebral and liver oximetry. There was excellent correlation between cardiac output, mixed venous saturations and cerebral and liver oximetry throughout the case (Figures 3 and 4). In response to progressive refractory vasoplegia, methylene blue (1 mg/kg *iv*) was administered, which rapidly re-established an acceptable mean arterial pressure. The noradrenaline and vasopressin requirements were weaned to 3 μg/min and 0.05 IU/min

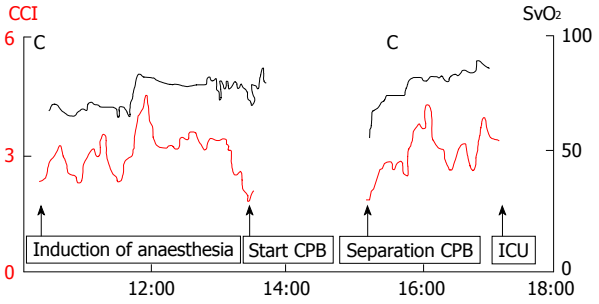


Figure 3 Intraoperative continuous cardiac index and mixed venous oxygenations tracings measured from the pulmonary artery catheter displayed on a Vigilance™ Monitor (Edwards Lifesciences, Irvine CA). ICU: Intensive care unit; CPB: Cardiopulmonary bypass; CCI: Continuous cardiac index.

respectively. A 25 mm Mitroflow® aortic pericardial valve (Sorin, Milan, Italy) was inserted without complication.

Prior to separation from CPB, a rewarming heparinase TEG was performed (Table 1, Figure 5). Desmopressin acetate (0.3 mcg/kg *iv* over 20 min) was administered to increase the plasma levels of factor Ⅷ and von Willebrand factor to minimize post-operative blood loss. Based on the rewarming TEG (Table 2 and Figure 5), fresh frozen plasma (15 mg/kg) was added to the CPB circuit to avoid volume overload and right ventricular distension during bypass separation. Glyceryl trinitrate (5 μg/min *iv*), and frusemide (20 mg *iv*) were administered to further reduce right ventricular preload and hepatic congestion.

After successful separation from CPB, haemostatic management focused on minimizing intraoperative bleeding and maintaining normothermia. Protamine (500 mg *iv*) was given to reverse the effects of heparin and correct activated clotting time to baseline values, followed by two bags of pooled platelets and *iv* administration of concentrated fibrinogen (4 g *iv*) (Riastap®, *iv* Behring, Australia). The dose of fibrinogen was calculated according to the patient's body weight (68 kg) and his estimated blood volume (4.8 L). Based on a preoperative haemoglobin of 9.8 g/L, a haematocrit of 30% of plasma volume (3.4 L), and a preoperative fibrinogen level of 2.5 g/L, we calculated that a dose of 4 g of fibrinogen would be needed to increase plasma fibrinogen levels by an estimated 1.2 g/L. With haemodilution on bypass, we expected the fibrinogen to fall by approximately 1-1.5 g/L. Following administration of concentrated fibrinogen, a heparinase TEG revealed significant prolongation of the R-time, confirming an underlying coagulopathy (Figure 5). Human prothrombin complex® (500 IU *iv* bolus, then 100 IU/h *iv* infusion) (CSL Behring, Australia) was administered, which corrected the R-time and improved haemostasis (Figure 5). Calcium chloride (1-2 g *iv*) was also administered. The total CPB time was 141 min and aortic cross-clamp time 61 min. Temporary epicardial pacing wires were not used to avoid the small risk of cardiac bleeding on wire removal additional. A topical haemostatic matrix (FLOSEAL™, Baxter, Pty) was used to control bleeding

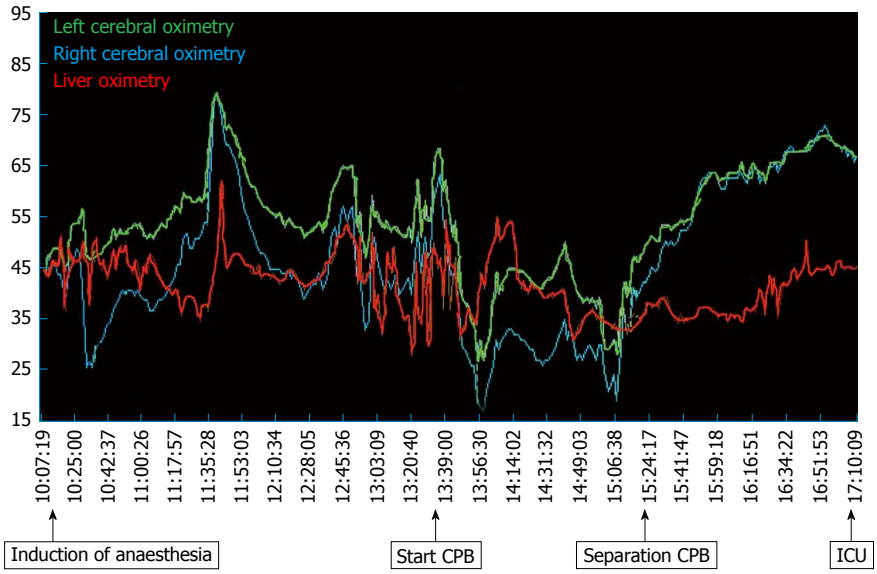


Figure 4 Cerebral and hepatic tissue oxygenation tracings measured with a cerebral/somatic oximeter (Invos Somanetics®) throughout the surgery and during cardiopulmonary bypass. ICU: Intensive care unit; CPB: Cardiopulmonary bypass.

from the suture lines, and thrombin dried powder (GELFOAM®, Baxter, Pty) was applied to the bone marrow of the sternum, which allowed sternal closure with minimal bleeding. Mediastinal and bilateral pleural drains were placed so that volume losses could be measured in ICU, and collection of blood around the heart avoided during the postoperative period.

In ICU, the octreotide (25 mcg/h *iv*) and prothrombinex (100 IU/h *iv*) infusions were continued for 8 h. Haemodynamic stability was maintained and the noradrenaline and vasopressin infusions weaned after 6 h, and the patient was extubated. Terlipressin (1 mg *iv*) was continued every 6 h for a further 24 h. The patient was transferred to the ward the following day, and discharged home ten days later without complications. There were no further requirements for coagulation or blood product intervention. Postoperatively, renal, haematological and liver function tests remained stable, and are summarised in Tables 1-3.

Three months post discharge, and at the time of writing, the patient continues to make satisfactory cardiac progress and is currently awaiting liver transplantation.

DISCUSSION

This case illustrates that redo-sternotomy and aortic valve AVR in the setting of advanced liver disease is feasible but requires careful planning. The central management decisions for such cases include to either (1) replace the valve first and then proceed with liver transplantation at a later date; (2) offer a combined procedure, *i.e.*, AVR and liver transplantation simultaneously; and (3) proceed with liver transplantation first, and then replace the valve at a later stage. In the case described here, after extensive multidisciplinary discussion a consensus was reached that the risks of liver transplantation in the setting of uncorrected symptomatic severe aortic stenosis were prohibitive. In view of the bicuspid valve and dilated ascending aorta, a transcatheter AVR was not a consideration. A combined AVR and liver transplant was considered but there were concerns that there may be further cardiac decompensation during the waiting period. Given that the patient was progressively symptomatic, a redo-sternotomy and AVR was considered to afford the best chance of survival, with activation for liver transplantation initiated at a later stage if the outcome was successful.

As shown in this case, redo cardiac surgery provides several technical challenges that distinguish it from primary cardiac surgery. These obstacles include repeat sternotomy, injury to the heart during dissection, quality and availability of conduits if required, a calcified ascending aorta, and more-advanced coronary disease involving the native vessels. As a result, operative mortality in most reoperations is 3 to 5 times that for a primary AVR. Adding in the ensuing complications of advanced liver disease, perioperative mortality increases with an estimated perioperative risk of mortality of 50%[1]. Each patient's condition and presentation is unique, and thus requires individualized management delivered by a multidisciplinary team. Consideration must be given to the sequence of procedures, cardiac surgical technique, and management of anticoagulation.

Combined cardiac and liver transplantation was first reported by Starzl *et al*[2] in 1984, but has remained uncommon because of the unique medical and surgical challenges it poses . In two descriptive reports of outcomes in patients with advanced liver cirrhosis undergoing cardiac surgery[3,4], hepatic decompensation, respiratory and renal failure, gastrointestinal haemorrhagic events, sepsis and mediastinitis were among the most common postoperative complications. The association of MELD scores and Child-Turcotte-Pugh classification, and adverse outcomes is less clear. In the study by Filsoufi *et al*[4], mortality rate increased significantly according to the

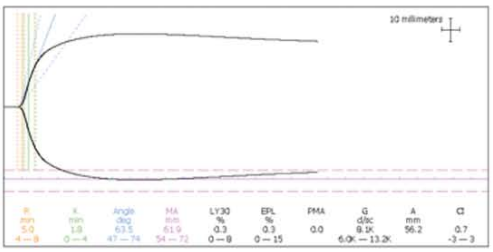
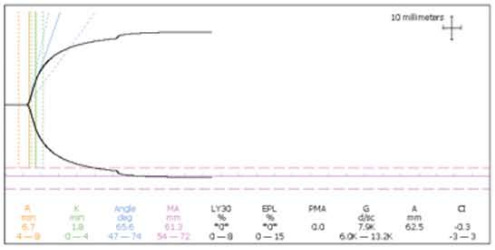
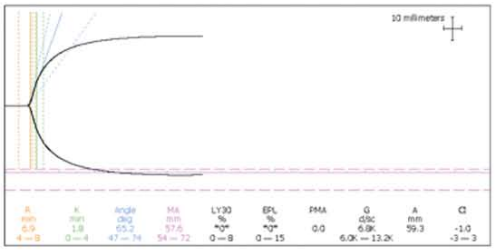
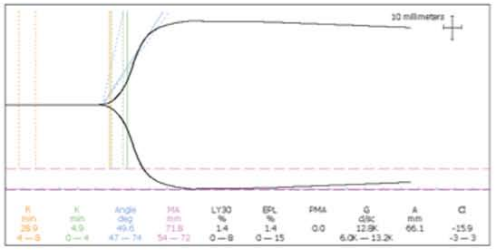
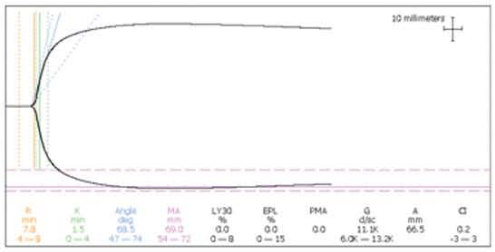
Pre-induction of anaesthesia	(1) Pre-med: morphine intramuscular 15 mg (2) 3 L central venous catheter, continuous pulmonary artery catheter, 8-f rapid infuser catheter peripheral access (3) Tranexamic acid *iv*: 1 g load then 500 g/h infusion to stop at surgical closure (4) Octreotide *iv* 100 mg bolus intravenous, followed after 2 h by a continuous infusion of 25 mg/h for 12 h (5) Terlipressin *iv* 1-2 mg administered every 6 h for 12 (6) Vancomycin *iv* 1 g/ceftriaxone 1 g *iv* antibiotic prophylaxis	
During CPB	(1) TOE guidance of venous lines to ensure excellent drainage and minimal hepatic congestion (2) Pulsatile flow (3) Haemofiltration (4) Noradrenalin commenced for vasoplegia (5) Vasopressin *iv* 0.1-0.4 IU/min commenced for vasoplegia (6) Methylene blue *iv* 1.5 mg/kg administered for refractory vasoplegia unresponsive to above	
Rewarming	(1) DDAVP *iv*: 0.3 μg/kg over 20 min (2) 4 unit FFP directly into the CPB circuit ensuring ACT > 600 s haemofiltering and removing fluid to minimise increasing portal pressures and unnecessary volume load when separating from CPB (3) Glyceryltrinitrate *iv* 5 μg/min to reduce preload to right heart pressures and minimise hepatic congestion (4) Calcium chloride 1-2 g	
After separation from CPB	(1) Protamine *iv* 500 mg, guided by ACT (2) Concentrated fibrinogen: 4 g (3) Prothrombinex *iv* 500 IU load followed by 100 IU/h infusion (4) Platelets: 2 pooled bags (10 units) (5) Frusemide *iv* 20 mg	
Prior to transfer to ICU	(1) Octeotide *iv* 25 mg/h for 6-12 h (2) Terlipressin *iv* 1-2 mg 4-h for 12-24 h (3) Prothrombinex at 100 IU/h for 6-12 h If bleeding still refractory: consideration of: (1) ± Cryoprecipitate 1 bag per 10 kg body weight (2) ± Recombinant activated factor Ⅶ (45-90 μg/kg) if ongoing haemostatic failure observed (3) Additional products based on clinical picture, TEG and laboratory coagulation results	

Figure 5 Perioperative thromboelastrography tracings observed in this case with corresponding haemostatic management action or planned strategy. DDAVP: Desmopressin acetate; FFP: Fresh frozen plasma; CPB: Cardiopulmonary bypass; TEG: Thromboelastography; TOE: Transoesophageal echocardiography; *IV*: Intravenous; ACT: Activated clotting time.

Child-Turcotte-Pugh classification (class A, 10%; B, 18%; and C, 67%). The reported mortality of redo cardiac surgery was approximately 50%[3]. Similarly, the rate of complications was higher in class B (50%) and C (100%) compared to class A (20%). Suman *et al*[5] reported that a cutoff Child-Pugh score > 7 had a sensitivity and specificity of 86% and 92% for mortality, although there was no association between mortality and MELD scores. In contrast, Morimoto *et al*[3] reported that Child-Pugh class score did not correlate with hospital mortality, although MELD score was significantly higher in patients who died immediately post cardiac surgery. To date, there have been several reports of combined AVR and liver transplantation[6]. Postoperative outcomes are variable; the majority of cases have been successful however, mortality due to clotting disturbances has also been reported. As a result, careful preoperative preparation must be conducted in such highly complex cases to prevent catastrophic

outcomes.

As seen in this case, a common yet serious complication of CPB is vasoplegic syndrome, a post-perfusion syndrome characterised by low systemic vascular resistance, significant hypotension, and a high cardiac output. It has an incidence of 5%-25% and a mortality rate as high as 25%[7]. In this case, we used the standard first line vasoactive treatment (noradrenaline and vasopressin) to maintain a mean arterial pressure of 50 mmHg[8]. However methylene blue was required during CPB to reduce the severity of vasoplegia. Use of methylene blue had been used effectively for the treatment of refractory vasoplegia in two randomised control trials[9,10], acting through its inhibitory effect on cyclic guanosine 3',5'-monophosphate-mediated vasodilatation. Despite restoring vascular tone intraoperatively, discontinuation of vasopressin has been associated with postoperative refractory vasoplegia, therefore in the case described here, vasopressin was for continued for 6 h postoperatively.

AVR performed in the context of advanced liver disease added an additional layer of complexity in preventing further decline of hepatic and renal function. The patient's history of significant portal hypertension justified the use of both terlipressin and octreotide to prevent variceal beeding[11-13]. Terlipressin has also been shown to improve hepatorenal syndrome, thought to be due to arteriolar vasoconstriction in the splanchnic area, which was an important consideration for the patient's underlying IgA nephropathy. Its effects are mediated *via* V1 receptors on vascular smooth muscle[13]. In animal models, octreotide has been shown to improve hepatic ischaemia-reperfusion injury by down-regulating inflammatory cytokines (tumor necrosis factor alpha and interleukin-1 beta) and inhibition of hepatocellular apoptosis[14], and in this case, served an added benefit when separating from bypass.

Coagulopathy is a frequent occurrence during CPB and is due to a number of factors including excessive fibrinolysis, platelet dysfunction, coagulation factor consumption, and coagulation factor dilution from intravascular volume replacement. We used a variety of multimodal pharmacological agents to prevent intraoperative and postoperative bleeding. Hypofibrinogenemia is common in cardiac surgery, which was minimized preoperatively with tranexamic acid, and intraoperatively with concentrated fibrinogen[15,16]. Desmopressin acetate[17,18], Human Prothrombin-X complex[19] and protamine were also implemented as described previously.

In this case, we employed several haemostatic and haemodynamic monitoring methods to guide our management. TEG, commonly used in cardiac surgery, is a useful tool in denoting a patient's clotting profile at landmark time points to influence specific pharmacologic decisions[20,21]. Figure 5 summarizes consecutive TEG readings and the subsequent interventions undertaken. It should also be noted that TEG requires trained personnel to operate and therefore poses as a limiting factor for its use[20]. Additional haemodynamic monitoring included pulmonary artery catheter sampling of mixed venous blood (SvO_2) and tissue oximetry. Intraoperatively, we were primarily concerned about the key factors that influence oxygen delivery, namely haemoglobin, oxygenation, and cardiac output. Continuous liver, cerebral and mixed venous oximetry enabled immediate detection of adverse changes, prompting correction and subsequent visualization of improvements of haemodynamic trends. Continuous recordings of cardiac output and global oxygenation status are presented in Figure 3. The brain and liver tissue oxygenation tracings are shown in Figure 4. In the context of low liver oximetry, in addition to the aforementioned factors that influence tissue oxygenation, hepatic congestion secondary to the outflow obstruction was also carefully monitored. Then, depending on the determined underlying cause, suitable corrections were made in the form of red cell transfusion, adjustment pump flow rates, and ensuring adequate venous drainage at all times. Although hepatic oximetry is predominantly used in the paediatric setting[22,23], we justified its use to intensively monitor the already compromised liver, and guide therapy as above. Interestingly, the liver oximeter tracing tracked the cerebral oximeter tracing very accurately (Figure 4), providing reassurance of continual intact hepatic perfusion.

In conclusion, we report a case of AVR in a patient with advanced liver disease. Given the limited information available for specific management and prevention of haemostatic failure, this report serves to guide future cases of a similar kind.

COMMENTS

Case characteristics

A 46-year-old male with a history of chronic liver disease secondary to alcohol abuse, presents with acute pulmonary oedema secondary to left ventricular failure.

Clinical diagnosis

Severe aortic stenosis.

Differential diagnosis

Non cardiogenic causes of pulmonary oedema include pulmonary contusion, acute respiratory distress syndrome, transfusion-related acute lung injury, aspiration, hypertensive crisis, upper airway obstruction, and neurogenic causes (seizures, intracranial haemorrhage).

Laboratory diagnosis

Plasma creatinine 110 μmol/L; albumin 31 g/L; bilirubin 40 μmol/L; haemoglobin 90 g/L; prothrombin time 1.3 s; platelets 76 ($\times 10^9$).

Imaging diagnosis

Transthoracic echocardiogram a severely calcified bicuspid valve, with an aortic valve area of 0.7 cm^2; mean aortic valve pressure gradient of 60 mmHg with moderate pulmonary hypertension.

Treatment

The patients underwent redo-aortic valve replacement requiring aggressive haemostatic therapy for coagulopathy and refractory vasoplegia.

Related reports

Combined cardiac surgery in patients with advanced liver disease.

Experiences and lessons

Cardiac surgery in patients with advanced liver disease is associated with significant morbidity and mortality. Refractory coagulopathy is common and requires a proactive multidisciplinary haemostatic management strategy.

Peer review

Weinberg *et al* present an interesting and complex case report of a patient with critical aortic stenosis and advanced liver disease who underwent redo-

sternotomy and aortic valve replacement prior to being listed for orthotopic liver transplantation.

REFERENCES

1 **Nemati MH**, Astaneh B, Zamirian M. Aortic valve replacement in a patient with liver cirrhosis and coagulopathy. *Gen Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 2008; **56**: 430-433 [PMID: 18696213 DOI: 10.1007/s11748-008-0270-7]

2 **Starzl TE**, Iwatsuki S, Shaw BW, Van Thiel DH, Gartner JC, Zitelli BJ, Malatack JJ, Schade RR. Analysis of liver transplantation. *Hepatology* 1984; **4**: 47S-49S [PMID: 6363258 DOI: 10.1002/hep.1840040714]

3 **Morimoto N**, Okada K, Okita Y. Results of cardiac surgery in advanced liver cirrhosis. *Gen Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 2013; **61**: 79-83 [PMID: 23115002 DOI: 10.1007/s11748-012-0175-3]

4 **Filsoufi F**, Salzberg SP, Rahmanian PB, Schiano TD, Elsiesy H, Squire A, Adams DH. Early and late outcome of cardiac surgery in patients with liver cirrhosis. *Liver Transpl* 2007; **13**: 990-995 [PMID: 17427174 DOI: 10.1002/lt.21075]

5 **Suman A**, Barnes DS, Zein NN, Levinthal GN, Connor JT, Carey WD. Predicting outcome after cardiac surgery in patients with cirrhosis: a comparison of Child-Pugh and MELD scores. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2004; **2**: 719-723 [PMID: 15290666 DOI: 10.1016/S1542-3565(04)00296-4]

6 **Diaz GC**, Renz JF, Nishanian E, Kinkhabwala M, Emond JC, Wagener G. Anesthetic management of combined heart-liver transplantation. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth* 2007; **21**: 253-256 [PMID: 17418742 DOI: 10.1053/j.jvca.2006.01.030]

7 **Gomes WJ**, Carvalho AC, Palma JH, Teles CA, Branco JN, Silas MG, Buffolo E. Vasoplegic syndrome after open heart surgery. *J Cardiovasc Surg* (Torino) 1998; **39**: 619-623 [PMID: 9833722]

8 **Fischer GW**, Levin MA. Vasoplegia during cardiac surgery: current concepts and management. *Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 2010; **22**: 140-144 [PMID: 21092891 DOI: 10.1053/j.semtcvs.2010.09.007]

9 **Maslow AD**, Stearns G, Butala P, Schwartz CS, Gough J, Singh AK. The hemodynamic effects of methylene blue when administered at the onset of cardiopulmonary bypass. *Anesth Analg* 2006; **103**: 2-8, table of contents [PMID: 16790616 DOI: 10.1213/01.ane.0000221261.25310.fe]

10 **Ozal E**, Kuralay E, Yildirim V, Kilic S, Bolcal C, Kücükarslan N, Günay C, Demirkilic U, Tatar H. Preoperative methylene blue administration in patients at high risk for vasoplegic syndrome during cardiac surgery. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2005; **79**: 1615-1619 [PMID: 15854942 DOI: 10.1016/j.athoracsur.2004.10.038]

11 **Fayed N**, Refaat EK, Yassein TE, Alwaraqy M. Effect of perioperative terlipressin infusion on systemic, hepatic, and renal hemodynamics during living donor liver transplantation. *J Crit Care* 2013; **28**: 775-782 [PMID: 23618777 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcrc.2013.02.016]

12 **Ludwig D**, Schädel S, Brüning A, Schiefer B, Stange EF. 48-hour hemodynamic effects of octreotide on postprandial splanchnic hyperemia in patients with liver cirrhosis and portal hypertension: double-blind, placebo-controlled study. *Dig Dis Sci* 2000; **45**: 1019-1027 [PMID: 10795771 DOI: 10.1023/A:1005553914878]

13 **Mukhtar A**, Salah M, Aboulfetouh F, Obayah G, Samy M, Hassanien A, Bahaa M, Abdelaal A, Fathy M, Saeed H, Rady M, Mostafa I, El-Meteini M. The use of terlipressin during living donor liver transplantation: Effects on systemic and splanchnic hemodynamics and renal function. *Crit Care Med* 2011; **39**: 1329-1334 [PMID: 21336108 DOI: 10.1097/CCM.0b013e3182120842]

14 **Yang J**, Sun H, Takacs P, Zhang Y, Liu J, Chang Y, Candiotti KA. The effect of octreotide on hepatic ischemia-reperfusion injury in a rabbit model. *Transplant Proc* 2013; **45**: 2433-2438 [PMID: 23953560 DOI: 10.1016/j.transproceed.2013.02.112]

15 **Rahe-Meyer N**, Hanke A, Schmidt DS, Hagl C, Pichlmaier M. Fibrinogen concentrate reduces intraoperative bleeding when used as first-line hemostatic therapy during major aortic replacement surgery: results from a randomized, placebo-controlled trial. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 2013; **145**: S178-S185 [PMID: 23410777 DOI: 10.1016/j.jtcvs.2012.12.083]

16 **Rahe-Meyer N**, Solomon C, Hanke A, Schmidt DS, Knoerzer D, Hochleitner G, Sørensen B, Hagl C, Pichlmaier M. Effects of fibrinogen concentrate as first-line therapy during major aortic replacement surgery: a randomized, placebo-controlled trial. *Anesthesiology* 2013; **118**: 40-50 [PMID: 23249928 DOI: 10.1097/ALN.0b013e3182715d4d]

17 **Steinlechner B**, Zeidler P, Base E, Birkenberg B, Ankersmit HJ, Spannagl M, Quehenberger P, Hiesmayr M, Jilma B. Patients with severe aortic valve stenosis and impaired platelet function benefit from preoperative desmopressin infusion. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2011; **91**: 1420-1426 [PMID: 21439546 DOI: 10.1016/j.athoracsur.2011.01.052]

18 **Wademan BH**, Galvin SD. Desmopressin for reducing postoperative blood loss and transfusion requirements following cardiac surgery in adults. *Interact Cardiovasc Thorac Surg* 2014; **18**: 360-370 [PMID: 24263581 DOI: 10.1093/icvts/ivt491]

19 **Song HK**, Tibayan FA, Kahl EA, Sera VA, Slater MS, Deloughery TG, Scanlan MM. Safety and efficacy of prothrombin complex concentrates for the treatment of coagulopathy after cardiac surgery. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 2014; **147**: 1036-1040 [PMID: 24365268 DOI: 10.1016/j.jtcvs.2013.11.020]

20 **Gorton H**, Lyons G. Is it time to invest in a thromboelastograph? *Int J Obstet Anesth* 1999; **8**: 171-178 [PMID: 15321140 DOI: 10.1016/S0959-289X(99)80133-2]

21 **Salooja N**, Perry DJ. Thrombelastography. *Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis* 2001; **12**: 327-337 [PMID: 11505075]

22 **Hampton DA**, Schreiber MA. Near infrared spectroscopy: clinical and research uses. *Transfusion* 2013; **53** Suppl 1: 52S-58S [PMID: 23301973 DOI: 10.1111/trf.12036]

23 **Schulz G**, Weiss M, Bauersfeld U, Teller J, Haensse D, Bucher HU, Baenziger O. Liver tissue oxygenation as measured by near-infrared spectroscopy in the critically ill child in correlation with central venous oxygen saturation. *Intensive Care Med* 2002; **28**: 184-189 [PMID: 11907662 DOI: 10.1007/s00134-001-1182-5]

P- Reviewer: Can M, Petix NR **S- Editor**: Song XX
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Clinical Cases

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.12998/wjcc.v2.i10.604

World J Clin Cases 2014 October 16; 2(10): 604-607
ISSN 2307-8960 (online)

CASE REPORT

Liver abscess caused by *Burkholderia pseudomallei* in a young man: A case report and review of literature

Partha Pal, Sayantan Ray, Avijit Moulick, Subhasis Dey, Anirban Jana, Kokila Banerjee

Partha Pal, Avijit Moulick, Subhasis Dey, Department of General Medicine, Calcutta National Medical College and Hospital, Kolkata 700014, West Bengal, India
Sayantan Ray, Department of Endocrinology, IPGMER and SSKM Hospital, Kolkata 700020, West Bengal, India
Anirban Jana, Department of General Medicine, Bankura Sammilani Medical College and Hospital, Bankura 722101, West Bengal, India
Kokila Banerjee, Department of Microbiology, Drs. Tribedi and Roy Diagnostic Laboratory, Kolkata 700016, West Bengal, India
Author contributions: Pal P, Ray S and Moulick A contributed to conception and design; Pal P, Dey S and Jana A contributed to drafting of the article; Dey S and Jana A contributed to literature search; Ray S and Banerjee K contributed to analysis and interpretation of data; Ray S, Moulick A and Banerjee K contributed to critical revision of the article for important intellectual content; all the authors give final approval of the article.
Correspondence to: Dr. Sayantan Ray, Department of Endocrinology, IPGMER and SSKM Hospital, 244, AJC Bose Road, Kolkata 700020, West Bengal, India. sayantan.ray30@gmail.com
Telephone: +91-923-1674135 Fax: +91-923-1674135
Received: February 17, 2014 Revised: June 14, 2014
Accepted: July 25, 2014
Published online: October 16, 2014

Abstract

Pyogenic liver abscess is a common entity in Indian subcontinent and is mostly caused by gram negative bacteria. Melioidosis is not commonly seen in India and only a few cases are reported. It can give rise to multiple abscesses at different sites including liver. We report a case of isolated liver abscess caused by *Burkholderia pseudomallei* (*B. pseudomallei*) in a 29-year-old recently diagnosed diabetic, immunocompetent male. Diagnosis was made by imaging and culture of pus aspirated from the abscess and he was treated with percutaneous pigtail catheter drainage followed by antibiotics (meropenem and trimethoprim-sulphmethoxazole). Melioidosis is an emerging infection in India and has high mortality rate, so early diagnosis and prompt management is warranted which requires clinical vigilance and an intensive microbiological workup. Clinicians should be aware of isolated liver abscess caused by *B. pseudomallei* in appropriate clinical settings.

Key words: Liver abscess; Diabetes; *Burkholderia pseudomallei*; Emerging infection; India

Core tip: Liver abscess due to *Burkholderia pseudomallei* (*B. pseudomallei*) is extremely rare and is mostly reported from Taiwan. In India, most of the reports of are from southern coastal India and this entity is exceedingly rare in eastern India. The actual magnitude of this emerging infection may be under reported due to non-availability of confirmatory tests. Accurate diagnosis is necessary as outcome is fatal with ineffective treatment. We report a case of multiple liver abscesses caused by *B. pseudomallei* in a 29-year-old diabetic male, who was referred as a case of recurrence of pyogenic liver abscess which was previously caused by pseudomonas not responding to antibiotic therapy and aspiration. Diagnosis was made by imaging and culture of aspirated pus revealed *B. pseudomallei* and he was treated successfully with surgical drainage and prolonged course of intravenous and oral antibiotics. So, in a case of pyogenic liver abscess not responding to conventional antibiotics, *B. pseudomallei* should always be thought as a possibility which can be identified by its characteristic appearance on culture and microscopy or direct immunofluorescence testing as well as unique imaging features.

Pal P, Ray S, Moulick A, Dey S, Jana A, Banerjee K. Liver abscess caused by *Burkholderia pseudomallei* in a young man: A case report and review of literature. *World J Clin Cases* 2014; 2(10): 604-607 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2307-8960/full/v2/i10/604.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.12998/wjcc.v2.i10.604

INTRODUCTION

Liver abscess is the commonest intra-abdominal abscess, which may be of biliary tract origin (commonest) or hematogenous spread from a distant site, and rarely traumatic. Pyogenic liver abscess is a rare but potentially lethal condition, with a reported incidence of 20 per 100000 hospital admissions in a western population[1]. Both gram positive and gram negative aerobes and anaerobes have been found on culture of aspirated pus, among them *Escherichia coli* (*E. coli*) is cultured most frequently in Western countries[2] and Klebsiella in Asian countries[3].

Burkholderia pseudomallei (*B. pseudomallei*), a category Ⅱ bioterrorism agent, is the causative organism melioidosis and is endemic in Southeast Asia and northern Australia[4]. *B. pseudomallei* is found in soil and water and infection occurs by inoculation, inhalation, or ingestion[4]. Melioidosis is most commonly known to present as pneumonia followed by abscesses in the skin. Abscesses in internal organs like spleen, kidney, prostate and liver have also been reported as part of disseminated disease. Isolated liver abscess in melioidosis is a rare clinical condition.

Cases of melioidosis have been reported from southern coastal part of India, but melioidosis causing liver abscess is rare. In cases of liver abscess not responding to conventional anti-microbial the possibility of melioidosis should always be kept in mind. Because of high relapse and mortality rate, early diagnosis and prolonged treatment is a must in this case.

CASE REPORT

A 29-year-old male was referred to us with high grade fever for 20 d and cough for 2 wk. He had no history of tuberculosis, foreign travel or animal exposure and is farmer by occupation. He had a pyogenic liver abscess by *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* along with pancytopenia about one year back. On admission patient was toxic with high grade fever (37.7 ℃-39.4 ℃) with a pulse rate of 126/min and blood pressure of 100/76 mmHg. Liver was enlarged, tender with a liver span of 15 cm and spleen was just palpable. There was no free fluid in abdomen clinically.

Investigations revealed hemoglobin 10.3 gm/dL, total leucocyte count of 9400/μL, neutrophil 88%, lymphocyte 10%, eosinophil 2% and platelet count of 175 × 10^9/μL. Fasting plasma glucose was 164 mg/dL and HbA1c was 8.1%. So he was newly diagnosed of having diabetes mellitus and started on treatment with insulin. Renal function and liver function tests were within normal limits. Human immunodeficiency virus serology was negative. Acid fast bacilli were not found in sputum and sputum culture showed no growth of any pathogenic organism. Chest radiograph showed elevation of right dome of diaphragm (Figure 1A). Abdominal ultrasound revealed hepatomegaly with a large hypoechoic space occupying lesion (88 mm × 91 mm) in right lobe of liver with splenomegaly. Contrast enhanced computed tomography of abdomen showed hepatomegaly with loculated hypodense lesion (8.5 cm × 7.4 cm) in the anterior part of right lobe (Figure 1B), and multiple small hypodense lesions with confluence in the posterior part of right lobe (Figure 1C). Pus was aspirated from the abscess which on culture showed dry, wrinkled colonies (Figure 2A) on 5% sheep blood agar and McConkey's agar after 48 h of incubation at 37 ℃. Gram-negative, oxidase-positive, motile, aerobic bacilli with typical bipolar "Safety pin" appearance (Figure 2B) was seen on gram stain suggestive of *B. pseudomallei*, which was identified by Vitek 2 compact system. Culture sensitivity was done, which was sensitive to ceftazidime, piperacillin-tazobactum, meropenem, trimethoprim-sulphmethoxazole and minocycline.

Patient was treated with percutaneous catheter drainage, antibiotics and strict glycemic control. Intravenous meropenem was continued for two weeks followed by trimethoprim-sulphmethoxazole for 20 wk after which follow up computed tomography (CT) scan showed complete resolution of the liver abscess.

DISCUSSION

Liver abscess is a common entity in India; among which pyogenic liver abscess is a rare variety. Ascending infection from biliary tract is the most common cause, followed by hematogenous spread[4]. *E. coli*, is the most often cultured bacteria, accounting for about 33% of the cases followed by streptococcal group[5].

Melioidosis varies from asymptomatic infections and localized skin abscess without systemic illness to fulminant diseases with abscesses involving lungs and other internal organs especially when the host immunity is compromised. Cases of isolated liver abscess are not very common and rarely reported. It is an environmental saprophyte and is endemic in Southeast Asia and northern Australia. In India it is found in southern parts in the states of Karnataka, Tamil Nadu, Kerala and Maharastra[6]. Twenty eight cases of septicemic melioidosis were reported from a tertiary care hospital in south India between 1993 and 2002[7] and it is an emerging infection in India. Liver abscess caused by *B. pseudomallei* is rare and only 9 cases have been reported in India[6,8-10] till now, and few cases have been reported in Taiwan[11-13]. Gopalakrishnan *et al*[14], in a series of 32 cases of culture proven Melioidosis found localized infections in 14 patients but did not encounter even a single case of liver abscess.

The most important risk factors are diabetes, renal disease, liver cirrhosis, thalassemia, alcoholism, use of immunosuppressive agents, cystic fibrosis and kava (a Hawaiian drink) consumption[15]. The presenting symptoms may vary from fever, dry cough due to irritation of diaphragm by abscess, abdominal pain, localized swelling to septicemia shock. Lung is most commonly involved in melioidosis. Abscess in other internal organs such as liver and spleen may be a presenting feature in an immunocompromised host. The risk factor for our patient was diabetes but isolated liver abscess without any other organ involvement has seldom been reported previously.

A positive culture of *B. pseudomallei* from the aspirated pus from liver abscess is the definitive diagnosis. It is

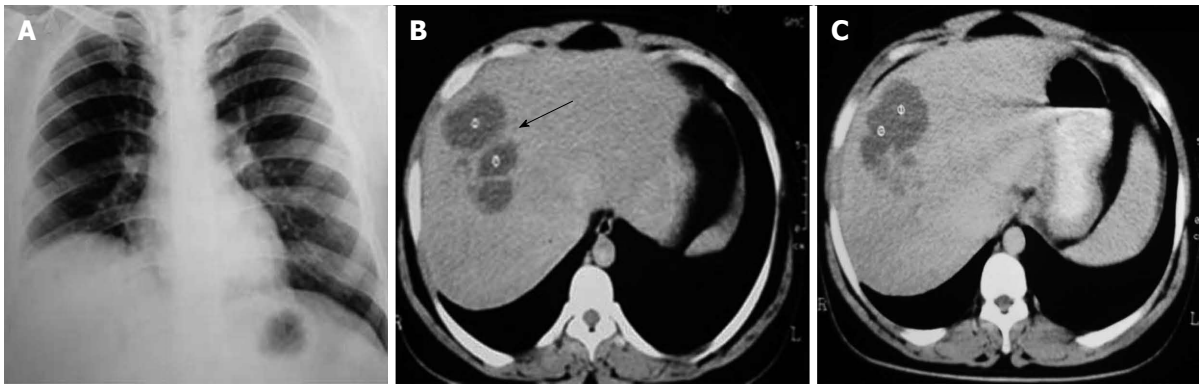


Figure 1 Computed tomography. A: Chest radiograph shows elevation of right hemi-diaphragm; B: Contrast enhanced computed tomography of upper abdomen shows one loculated hypodense lesion (8.5 cm × 7.4 cm) with irregular inner margin noted in the right lobe of liver (black arrow); C: Multiple small hypodense lesions with confluences also seen in posterior part of right lobe.

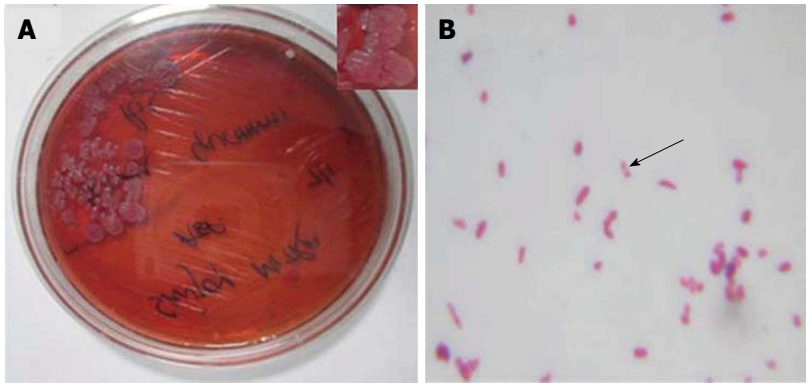


Figure 2 Identification of bacteria. A: Showing dry wrinkled colonies on 5% sheep blood agar (48 h of incubation at 37%). Inset: colonies in enlarged view; B: Gram negative oxidase positive bacillus with typical bipolar "safety-pin" appearance on gram stain (black arrow).

difficult to differentiate *B. pseudomallei* from other gram negative bacilli. Direct immunofluorescence microscopy is 98% specific and 70% sensitive compared to culture[7]. Chest radiograph may show elevation of right dome of diaphragm as in our case. CT scan findings will include liver abscesses with a "honeycomb" pattern of multiseptate, multiloculated lesions and a "necklace sign" with multiple peripheral radial loculations contained within the larger hypodense honeycomb lesions[16]. These findings were shown in a retrospective study in a small number of cases of liver abscess with melioidosis.

B. pseudomallei is characteristically resistant to penicillin other than ureidopenicillins, ampicillin, first- and second-generation cephalosporins, gentamicin, tobramycin, streptomycin and macrolides. It is only susceptible to chloramphenicol, tetracyclines, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, ureidopenicillins, third-generation cephalosporins, carbapenems and amoxicillin-clavulanate[14]. The antibiotic of choice for melioidosis is ceftazidime (40 mg/kg every 8 h)[17]. Imipenem or intravenous amoxicillin-clavulanate is the alternative choices[18]. Parenteral antibiotics should be continued for at least 10-14 d, or until patient is able to take oral medications. Oral maintenance therapy for at least 20 wk with amoxicillin-clavulanate (amoxicillin 27 mg/kg per day divided into three doses) or trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (trimethoprim 8 mg/kg per day and sulfamethoxazole 40 mg/kg per day) should be given in patients with abscess for complete resolution[14]. Patients need to be followed up for at least 6 mo after complete resolution of abscess.

In conclusion, *E. coli* is the commonest cause of pyogenic liver abscess in India, but *B. pseudomallei* should also be kept in mind because of its rising incidence and misdiagnosis can lead to treatment failure and high mortality rate. Diabetes and immunosuppressed state are the important risk factors. Prolonged treatment with antibiotic is necessary for complete resolution in *B. pseudomallei* liver abscess. Liver abscess in a diabetic not responding to aminoglycosides and penicillins should be dealt with rigorous attention or otherwise the outcome will be fatal.

COMMENTS

Case characteristics

A 29-year-old farmer presented with high grade fever and cough for 3 wk.

Clinical diagnosis

High grade pyrexia, tachycardia, just palpable splenomegaly and tender hepatomegaly.

Differential diagnosis

An infectious etiology common in tropical countries such as pyogenic liver abscess, malaria, tuberculosis and an immunocompromised state [*e.g.*, human

immunodeficiency virus (HIV)] have been considered.

Laboratory diagnosis

Mild anemia, neutrophilia, fasting hyperglycemia, raised glycosylated hemoglobin was present whereas sputum for Acid-fast bacilli, HIV serology, blood for malaria parasite were negative.

Imaging diagnosis

Chest X-ray, abdominal ultrasound and abdominal contrast enhanced computed tomography were done which showed elevated hemidiaphragm on X-ray and hypodense loculated lesion in right lobe of liver on ultrasound and tomography.

Pathological diagnosis

Aspirated pus from the abscess inoculated on 5% sheep blood agar and McConkey's agar showed gram-negative, oxidase-positive, motile, aerobic bacilli with typical bipolar "Safety pin" appearance on gram stain suggestive of *Burkholderia pseudomallei* (*B. Pseudomallei*), later confirmed *via* automated Vitek-2 compact system and was sensitive to ceftazidime, piperacillin-tazobactum, meropenem, trimethoprim-sulphmethoxazole and minocycline.

Treatment

Patient was treated with percutaneous catheter drainage, strict glycemic control with insulin, intravenous meropenem for 2 wk followed by trimethoprim-sulphmethoxazole for 20 wk which led to resolution of abscess.

Term explanation

"Safety Pin" appearance: bipolar staining of *B. Pseudomallei* on gram stain as if the organism resembles a "Safety Pin", "Necklace sign" on computed tomography scan: multiple peripheral radial loculations contained within the larger hypodense honeycomb lesions of liver abscess.

Experiences and lessons

Isolated liver abscess due to *B. Pseudomallei* can occur specially in immunosuppressed and diabetic patients who need prolonged treatment with antibiotics for resolution and misdiagnosis may lead to treatment failure and high mortality rates.

Peer review

This paper is interesting and it could be accepted pending review.

REFERENCES

1 **Huang CJ**, Pitt HA, Lipsett PA, Osterman FA, Lillemoe KD, Cameron JL, Zuidema GD. Pyogenic hepatic abscess. Changing trends over 42 years. *Ann Surg* 1996; **223**: 600-607; discussion 607-609 [PMID: 8651751 DOI: 10.1097/00000658-199605000-00016]

2 **Alvarez Pérez JA**, González JJ, Baldonedo RF, Sanz L, Carreño G, Junco A, Rodríguez JI, Martínez MD, Jorge JI. Clinical course, treatment, and multivariate analysis of risk factors for pyogenic liver abscess. *Am J Surg* 2001; **181**: 177-186 [PMID: 11425062 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9610(00)00564-X]

3 **Chou FF**, Sheen-Chen SM, Chen YS, Chen MC. Single and multiple pyogenic liver abscesses: clinical course, etiology, and results of treatment. *World J Surg* 1997; **21**: 384-388; discussion 388-389 [PMID: 9143569 DOI: 10.1007/PL00012258]

4 **Ramphal R**. Chapter 152. Infections Due to Pseudomonas Species and Related Organisms. In: Longo DL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, Hauser SL, Jameson JL, Loscalzo J, editors. Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine. 18th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2012

5 **Branum GD**, Tyson GS, Branum MA, Meyers WC. Hepatic abscess. Changes in etiology, diagnosis, and management. *Ann Surg* 1990; **212**: 655-662 [PMID: 2256756 DOI: 10.1097/00000658-199012000-00002]

6 **Mukhopadhya A**, Balaji V, Jesudason MV, Amte A, Jeyamani R, Kurian G. Isolated liver abscesses in melioidosis. *Indian J Med Microbiol* 2007; **25**: 150-151 [PMID: 17582188 DOI: 10.4103/0255-0857.32724]

7 **Jesudason MV**, Anbarasu A, John TJ. Septicaemic melioidosis in a tertiary care hospital in south India. *Indian J Med Res* 2003; **117**: 119-121 [PMID: 14575177]

8 **Banerjee S**. Liver abscess due to unusual gram negative bacilli; Burkholderia pseudomallei? *IJM* 2009; **6** [DOI: 10.5580/1f3a]

9 **Sengupta S**, Murthy R, Kumari GR, Rahana K, Vidhyasagar S, Bhat BKS, Shivananda PG. Burkholderia pseudomallei in a case of hepatic abscess. *Indian J Med Microbiol* 1998; **16**: 88-89

10 **Saravu K**, Mukhopadhyay C, Vishwanath S, Valsalan R, Docherla M, Vandana KE, Shastry BA, Bairy I, Rao SP. Melioidosis in southern India: epidemiological and clinical profile. *Southeast Asian J Trop Med Public Health* 2010; **41**: 401-409 [PMID: 20578524]

11 **Lee YL**, Lee SS, Tsai HC, Chen YS, Wann SR, Kao CH, Liu YC. Pyogenic liver abscess caused by Burkholderia pseudomallei in Taiwan. *J Formos Med Assoc* 2006; **105**: 689-693 [PMID: 16935773 DOI: 10.1016/S0929-6646(09)60171-6]

12 **Wang CZ**, Hung MZ. [Liver melioidosis: case report and literature review]. *Taiwan Med J* 2004; **47**: 32-34

13 **Ben RJ**, Tsai YY, Chen JC, Feng NH. Non-septicemic Burkholderia pseudomallei liver abscess in a young man. *J Microbiol Immunol* Infect 2004; **37**: 254-257

14 **Gopalakrishnan R**, Sureshkumar D, Thirunarayan MA, Ramasubramanian M. Melioidosis: An Emerging Infection in India. *J Assoc Physicians India* 2013; **61**: 612-14

15 **White NJ**. Melioidosis. *Lancet* 2003; **361**: 1715-1722 [PMID: 12767750 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(03)13374-0]

16 **Apisarnthanarak A**, Apisarnthanarak P, Mundy LM. Computed tomography characteristics of Burkholderia pseudomallei liver abscess. *Clin Infect Dis* 2006; **42**: 989-993 [PMID: 16511765 DOI: 10.1086/501017]

17 **White NJ**, Dance DA, Chaowagul W, Wattanagoon Y, Wuthiekanun V, Pitakwatchara N. Halving of mortality of severe melioidosis by ceftazidime. *Lancet* 1989; **2**: 697-701 [PMID: 2570956 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(89)90768-X]

18 **Smith MD**, Wuthiekanun V, Walsh AL, White NJ. Susceptibility of Pseudomonas pseudomallei to some newer beta-lactam antibiotics and antibiotic combinations using time-kill studies. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 1994; **33**: 145-149 [PMID: 7512547 DOI: 10.1093/jac/33.1.145]

P- Reviewer: Ferraioli G **S- Editor**: Song XX
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Clinical Cases

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
www.wjgnet.com

World J Clin Cases 2014 October 16; 2(10): I-V
ISSN 2307-8960 (online)

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS

GENERAL INFORMATION

World Journal of Clinical Cases (*World J Clin Cases*, *WJCC*, online ISSN 2307-8960, DOI: 10.12998) is a peer-reviewed open access (OA) academic journal that aims to guide clinical practice and improve diagnostic and therapeutic skills of clinicians.

Aim and scope

The primary task of *WJCC* is to rapidly publish high-quality Autobiography, Case Report, Clinical Case Conference (Clinicopathological Conference), Clinical Management, Diagnostic Advances, Editorial, Field of Vision, Frontier, Medical Ethics, Original Articles, Clinical Practice, Meta-Analysis, Minireviews, Review, Therapeutics Advances, and Topic Highlight, in the fields of allergy, anesthesiology, cardiac medicine, clinical genetics, clinical neurology, critical care, dentistry, dermatology, emergency medicine, endocrinology, family medicine, gastroenterology and hepatology, geriatrics and gerontology, hematology, immunology, infectious diseases, internal medicine, obstetrics and gynecology, oncology, ophthalmology, orthopedics, otolaryngology, pathology, pediatrics, peripheral vascular disease, psychiatry, radiology, rehabilitation, respiratory medicine, rheumatology, surgery, toxicology, transplantation, and urology and nephrology.

WJCC is edited and published by Baishideng Publishing Group (BPG). BPG has a strong professional editorial team composed of science editors, language editors and electronic editors. BPG currently publishes 43 OA clinical medical journals, including 42 in English, has a total of 15471 editorial borad members or peer reivewers, and is a world first-class publisher.

Columns

The columns in the issues of *WJCC* will include: (1) Editorial: The editorial board members are invited to make comments on an important topic in their field in terms of its current research status and future directions to lead the development of this discipline; (2) Frontier: The editorial board members are invited to select a highly cited cutting-edge original paper of his/her own to summarize major findings, the problems that have been resolved and remain to be resolved, and future research directions to help readers understand his/her important academic point of view and future research directions in the field; (3) Diagnostic Advances: The editorial board members are invited to write high-quality diagnostic advances in their field to improve the diagnostic skills of readers. The topic covers general clinical diagnosis, differential diagnosis, pathological diagnosis, laboratory diagnosis, imaging diagnosis, endoscopic diagnosis, biotechnological diagnosis, functional diagnosis, and physical diagnosis; (4) Therapeutics Advances: The editorial board members are invited to write high-quality therapeutic advances in their field to help improve the therapeutic skills of readers. The topic covers medication therapy, psychotherapy, physical therapy, replacement therapy, interventional therapy, minimally invasive therapy, endoscopic therapy, transplantation therapy, and surgical therapy; (5) Field of Vision: The editorial board members are invited to write commentaries on classic articles, hot topic articles, or latest articles to keep readers at the forefront of research and increase their levels of clinical research. Classic articles refer to papers that are included in Web of Knowledge and have received a large number of citations (ranking in the top 1%) after being published for more than years, reflecting the quality and impact of papers. Hot topic articles refer to papers that are included in Web of Knowledge and have received a large number of citations after being published for no more than 2 years, reflecting cutting-edge trends in scientific research. Latest articles refer to the latest published high-quality papers that are included in PubMed, reflecting the latest research trends. These commentary articles should focus on the status quo of research, the most important research topics, the problems that have now been resolved and remain to be resolved, and future research directions. Basic information about the article to be commented (including authors, article title, journal name, year, volume, and inclusive page numbers; (6) Minireviews: The editorial board members are invited to write short reviews on recent advances and trends in research of molecular biology, genomics, and related cutting-edge technologies to provide readers with the latest knowledge and help improve their diagnostic and therapeutic skills; (7) Review: To make a systematic review to focus on the status quo of research, the most important research topics, the problems that have now been resolved and remain to be resolved, and future research directions; (8) Topic Highlight: The editorial board members are invited to write a series of articles (7-10 articles) to comment and discuss a hot topic to help improve the diagnostic and therapeutic skills of readers; (9) Medical Ethics: The editorial board members are invited to write articles about medical ethics to increase readers' knowledge of medical ethics. The topic covers international ethics guidelines, animal studies, clinical trials, organ transplantation, *etc.*; (10) Clinical Case Conference or Clinicopathological Conference: The editorial board members are invited to contribute high-quality clinical case conference; (11) Original Articles: To report innovative and original findings in clinical research; (12) Clinical Practice: To briefly report the novel and innovative findings in clinical practice; (13) Meta-Analysis: Covers the systematic review, mixedtreatment comparison, meta-regression, and overview of reviews, in order to summarize a given quantitative effect, *e.g.*, the clinical effectiveness and safety of clinical treatments by combining data from two or more randomized controlled trials, thereby providing more precise and externally valid estimates than those which would stem from each individual dataset if analyzed separately from the others; (14) Case Report: To report a rare or typical case; (15) Letters to the Editor: To discuss and make reply to the contributions published in *WJCC*, or to introduce and comment on a controversial issue of general interest; (16) Book Reviews: To introduce and comment on quality monographs of clinical medicine; and (17) Autobiography: The editorial board members are invited to write their autobiography to provide readers with stories of success or failure in their scientific research career. The topic covers their basic personal information and information about when they started doing research work, where and how they did research work, what they have achieved, and their lessons from success or failure.

Name of journal

World Journal of Clinical Cases

ISSN

ISSN 2307-8960 (online)

Launch date

April 16, 2013

Frequency
Monthly

Editorial office
Jin-Lei Wang, Director
Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director
World Journal of Clinical Cases
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381891
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

Publisher
Baishideng Publishing Group Inc
8226 Regency Drive,
Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: editorialoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

Instructions to authors
Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjgnet.com/2307-8960/g_info_20100722180909.htm.

Indexed and Abstracted in
Digital Object Identifier.

SPECIAL STATEMENT

All articles published in journals owned by the BPG represent the views and opinions of their authors, and not the views, opinions or policies of the BPG, except where otherwise explicitly indicated.

Biostatistical editing
Statistical review is performed after peer review. We invite an expert in Biomedical Statistics to evaluate the statistical method used in the paper, including *t*-test (group or paired comparisons), chi-squared test, Ridit, probit, logit, regression (linear, curvilinear, or stepwise), correlation, analysis of variance, analysis of covariance, *etc*. The reviewing points include: (1) Statistical methods should be described when they are used to verify the results; (2) Whether the statistical techniques are suitable or correct; (3) Only homogeneous data can be averaged. Standard deviations are preferred to standard errors. Give the number of observations and subjects (*n*). Losses in observations, such as drop-outs from the study should be reported; (4) Values such as ED50, LD50, IC50 should have their 95% confidence limits calculated and compared by weighted probit analysis (Bliss and Finney); and (5) The word 'significantly' should be replaced by its synonyms (if it indicates extent) or the *P* value (if it indicates statistical significance).

Conflict-of-interest statement
In the interests of transparency and to help reviewers assess any potential bias, *WJCC* requires authors of all papers to declare any competing commercial, personal, political, intellectual, or religious interests in relation to the submitted work. Referees are also asked to indicate any potential conflict they might have reviewing a particular paper. Before submitting, authors are suggested to read "Uniform Requirements for Manuscripts Submitted to Biomedical Journals: Ethical Considerations in the Conduct and Reporting of Research: Conflicts of Interest" from International Committee of Medical Journal Editors (ICMJE), which is available at: http://www.icmje.org/ethical_4conflicts.html.

Sample wording: [Name of individual] has received fees for serving as a speaker, a consultant and an advisory board member for [names of organizations], and has received research funding from [names of organization]. [Name of individual] is an employee of [name of organization]. [Name of individual] owns stocks and shares in [name of organization]. [Name of individual] owns patent [patent identification and brief description].

Statement of informed consent
Manuscripts should contain a statement to the effect that all human studies have been reviewed by the appropriate ethics committee or it should be stated clearly in the text that all persons gave their informed consent prior to their inclusion in the study. Details that might disclose the identity of the subjects under study should be omitted. Authors should also draw attention to the Code of Ethics of the World Medical Association (Declaration of Helsinki, 1964, as revised in 2004).

Statement of human and animal rights
When reporting the results from experiments, authors should follow the highest standards and the trial should conform to Good Clinical Practice (for example, US Food and Drug Administration Good Clinical Practice in FDA-Regulated Clinical Trials; UK Medicines Research Council Guidelines for Good Clinical Practice in Clinical Trials) and/or the World Medical Association Declaration of Helsinki. Generally, we suggest authors follow the lead investigator's national standard. If doubt exists whether the research was conducted in accordance with the above standards, the authors must explain the rationale for their approach and demonstrate that the institutional review body explicitly approved the doubtful aspects of the study.

Before submitting, authors should make their study approved by the relevant research ethics committee or institutional review board. If human participants were involved, manuscripts must be accompanied by a statement that the experiments were undertaken with the understanding and appropriate informed consent of each. Any personal item or information will not be published without explicit consents from the involved patients. If experimental animals were used, the materials and methods (experimental procedures) section must clearly indicate that appropriate measures were taken to minimize pain or discomfort, and details of animal care should be provided.

SUBMISSION OF MANUSCRIPTS

Manuscripts should be typed in 1.5 line spacing and 12 pt. Book Antiqua with ample margins. Number all pages consecutively, and start each of the following sections on a new page: Title Page, Abstract, Introduction, Materials and Methods, Results, Discussion, Acknowledgements, References, Tables, Figures, and Figure Legends. Neither the editors nor the publisher are responsible for the opinions expressed by contributors. Manuscripts formally accepted for publication become the permanent property of BPG, and may not be reproduced by any means, in whole or in part, without the written permission of both the authors and the publisher. We reserve the right to copy-edit and put onto our website accepted manuscripts. Authors should follow the relevant guidelines for the care and use of laboratory animals of their institution or national

animal welfare committee. For the sake of transparency in regard to the performance and reporting of clinical trials, we endorse the policy of the ICMJE to refuse to publish papers on clinical trial results if the trial was not recorded in a publicly-accessible registry at its outset. The only register now available, to our knowledge, is http://www.clinicaltrials.gov sponsored by the United States National Library of Medicine and we encourage all potential contributors to register with it. However, in the case that other registers become available you will be duly notified. A letter of recommendation from each author's organization should be provided with the contributed article to ensure the privacy and secrecy of research is protected.

Authors should retain one copy of the text, tables, photographs and illustrations because rejected manuscripts will not be returned to the author(s) and the editors will not be responsible for loss or damage to photographs and illustrations sustained during mailing.

Online submissions

Manuscripts should be submitted through the Online Submission System at: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/. Authors are highly recommended to consult the ONLINE INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS (http://www.wjgnet.com/2307-8960/g_info_20100722180909.htm) before attempting to submit online. For assistance, authors encountering problems with the Online Submission System may send an email describing the problem to wjcc@wjgnet.com, or by telephone: +86-10-85381892. If you submit your manuscript online, do not make a postal contribution. Repeated online submission for the same manuscript is strictly prohibited.

MANUSCRIPT PREPARATION

All contributions should be written in English. All articles must be submitted using word-processing software. All submissions must be typed in 1.5 line spacing and 12 pt. Book Antiqua with ample margins. Style should conform to our house format. Required information for each of the manuscript sections is as follows:

Title page

Title: Title should be less than 12 words.

Running title: A short running title of less than 6 words should be provided.

Authorship: Authorship credit should be in accordance with the standard proposed by ICMJE, based on (1) substantial contributions to conception and design, acquisition of data, or analysis and interpretation of data; (2) drafting the article or revising it critically for important intellectual content; and (3) final approval of the version to be published. Authors should meet conditions 1, 2, and 3.

Institution: Author names should be given first, then the complete name of institution, city, province and postcode. For example, Xu-Chen Zhang, Li-Xin Mei, Department of Pathology, Chengde Medical College, Chengde 067000, Hebei Province, China. One author may be represented from two institutions, for example, George Sgourakis, Department of General, Visceral, and Transplantation Surgery, Essen 45122, Germany; George Sgourakis, 2nd Surgical Department, Korgialenio-Benakio Red Cross Hospital, Athens 15451, Greece

Author contributions: The format of this section should be: Author contributions: Wang CL and Liang L contributed equally to this work; Wang CL, Liang L, Fu JF, Zou CC, Hong F and Wu XM designed the research; Wang CL, Zou CC, Hong F and Wu XM performed the research; Xue JZ and Lu JR contributed new reagents/analytic tools; Wang CL, Liang L and Fu JF analyzed the data; and Wang CL, Liang L and Fu JF wrote the paper.

Supportive foundations: The complete name and number of supportive foundations should be provided, *e.g.*, Supported by National Natural Science Foundation of China, No. 30224801

Correspondence to: Only one corresponding address should be provided. Author names should be given first, then author title, affiliation, the complete name of institution, city, postcode, province, country, and email. All the letters in the email should be in lower case. A space interval should be inserted between country name and email address. For example, Montgomery Bissell, MD, Professor of Medicine, Chief, Liver Center, Gastroenterology Division, University of California, Box 0538, San Francisco, CA 94143, United States. montgomery.bissell@ucsf.edu

Telephone and fax: Telephone and fax should consist of +, country number, district number and telephone or fax number, *e.g.*, Telephone: +86-10-85381892 Fax: +86-10-85381893

Peer reviewers: All articles received are subject to peer review. Normally, three experts are invited for each article. Decision on acceptance is made only when at least two experts recommend publication of an article. All peer-reviewers are acknowledged on Express Submission and Peer-review System website.

Abstract

There are unstructured abstracts (no less than 200 words) and structured abstracts. The specific requirements for structured abstracts are as follows:

An informative, structured abstract should accompany each manuscript. Abstracts of original contributions should be structured into the following sections: AIM (no more than 20 words; Only the purpose of the study should be included. Please write the Aim in the form of "To investigate/study/…"), METHODS (no less than 140 words for Original Articles; and no less than 80 words for Brief Articles), RESULTS (no less than 150 words for Original Articles and no less than 120 words for Brief Articles; You should present *P* values where appropriate and must provide relevant data to illustrate how they were obtained, *e.g.*, 6.92 ± 3.86 *vs* 3.61 ± 1.67, $P < 0.001$), and CONCLUSION (no more than 26 words).

Key words

Please list 5-10 key words, selected mainly from *Index Medicus*, which reflect the content of the study.

Core tip

Please write a summary of less than 100 words to outline the most innovative and important arguments and core contents in your paper to attract readers.

Text

For articles of these sections, original articles and brief articles, the main text should be structured into the following sections: INTRODUCTION, MATERIALS AND METHODS, RESULTS and DISCUSSION, and should include appropriate Figures and Tables. Data should be presented in the main text or in Figures and Tables, but not in both.

Illustrations

Figures should be numbered as 1, 2, 3, *etc.*, and mentioned clearly in the main text. Provide a brief title for each figure on a separate page. Detailed legends should not be provided under the figures. This part should be added into the text where the figures are applicable. Keeping all elements compiled is necessary in line-art image. Scale bars should be used rather than magnification factors, with the length of the bar defined in the legend rather than on the bar itself. File names should identify the figure and panel. Avoid layering type directly over shaded or textured areas. Please use uniform legends for the same subjects. For example: Figure 1 Pathological changes in atrophic gastritis after treatment. A: ...; B: ...; C: ...; D: ...; E: ...; F: ...; G: …*etc.* It is our principle to publish high resolution-figures for the E-versions.

Tables

Three-line tables should be numbered 1, 2, 3, *etc.*, and mentioned clearly in the main text. Provide a brief title for each table. Detailed

legends should not be included under tables, but rather added into the text where applicable. The information should complement, but not duplicate the text. Use one horizontal line under the title, a second under column heads, and a third below the Table, above any footnotes. Vertical and italic lines should be omitted.

Notes in tables and illustrations

Data that are not statistically significant should not be noted. $^{a}P < 0.05$, $^{b}P < 0.01$ should be noted ($P > 0.05$ should not be noted). If there are other series of P values, $^{c}P < 0.05$ and $^{d}P < 0.01$ are used. A third series of P values can be expressed as $^{e}P < 0.05$ and $^{f}P < 0.01$. Other notes in tables or under illustrations should be expressed as ^{1}F, ^{2}F, ^{3}F; or sometimes as other symbols with a superscript (Arabic numerals) in the upper left corner. In a multi-curve illustration, each curve should be labeled with ●, ○, ■, □, ▲, △, *etc.*, in a certain sequence.

Acknowledgments

Brief acknowledgments of persons who have made genuine contributions to the manuscript and who endorse the data and conclusions should be included. Authors are responsible for obtaining written permission to use any copyrighted text and/or illustrations.

REFERENCES

Coding system

The author should number the references in Arabic numerals according to the citation order in the text. Put reference numbers in square brackets in superscript at the end of citation content or after the cited author's name. For citation content which is part of the narration, the coding number and square brackets should be typeset normally. For example, "Crohn's disease (CD) is associated with increased intestinal permeability[1,2]". If references are cited directly in the text, they should be put together within the text, for example, "From references[19,22-24], we know that..."

When the authors write the references, please ensure that the order in text is the same as in the references section, and also ensure the spelling accuracy of the first author's name. Do not list the same citation twice.

PMID and DOI

Pleased provide PubMed citation numbers to the reference list, *e.g.*, PMID and DOI, which can be found at http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/sites/entrez?db=pubmed and http://www.crossref.org/SimpleTextQuery/, respectively. The numbers will be used in E-version of this journal.

Style for journal references

Authors: the name of the first author should be typed in bold-faced letters. The family name of all authors should be typed with the initial letter capitalized, followed by their abbreviated first and middle initials. (For example, Lian-Sheng Ma is abbreviated as Ma LS, Bo-Rong Pan as Pan BR). The title of the cited article and italicized journal title (journal title should be in its abbreviated form as shown in PubMed), publication date, volume number (in black), start page, and end page [PMID: 11819634 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.13.5396].

Style for book references

Authors: the name of the first author should be typed in bold-faced letters. The surname of all authors should be typed with the initial letter capitalized, followed by their abbreviated middle and first initials. (For example, Lian-Sheng Ma is abbreviated as Ma LS, Bo-Rong Pan as Pan BR) Book title. Publication number. Publication place: Publication press, Year: start page and end page.

Format

Journals

English journal article (list all authors and include the PMID where applicable)

1 **Jung EM**, Clevert DA, Schreyer AG, Schmitt S, Rennert J, Kubale R, Feuerbach S, Jung F. Evaluation of quantitative contrast harmonic imaging to assess malignancy of liver tumors: A prospective controlled two-center study. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; **13**: 6356-6364 [PMID: 18081224 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.13.6356]

Chinese journal article (list all authors and include the PMID where applicable)

2 **Lin GZ**, Wang XZ, Wang P, Lin J, Yang FD. Immunologic effect of Jianpi Yishen decoction in treatment of Pixu-diarrhoea. *Shijie Huaren Xiaohua Zazhi* 1999; **7**: 285-287

In press

3 **Tian D**, Araki H, Stahl E, Bergelson J, Kreitman M. Signature of balancing selection in Arabidopsis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2006; In press

Organization as author

4 **Diabetes Prevention Program Research Group**. Hypertension, insulin, and proinsulin in participants with impaired glucose tolerance. *Hypertension* 2002; **40**: 679-686 [PMID: 12411462 PMCID:2516377 DOI:10.1161/01.HYP.0000035706.28494.09]

Both personal authors and an organization as author

5 **Vallancien G**, Emberton M, Harving N, van Moorselaar RJ; Alf-One Study Group. Sexual dysfunction in 1, 274 European men suffering from lower urinary tract symptoms. *J Urol* 2003; **169**: 2257-2261 [PMID: 12771764 DOI:10.1097/01.ju.0000067940.76090.73]

No author given

6 21st century heart solution may have a sting in the tail. *BMJ* 2002; **325**: 184 [PMID: 12142303 DOI:10.1136/bmj.325.7357.184]

Volume with supplement

7 **Geraud G**, Spierings EL, Keywood C. Tolerability and safety of frovatriptan with short- and long-term use for treatment of migraine and in comparison with sumatriptan. *Headache* 2002; **42** Suppl 2: S93-99 [PMID: 12028325 DOI:10.1046/j.1526-4610.42.s2.7.x]

Issue with no volume

8 **Banit DM**, Kaufer H, Hartford JM. Intraoperative frozen section analysis in revision total joint arthroplasty. *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 2002; (**401**): 230-238 [PMID: 12151900 DOI:10.1097/00003086-200208000-00026]

No volume or issue

9 Outreach: Bringing HIV-positive individuals into care. *HRSA Careaction* 2002; 1-6 [PMID: 12154804]

Books

Personal author(s)

10 **Sherlock S**, Dooley J. Diseases of the liver and billiary system. 9th ed. Oxford: Blackwell Sci Pub, 1993: 258-296

Chapter in a book (list all authors)

11 **Lam SK**. Academic investigator's perspectives of medical treatment for peptic ulcer. In: Swabb EA, Azabo S. Ulcer disease: investigation and basis for therapy. New York: Marcel Dekker, 1991: 431-450

Author(s) and editor(s)

12 **Breedlove GK**, Schorfheide AM. Adolescent pregnancy. 2nd ed. Wieczorek RR, editor. White Plains (NY): March of Dimes Education Services, 2001: 20-34

Conference proceedings

13 **Harnden P**, Joffe JK, Jones WG, editors. Germ cell tumours V. Proceedings of the 5th Germ cell tumours Conference; 2001 Sep 13-15; Leeds, UK. New York: Springer, 2002: 30-56

Conference paper

14 **Christensen S**, Oppacher F. An analysis of Koza's computational effort statistic for genetic programming. In: Foster JA, Lutton E, Miller J, Ryan C, Tettamanzi AG, editors. Genetic programming. EuroGP 2002: Proceedings of the 5th European Conference on Genetic Programming; 2002 Apr 3-5; Kinsdale, Ireland. Berlin: Springer, 2002: 182-191

Electronic journal (list all authors)

15 Morse SS. Factors in the emergence of infectious diseases. Emerg Infect Dis serial online, 1995-01-03, cited 1996-06-05; 1(1): 24 screens. Available from: URL: http://www.cdc.gov/

ncidod/eid/index.htm

Patent (list all authors)

16 **Pagedas AC**, inventor; Ancel Surgical R&D Inc., assignee. Flexible endoscopic grasping and cutting device and positioning tool assembly. United States patent US 20020103498. 2002 Aug 1

Statistical data

Write as mean ± SD or mean ± SE.

Statistical expression

Express *t* test as *t* (in italics), *F* test as *F* (in italics), chi square test as χ^2 (in Greek), related coefficient as *r* (in italics), degree of freedom as υ (in Greek), sample number as *n* (in italics), and probability as *P* (in italics).

Units

Use SI units. For example: body mass, m (B) = 78 kg; blood pressure, p (B) = 16.2/12.3 kPa; incubation time, t (incubation) = 96 h, blood glucose concentration, c (glucose) 6.4 ± 2.1 mmol/L; blood CEA mass concentration, p (CEA) = 8.6 24.5 μg/L; CO_2 volume fraction, 50 mL/L CO_2, not 5% CO_2; likewise for 40 g/L formaldehyde, not 10% formalin; and mass fraction, 8 ng/g, *etc.* Arabic numerals such as 23, 243, 641 should be read 23 243 641.

The format for how to accurately write common units and quantums can be found at: http://www.wjgnet.com/2307-8960/g_info_20100725073806.htm.

Abbreviations

Standard abbreviations should be defined in the abstract and on first mention in the text. In general, terms should not be abbreviated unless they are used repeatedly and the abbreviation is helpful to the reader. Permissible abbreviations are listed in Units, Symbols and Abbreviations: A Guide for Biological and Medical Editors and Authors (Ed. Baron DN, 1988) published by The Royal Society of Medicine, London. Certain commonly used abbreviations, such as DNA, RNA, HIV, LD50, PCR, HBV, ECG, WBC, RBC, CT, ESR, CSF, IgG, ELISA, PBS, ATP, EDTA, mAb, can be used directly without further explanation.

Italics

Quantities: *t* time or temperature, *c* concentration, *A* area, *l* length, *m* mass, *V* volume.

Genotypes: *gyrA*, *arg* 1, *c myc*, *c fos*, *etc.*

Restriction enzymes: *Eco*RI, *Hin*dI, *Bam*HI, *Kbo* I, *Kpn* I, *etc.*

Biology: *H. pylori*, *E coli*, *etc.*

Examples for paper writing

All types of articles' writing style and requirement will be found in the link: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/NavigationInfo.aspx?id=15

RESUBMISSION OF THE REVISED MANUSCRIPTS

Authors must revise their manuscript carefully according to the revision policies of BPG. The revised version, along with the signed copyright transfer agreement, responses to the reviewers, and English language Grade A certificate (for non-native speakers of English), should be submitted to the online system *via* the link contained in the e-mail sent by the editor. If you have any questions about the revision, please send e-mail to esps@wjgnet.com.

Language evaluation

The language of a manuscript will be graded before it is sent for revision. (1) Grade A: priority publishing; (2) Grade B: minor language polishing; (3) Grade C: a great deal of language polishing needed; and (4) Grade D: rejected. Revised articles should reach Grade A.

Copyright assignment form

Please download a Copyright assignment form from http://www.wjgnet.com/2307-8960/g_info_20100725073726.htm.

Responses to reviewers

Please revise your article according to the comments/suggestions provided by the reviewers. The format for responses to the reviewers' comments can be found at: http://www.wjgnet.com/2307-8960/g_info_20100725073445.htm.

Proof of financial support

For papers supported by a foundation, authors should provide a copy of the approval document and serial number of the foundation.

STATEMENT ABOUT ANONYMOUS PUBLICATION OF THE PEER REVIEWERS' COMMENTS

In order to increase the quality of peer review, push authors to carefully revise their manuscripts based on the peer reviewers' comments, and promote academic interactions among peer reviewers, authors and readers, we decide to anonymously publish the reviewers' comments and author's responses at the same time the manuscript is published online.

PUBLICATION FEE

WJCC is an international, peer-reviewed, OA online journal. Articles published by this journal are distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution Non-commercial License, which permits use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium and format, provided the original work is properly cited. The use is non-commercial and is otherwise in compliance with the license. Authors of accepted articles must pay a publication fee. Publication fee: 698 USD per article. All invited articles are published free of charge.

Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Inc**
8226 Regency Drive, Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com